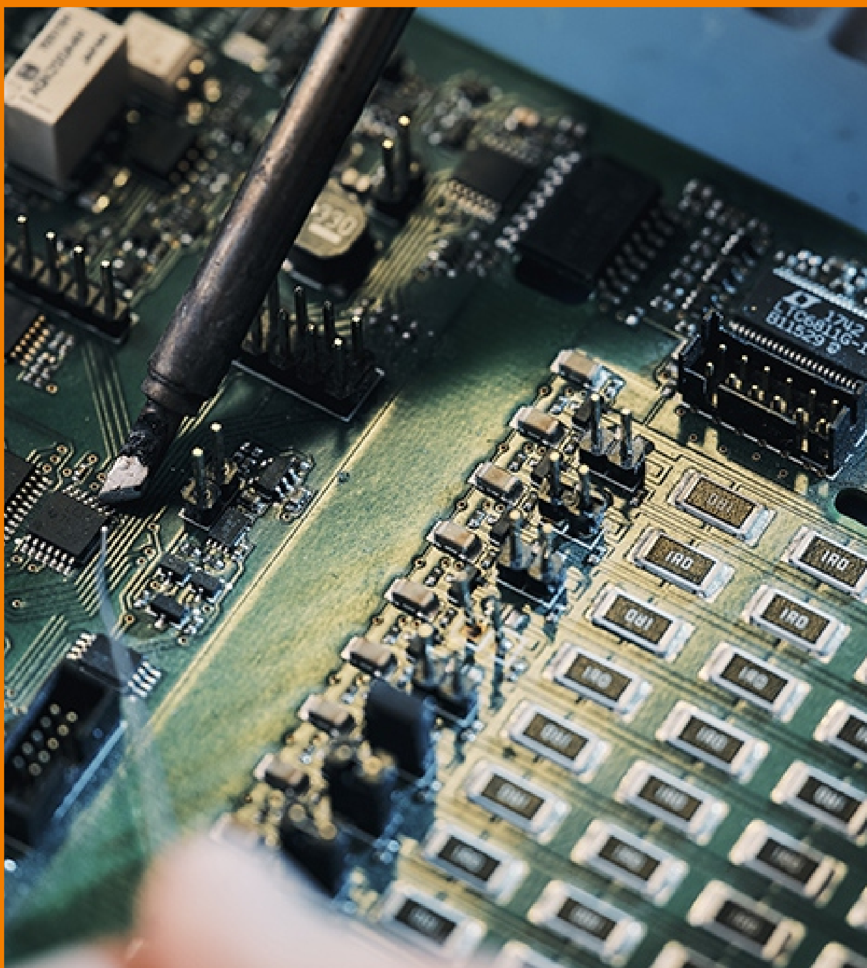
ALEXIS ebook

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS



Dr. Rajiv Singh
Pradeep Kumar Verma

ALEXIS PRESS
JERSEY CITY, USA

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

Dr. Rajiv Singh
Pradeep Kumar Verma

ALEXIS PRESS

ALEXIS PRESS

Published by: Alexis Press, LLC, Jersey City, USA
www.alexispress.us

First Published 2022

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

Includes bibliographical references and index.

Battery Management Systems by *Dr. Rajiv Singh, Pradeep Kumar Verma*

ISBN 978-1-64532-354-9

CONTENTS

Chapter 1. Battery Management Systems and Applications 1
— Dr. Rajiv Singh

Chapter 2. Implications for the Battery Management System.. 10
— Ms. Renuka Bhagwat

Chapter 3. Characteristics of Battery Management System 19
— Dr. Sreenivasappa Bhupasandra

Chapter 4. Common Decision to Be Made for Battery Management System Development is the Degree of Modularity Desired.. 28
— Dr. Shilpa Mehta

Chapter 5. Challenges in Cell Voltage Measurement 37
— Mrs. Kamireddi Sunandana

Chapter 6. A Study on Magneto-strictive Sensors.. 46
— Mr. Tirumala Vasu Galithoti

Chapter 7. Soft Start or Recharge Circuits 55
— Ms. Ginkawar Shwetha

Chapter 8. Battery Management System Functionality 64
— Ms. Samreen Fiza

Chapter 9. ESD Suppression on Isolated Devices 74
— Ms. Ashwini Bhat

Chapter 10. An Analysis of Battery Models... 84
— Ms. Amrutha Nair

Chapter 11. A Brief Discussion on Characterization of SOC 93
— Ms. M Aruna

Chapter 12. Limit Violation Detection.. 101
— Ms. Akshaya Ganorkar

Chapter 13. Transformer Charge Balancing... 110
— Pradeep Kumar Verma

Chapter 14. Kalman Filtering Techniques 119
— Umesh Kumar Singh

Chapter 15. A Study of Impedance Detection.. 128
— Garima Goswami

Chapter 16. Battery Imbalance/Excessive Self-Discharge.. 138
— Shubhendra Pratap Singh

Chapter 17. Common Techniques to Avoid Hazard of Battery... 147
— Shashank Mishra

Chapter 18. Model Implementation for Battery... 155
— Mayur Agarwal

Chapter 19. Robustness and Reliability for Battery.. 164
— Dr. G. Ezhilarasan

Chapter 20. State-Of-The-Art of Battery State-of-Charge Determination 173
— Dr. Hannah Jessie Rani R

Chapter 21. Battery Capacity Indicator 183
— Dr. P. Kishore Kumar

Chapter 22. Emf Curve Obtained with The Linear Interpolation Method 192
— Dr. Trupti VN

Chapter 23. Over Potential Measurement and Modelling 200
— Dr. Raghu N

Chapter 24. A New Voltage-Relaxation Model 210
— Dr. N. Raghu

Chapter 25. Electro-Motive Force Adaptive System 221
— Savitha R

CHAPTER 1

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS AND APPLICATIONS

Dr. Rajiv Singh, Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- rajivranjansingh@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Battery Management Systems (BMS) are essential components in modern electric vehicle (EV) and renewable energy storage systems, enabling safe and efficient operation of battery packs. This abstract provides an overview of the key aspects of BMS, including their purpose, functions, and challenges. The purpose of a BMS is to monitor, control, and protect the battery pack throughout its lifecycle, ensuring optimal performance, safety, and longevity. BMS typically comprise hardware and software components that work together to collect and analyze data from various sensors, such as voltage, current, temperature, and state of charge (SOC), to make decisions about battery operation. The BMS can perform a range of functions, including cell balancing, state of health (SOH) estimation, thermal management, charging and discharging control, fault detection and diagnosis, and communication with external systems.

KEYWORDS:

Balancing, Battery health, Battery monitoring, Cell voltage measurement, Charging algorithms, Current sensing.

INTRODUCTION

Large-format battery systems have undergone a substantial change as a result of the introduction of lithium-ion batteries. Large-format batteries were only ever employed as an energy storage solution when absolutely necessary, previously being restricted to hefty and clunky lead-acid storage batteries. We now have electric and hybrid vehicles with appreciable driving range and performance, grid-tied energy storage systems for integrating renewable energy and load leveling, backup power systems, and other innovations thanks to the improved energy density, cycle life, power capability, and durability of lithium-ion cells. Future applications will allow for even more decentralization and dispersal of energy production and storage in addition to improved versions of the aforementioned electric vehicles as well as marine and aviation. The invention of the lithium-ion battery has quietly enabled the generation of portable electronic devices that are now widespread in all societies and have given us the connected and mobile world we are accustomed to, alongside all the innovation that has occurred in semiconductor, software, and microprocessor technology over the past 30 years. We shall be liberated from the dangers of nonrenewable energy sources in the future thanks to this battery technology, which will provide us with new methods to produce, consume, and store energy[1], [2].

Large-format lithium-ion battery systems are no different from other sources of stored energy in that good management is required to prevent an uncontrolled release of that energy. There is always a level of risk associated with storing energy. With each new generation of battery cells, new management issues are created despite the fact that safety and dependability of these cells are continually improving. This is because the density of the stored energy and the power capability are both increasing. Battery systems need to be shielded from a range of dangers that they might encounter. Large battery systems, like those used for grid-tied storage or electrified vehicles, incorporate sophisticated electronics and software that work together to measure battery parameters, determine the battery's condition, and control the system to ensure that it operates as intended. While the entire system must account for all necessary forms of protection, this is not always the case. Battery management system is the name given to this technological device.

Modern technology

The tremendous performance that current battery cells and chemistries have to offer must be delivered via battery systems, which must be a safe and dependable source of energy. The great reliability and quality of contemporary battery management system components meet the standards set for electronic control systems in almost every application area.Although lithium-ion batteries hold the potential of novel methods to store and utilize energy, applications beyond a few cells to power low-voltage, low-power devices are still in their infancy. Many hybrid and electric cars that can store many kilowatt-hours of energy and run at hundreds of volts have been released on the market since 2010. The need for stationary energy storage solutions, from building scale to utility scale, is rising as a result of recent advancements in smart-grid technology for applications including integrating renewable generating and preserving power quality. Large-format lithium-ion technology will replace previous kinds of batteries used in industries including aircraft, rail, and marine as battery prices decline and performance rises. These applications each carry with them a unique set of norms, expectations, and needs.

With every new application and advancement in battery technology, the need for efficient battery management will increase correspondingly. Recent reports have emphasized the need of taking considerable caution while developing large-format lithium-ion batteries. From 2006 to 2008, a string of notebook computer fires highlighted the risk posed by a malfunction of even tiny groups of cells. Thermal incidents that happened during crash testing and on-road collisions marked the launch of electric cars propelled by lithium-ion batteries. A series of in-flight incidents caused by early usage of lithium-ion batteries in aviation resulted in the high-profile grounding of all Boeing 787 aircraft just a few months after its launch. Compared to other battery types, lithium-ion battery chemistries are far less resilient to abusive situations including overcharging, overdischarging, overheating, and high current. Electric shock and heat dangers related to battery systems are always present in high-voltage systems[3].

Although lithium-ion batteries are often referred to in generic terms, there are really several different types of materials and electrochemistries in use, each of which has a substantial impact on performance, lifespan, and safety. The demands of battery management systems are significantly impacted by this material choice, which also increases the difficulty of developing a battery management system.The software, hardware, integration, and testing of these components together, as well as the fact that a battery management system is in charge of battery safety, all should be built in line with best practices for safety-critical systems. The battery management system's whole development and life cycle, including the applications, design, implementation, testing, deployment, and servicing, should be focused on safety.

Up until recently, creating a battery management system required complex analog circuitry employing a large number of discrete devices or the laborious conversion of components made for compact lithium-ion battery packs used in laptops and other devices. Although cus- tom devices tried to make systems less complicated, there weren't enough lithium-ion systems to support applications beyond a few volumes. In 2008, a number of specialized integrated circuits were released with the large-format battery management system industry in mind in response to the growing interest in large-format systems. These integrated coils were designed with the aforementioned applications in mind, as opposed to earlier devices that were not intended for uses needing isolation and high voltages. These have made it possible for electronics to be smaller and contain fewer components, which has made implementation simpler and raised dependability all around. These devices' second-generation iterations have been around since 2011, and they continue to provide improved levels of safety, redundancy, and adaptability. Despite the availability of portable and trustworthy high-voltage analog circuits, careful consideration and analysis are needed to integrate these components into a fully functional system so that high-reliability and safety-critical systems may be deployed with confidence.

As a result of the widespread use of high-energy lithium-ion battery systems, a variety of safety standards for their design, manufacture, and validation have been developed. There are currently few standards and recommendations that are adopted across all apps. In order to address battery management issues, designers of battery management systems and battery systems are often compelled to start from scratch and apply unique research to their difficulties. Many who have expertise with embedded control systems are unfamiliar with the high voltages and high energy content involved.There is undoubtedly no perfect answer to every battery management issue. Numerous crucial decisions must be made, taking into account the different battery system applications, the battery technology to be used, the product mix that the battery management system is expected to work with, the demand for auxiliary components, and the required levels of scalability and modularity.

Large-format lithium-ion systems are utilized in many applications that demand more precision than many earlier battery-powered applications. Lithium-ion batteries provide special issues for determining the battery state of charge that require more complicated approaches than other batteries. For completing many of the challenging software tasks needed by a battery management system, such as calculating state of charge, battery capacity, model parameters, and power constraints, several simulation and modeling methodologies have been put forward in scientific literature. The selection of battery characteristics has made extensive use of ideas from state estimation and control theory. The majority of this book will be devoted to a survey of the most popular strategies and a discussion of potential real-world implementations.

In addition to the battery cells, a large-format battery system includes a variety of other parts, such as sensors and actuators, with which the battery management system often interacts. The monitoring circuits and processing algorithms collaborate with these parts to give total control and optimize battery performance. To guarantee a safe battery system, a good battery management system is required yet insufficient. Battery safety is a comprehensive concept that encompasses all levels, including active materials and cell components, cell design, module construction, mechanical, electrical, and thermal design of battery packs, as well as management and control tools and protective strategies.

The durability needed to withstand various failure scenarios of both the battery cells and the battery management system itself is given special attention. Battery systems may respond negatively to mechanical abuse or manufacturing flaws, as well as to temperature, charge, and current excesses. Failures of the battery management system may make these occurrences undetectable or, worse, worsen their symptoms. The burden of protecting large-format battery systems against abuse and reducing the danger of battery problems falls squarely on the shoulders of those who build battery management systems. Emerging concepts include redundant designs, reliability and safety assessments, and risk quantification. Every component of a well-designed battery management system, as well as their integration and the procedures used to design, construct, and test the finished product, are affected by system safety, and precise analysis techniques are used to quantify the risks associated with the integrated battery system and battery management system as a whole.

By monitoring battery reactions when the battery is operating normally, modern battery management systems are capable of carrying out all or virtually all of their necessary activities. It used to be possible for battery management systems to conduct the necessary measurements by means of specific cycling or current injection, but this is no longer the norm.The cost of the battery system is not greatly increased by a suitable battery management system. This book's approaches, designs, and strategies are intended to result in systems that provide respectable performance at affordable prices. To achieve realistic cost objectives, complexity of circuits, models, and algorithms must often be reduced. The best strategies to make these trade-offs are described.

Additionally, significant progress has been made in the creation of predictive algorithms for sensing and estimating hidden battery metrics like state of charge. Modern battery management systems use a battery model that was created using first-principles simulations of the underlying physics and/or cell characterization tests. By dynamically measuring the model's inputs while the battery is running, this model may be updated. This guarantees not only the model's accuracy but also the ability to track the battery's degeneration over time, gauge its health, and take necessary action.Competence in the areas of analog and digital hardware design, software analysis, system engineering, safety analysis, as well as a working understanding of electrochemical energy storage foundations and the modeling of electrochemical systems, are necessary for success in the creation of battery management systems.

DISCUSSION

Challenges

The performance of the management electronics will need to change when lithium-ion batteries are integrated into increasingly sophisticated devices. Higher degrees of dependability are necessary for mission-critical applications including those in the aviation, aerospace, medical, and military industries, which also exclude the option of turning down the battery system in order to maintain system security. Additionally, many of these essential applications cannot tolerate failures in the complicated challenge of battery status prediction in these sorts of applications.New management capabilities will also be required as a result of new battery technology. For increased safety, energy capacity, and longevity, new active materials are always being researched, which results in various battery cell behavior. To fully enjoy the enhanced safety, performance, and reliability afforded by these technologies, these additional impacts will need to be taken into account in battery management systems.

Battery management system development won't have to wait for functioning battery cells to start characterization of the battery system as development cycles quicken and modeling and simulation tools for designing battery cells grow more popular. The design of the battery cell and microscale simulations of the active materials may be used to predict the macroscopic electrical performance.Systems are anticipated to migrate to higher voltages when power semiconductors with higher operating voltages become available, posing additional difficulties due to increased cell density and electrical safety risks[4].

The degree of deviation or change in cell behavior that may presently be allowed by battery management systems without compromising performance is restricted. Battery-powered devices will have longer service lifetimes as their popularity develops, and replacement or service interval expectations will rise along with it. In order to accommodate potentially large variations in battery behavior, battery management systems must retain their ability to anticipate the state of the battery with accuracy.For many years to come, the field of lithium-ion batteries is projected to be fruitful, resulting in new developments in the transportation and energy storage industries. Battery management systems will need to adapt as new battery advancements come into play. Battery management systems are still in the early stages of development, and large-format battery systems are only getting started. This dynamic field will help create a sustainable and environmentally sound future by altering the way energy is generated and used.

Basics of Lithium-Ion Batteries

Utilizing batteries

Although lithium-ion batteries function using the same electrochemical principles as all other batteries, there are a few key differences that need be taken into account when developing battery management systems for lithium-ion based systems.In most circumstances, a lithium-ion battery cell does not contain metallic lithium. Both the safety of the cell and the battery's capacity for repeated cycling are greatly enhanced by this. Lithium ions are intercalated into the electrode materials of both electrodes. Compared to many other electrochemical processes, intercalation is extremely reversible, which contributes to lithium ion batteries' excellent cycle life and electrode stability.In comparison to other battery types, lithium-ion batteries have very low self-discharge rates. They may thus be utilized in situations where the batteries are anticipated to perform well when the system is turned on but are not charged for extended periods of time. Due to the fact that lithium-ion batteries are resistant to "memory" effects, users may charge and discharge them much more freely than with conventional batteries. Throughout the state of charge range, lithium-ion batteries typically have a very high coulombic efficiency.

Other battery types have the ability to trickle charge continually at a low rate, even after 100% state of charge has been attained, offering an inbuilt balancing function when the pack is completely charged and allowing for a straightforward means of detecting the fully charged state. This method of using lithium-ion batteries is not recommended since even extremely slow trickle charging may cause overcharging, battery damage, and potentially dangerous circumstances.Aqueous electrolytes are used in most batteries. An aqueous electrolyte cannot be used in lithium ion cells due to the high voltages present. The organic solvents that make up the nonaqueous electrolytes have high vapor pressures and are combustible. These electrolytes' high flammability and reactivity provide more serious flammability risks than those associated with other battery types.Lithium-ion batteries' high performance has pros and cons. These batteries are often chosen for a particular application because to their high energy content and power capacity, however if anything goes wrong, their high performance might result in a more serious incident. There is a possibility of a more uncontrolled release of energy and significantly higher short-circuit currents. A variety of other internal processes that take occur when lithium-ion batteries degrade may also release extra energy[5].

Construction of batteries

The parts of a lithium-ion cell are as follows:

1. Favorable Electrode;
2. Adverse Electrode;
3. Electrolyte;
4. Separator;
5. Enclosure.

Each electrode is made up of an electrode material that has been deposited on a metal foil that serves as both a substrate and a current collector. The electrode material includes chemicals to boost the conductivity of both lithium ions and electrons, active compounds that store lithium, binders and other materials to give structural integrity, and materials that have excellent adhesion to the metal foil.The extra components in the electrode materials enable ionic conductivity between the electrolyte and the active material as well as electronic conductivity between the active material particles and the current collector. The liquid electrolyte used in cells is typically made up of nonaqueous organic solvents with dissolved lithium salts. Ethylene carbonate, diethylene carbonate, and dimethylene carbonate are often used materials for electrolytes. Lithium hexafluorophosphate is often used as a lithium salt. Lithium-ion electrolytes are not corrosive, in contrast to aqueous electrolytes, which are sometimes very acidic or alkaline solutions; nonetheless, the solvents utilized are extremely flammable and have a relatively high vapor pressure, increasing the danger of fire and explosion if cells are vented. The majority of lithium-ion batteries are not wet-type batteries, where the electrolyte is absorbed primarily into the active material and separator and fills the inside of the enclosure.

Some lithium batteries use a polymer electrolyte in their construction. In order to prevent the liquid electrolyte's flammability, conductive polymers have a lower ionic conductivity than liquid batteries. The separator is a porous polymer layer that divides the two electrodes while acting as a passageway for lithium ions. Polyethylene and polypropylene are the materials that are utilized the most often. In order to avoid short circuits and to successfully allow lithium ions to move between electrodes, the very thin separator layer has to adequately keep the anode and cathode apart. A container must completely encapsulate the cell. To avoid contamination and electrolyte loss, the container has to be tightly closed. It must be strong enough to withstand misuse and safeguard the comparatively delicate contents of the cell. The most typical types of cell confinement include:

Small-format cylindrical cells were the most prevalent standard form factors for lithium-ion batteries at the time of authoring. The 18650 and the 26650 are the two most often used standard sizes. The negative terminal of the cell, which has the positive terminal and vent at one end, often makes up the majority of the can-shaped enclosure. A single "jelly-roll" of electrodes and a separator are used in cylindrical cells[6].

Prismatic: Prismatic cells provide a sturdy, rectangular-shaped iron enclosure. After construction but before electrolyte filling, the enclosure is typically sealed using laser welding. Prismatic cells have a greater range of sizes and forms and may be packed more densely than cylindrical cells. Manufacturers may have different vent and terminal placements.

Pouch: Pouch cells are encased in a pouch comprised of two plastic film pieces that have been welded together at the edges. The bag has metallic tabs that stick out for attaching to the cell. In one dimension, the direction in which the lithium ions move, pouch cells are often relatively flat. The electrode and separator may be wrapped in pouch or prismatic cells, stacked, or folded. Cells in pouches often vent at the edge where the pouch is closed.

Cellular Chemistry

The term "battery chemistry" is often used to refer to the materials used for the two electrodes' lithium storage as well as the electrolyte's chemical make-up. The selection of cathode material is most often meant when the phrase "battery chemistry" is used. An anode made of carbon is used in many lithium-ion batteries. It is crucial to remember that the choice of anode and cathode materials, as well as other components in both electrodes, significantly affects how a battery behaves. The selection of battery chemistry will affect the battery management system in a variety of ways, according to a designer of a battery management system.

Here is a list of some typical battery chemical types:

Lithium cobalt oxide batteries, sometimes known as LCO, have a very high energy density. LCO cells with an 18650 form factor are used to make the majority of laptop battery packs. Most of the greatest energy density cells now on the market employ LCO. LCO is a hazardous substance, and LCO-based cells have the potential to release a lot of energy if they are overcharged or reach the temperature at which LCO degrades. With extra safety measures to reduce the dangers of this highly reactive chemical, LCO has been employed effectively in large-format applications involving a lot of tiny cells. Additionally, LCO is less stable than other electrode materials and does not perform particularly well in terms of cycle life. Compared to other typical cathode materials, LCO has the greatest cost per kilogram as a raw material, but due to its high energy density, it may have a lower cost per watt-hour when used in cells.

For lithium ion battery cathodes, lithium nickel oxide is a relatively recent material. Even though it has a worse safety profile than LCO, it has a greater energy density. Blends of nickel and cobalt have been devised to benefit from nickel's greater energy and cheaper cost while also enhancing the thermal stability of the cell. However, this has come at the price of the cell's rate capability owing to a slower rate of lithium diffusion[7].Oxides of nickel, manganese, and cobalt make up the NMC cathode material for lithium batteries. Due to its high energy and power density, reasonable cycle and calendar life, higher safety than pure cobalt cathodes, and strong performance at severe temperatures, NMC has been utilized effectively in hybrid and electric cars. Due to the high cost of cobalt, the lowered cobalt concentration lowers the material cost. In various NMC formulations, the proportions of nickel, manganese, and cobalt may also be changed. The most popular kind, also known as 1-1-1 NMC, employs equal proportions of all three components.

Nickel-cobalt-aluminum cathodes are highly specialized and only employed in a limited number of applications. A nickel-cobalt mix that is primarily utilized is combined with a minor quantity of aluminum oxide. In addition to having a higher energy capacity and better cycle life properties than LCO, NCA is also less expensive than LCO material. While LCO has a somewhat greater safety margin than NCA, all other typical cathode materials have a poorer safety margin. Compared to LCO cathodes, NCA cathodes have a lower voltage.Lithium manganese oxide/carbon: Lithium manganese oxide has the greatest cathode voltage among the most often used cathode materials, resulting in a very high cell voltage for manganese cathodes that is close to 4.2V when completely charged. LMO-based cells have a very high power capacity because of the material's extraordinarily low impedance. This happens because, unlike the two-dimensional channels used by LCO and LNO, the pathways for lithium insertion and dean- serration have a three-dimensional structure. Due to capacity loss, manganese-based cathodes have a low calendar and cycle life, particularly at high temperatures. Manganese dissolves into the electrolyte, causing capacity loss.

Energy density for LFP cells is between 90 and 140 Wh/kg (lithium iron phosphate/carbon). These cells would have a 3.3V nominal voltage and a 2.5V to 3.75V working voltage range. Depending on the particular formulation, LFP has a highly flat voltage discharge profile from 20% to 70% of the usable SOC range, with the voltage being about 3.3V. Instead of a steady decline in lithium concentration, the curve's flatness results from the discharge process's creation of a two-phase mixture. LiFePO4 requires several treatments and additions to work well since it is substantially less conductive in its pure condition than other cathode materials. Due to the lower voltage of LFP, more series cells are required to obtain a given system voltage, resulting in a lower watt-hour content for a given amp-hour capacity. The greatest level of safety among the usual cathode materials is provided by lithium iron phosphate, which is substantially more stable than other cathode materials. Compared to cathodes made of transition metal oxide, LFP material has a greater thermal runaway temperature and a lower energy evolution during cathode disintegration. LFP has a lower energy density than other cathode materials, which suggests that an LFP-based system would be bigger and heavier. The materials mentioned above for cathodes are often paired with an anode made of carbon[8].

Unlike the majority of the other materials covered here, lithium titanate is an anode material. Despite having a very rapid charge/discharge rate, lithium titanate cells have a relatively poor energy density, specific energy, and cell voltage. Lithium titanate-based batteries have extremely high cycle life capabilities but are much more expensive than most other cell types due to the very modest volume change of the anode material during charge and discharge compared to carbon. Many LTO cells have a 10,000 cycle life span at 80% depth of discharge. For many applications, LTO cells are desirable because they often have permitted recharge rates surpassing 10C, or 10 times the rate at which the battery can be charged in an hour. This allows for recharging durations of 10 minutes or less. LTO has a larger working temperature range than the majority of other cells. LTO enables quick recharge without the danger of lithium plating since LTO anodes run at voltages far higher than those needed for lithium plating. It also prevents the development of the SEI and permits the use of electrolytes with greater conductivities. These factors enable LTO cells to produce very high-power densities.

Dopants and additives are often used to modify these fundamental components. Dopants may alter the electrochemistry or the shape and structure of the substance. These could lessen the reactivity between the electrode material and electrolyte, boost the electrode material's conductivity, or enhance capacity. In addition to being proved to increase safety under abusive situations including overload, crush, and penetration, electrode coatings have been created to increase lifetime by reducing electrode breakdown or side effects.The particle shape and microstructure of the electrode have a major influence on performance as well as the chemical composition of the material because ions exchange at the interface of the electrode material and the electrolyte. Ions must diffuse to active sites in particles where ion change may take place, hence it is desired that these active sites be found in tiny particles having a wide surface area in contact with the electrolyte. The porosity of the particle must be adequate to enable the electrolyte to reach the surface. The surface to volume ratio and other parameters are also influenced by particle shape, which has a substantial impact on battery performance.

CONCLUSION

For the efficient and secure functioning of contemporary battery-based energy storage systems, such as electric vehicles (EVs) and renewable energy storage, Battery Management Systems (BMS) are essential components. In order to maximize battery performance, safety, and lifespan, BMS execute critical tasks such cell balancing, state of health (SOH) estimate, thermal management, charging and discharging control, problem detection and diagnostics, and communication with external systems. The precision of SOC and SOH estimates, the complexity of cell balancing algorithms, thermal management in harsh environments, integration with various battery chemistries, and adherence to safety rules and standards are all difficulties that BMS must overcome. To address these issues and get beyond constraints, BMS technology has to be improved by constant research, development, and innovation.

REFERENCES:

[1] K. Liu, K. Li, Q. Peng, and C. Zhang, "A brief review on key technologies in the battery management system of electric vehicles," *Frontiers of Mechanical Engineering*. 2019. doi: 10.1007/s11465-018-0516-8.

[2] M. U. Ali, A. Zafar, S. H. Nengroo, S. Hussain, M. J. Alvi, and H. J. Kim, "Towards a smarter battery management system for electric vehicle applications: A critical review of lithium-ion battery state of charge estimation," *Energies*. 2019. doi: 10.3390/en12030446.

[3] M. Berecibar, M. Garmendia, I. Gandiaga, J. Crego, and I. Villarreal, "State of health estimation algorithm of LiFePO4 battery packs based on differential voltage curves for battery management system application," *Energy*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.energy.2016.02.163.

[4] P. Pal, K. R. Devabalaji, and S. Priyadarshini, "Design of battery management system for residential applications," *Int. J. Eng. Trends Technol.*, 2020, doi: 10.14445/22315381/IJETT-V68I3P203S.

[5] M. A. Hannan, M. M. Hoque, A. Hussain, Y. Yusof, and P. J. Ker, "State-of-the-Art and Energy Management System of Lithium-Ion Batteries in Electric Vehicle Applications: Issues and Recommendations," *IEEE Access*. 2018. doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2018.2817655.

[6] C. Liu *et al.*, "Phase change materials application in battery thermal management system: A review," *Materials*. 2020. doi: 10.3390/ma13204622.

[7] S. Surya, V. Rao, and S. S. Williamson, "Comprehensive review on smart techniques for estimation of state of health for battery management system application," *Energies*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/en14154617.

[8] M. T. Lawder *et al.*, "Battery energy storage system (BESS) and battery management system (BMS) for grid-scale applications," *Proc. IEEE*, 2014, doi: 10.1109/JPROC.2014.2317451.

CHAPTER 2

IMPLICATIONS FOR THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

Ms. Renuka Bhagwat, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- renuka@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Battery Management Systems (BMS) play a pivotal role in modern energy storage systems, including electric vehicles (EVs) and renewable energy storage. This abstract provides an overview of the implications of BMS in various aspects, including performance, safety, and sustainability. The performance implications of BMS are significant, as they directly impact the efficiency, capacity, and lifespan of battery packs. BMS enable cell balancing, which ensures that all cells in a battery pack are charged and discharged evenly, maximizing the overall capacity and performance of the battery pack. BMS also facilitate precise state of charge (SOC) and state of health (SOH) estimation, providing accurate information about the battery's remaining capacity and health, enabling optimal charging and discharging control. This helps in extending the battery's lifespan and maintaining its performance over time. Additionally, BMS enable thermal management, preventing the battery from operating at extreme temperatures that can degrade performance, and ensuring efficient charging and discharging.

KEYWORDS:

Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV), Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), Lithium-Ion Battery, Regenerative Braking, State of Charge (SoC).

INTRODUCTION

While many lithium-ion chemistries may be covered by a measurement range of 0 to 5V, each chemistry has a distinct safe operating range, and voltages that are acceptable for one chemistry may not be safe for another. As battery management system developers strive for more accuracy, some work has been devoted into optimizing the measurement range to place more precision in the usable working range of the cell. The battery management system will probably need to be changed for various chemistries if the hardware's maximum measuring capabilities does not accurately cover the complete range of all the cell types mentioned above.

Relationship between voltage and SOC: Numerous aspects of the battery management system will be influenced by the voltage-SOC curve's form. For an accurate SOC calculation, a flat voltage profile during discharge suggests that a more precise measuring circuit and battery model are required. Additionally, it could affect how accurate of a battery model is needed and how much simplification is acceptable while still keeping good SOC performance. The SOC/OCV curve's form might be impacted by the inclusion of dopants.

Cell internal dynamics: Specifics will be covered later, but cell design, chemistry, and a number of other factors will significantly affect internal cell dynamics, such as polarization and hysteresis, suggesting that a different battery model may be necessary for various cells using the same or similar chemistry. Hardware that can make measurements over extended periods of inactivity may be necessary for cells with particularly long-lasting internal polarization in order to accurately estimate status.

Temperature ranges that are advised: The battery management system must have the ability to measure temperatures over the cell's full operational range. Although temperature accuracy may vary throughout this range, careful monitoring around key transition points in cell performance is crucial. It may be necessary to optimize measurement accuracy and range for a distinct cell chemistry with variable temperature characteristics.Self-discharge rate: Based on the self-discharge rate, cell balancing systems are sized. More balancing ability will be needed for cells with varying energy capacities, greater self-discharge rates, and/or more variance in self-discharge.

Characteristics of cell deterioration Maintaining the performance of battery management system algorithms while the basic performance of the cell changes due to cell aging is a difficulty for all battery management system engineers. Currently, most battery management systems are only partially capable of adjusting to the changes in dynamic behavior, increased self-discharge, increased self-discharge, and increased cell impedance that occur as cells age. The estimated service life of the cells in the application must be matched to the calendar and cycle life of the cell, to keep up with changing cell performance, a cell that degrades more quickly or that has been in use for a longer period of time will need greater adaptability from the battery management system.

Safety: Care must be taken to avoid dangers that might result in unsafe circumstances when using more reactive chemicals. However, it should be expected that a risk assessment is conducted when determining the needed dependability of different functions of the battery management system. This issue will be covered in more depth in the sections pertaining to functional safety. This risk assessment will always evaluate the severity of the response of the cell to a hypothetical battery management system failure and hence a decision in cell chemistry, size, or other design parameters will impact the battery management system needs[1], [2].

DISCUSSION

Safety

Despite recent improvements in cell technology and safety, all lithium-ion batteries still pose risks if they are operated outside of their safe working range. Demonstrations that cells have passed industry-standard abuse tests are not a sufficient assurance that the system delivers intrinsic safety and is resistant to all forms of abuse circumstances, especially in the case of large-format batteries. One of the primary purposes of battery management systems for lithium-ion battery systems is to ensure regulated battery use and avoid cell abuse. In addition to mitigating the risks associated with worst-case scenarios like a car collision or exposure to excessive heat, the battery management system must, with a high degree of confidence, prevent the battery from being misused in a manner that might lead to a dangerous failure mode.

Lithium-ion battery misuse scenarios include the following:

Overcharging: Overcharging is the process of charging a cell to a level that is higher than 100%. The cell voltage increases extremely fast and may go beyond the load device's or the monitoring circuit's permissible limits. An energy failure may result from overcharging, which sets off a series of irreversible breakdown pathways within the cell. This is true for both a single, severe overload and several smaller overcharges. Lithium-ion cells may be overloaded by even extremely low rates of charge current, unlike other battery types. Overcharging may result in dangerous circumstances such as thermal runaway, cell enlargement, venting, and more. When designing the battery management system, it is important to be aware of how resistant different cell types are to overcharging. The majority of lithium-ion batteries experience overcharge when the voltage exceeds a range of 3.75V to 4.2V.

Overdischarge: Overdischarge occurs when a cell is discharged beyond its 100% maximum depth of discharge. Cell voltage quickly decreases and, if the overdischarge current is strong enough, may even reverse. Reverse cell potential may result in management electronics failing and subsequent problems. Significant internal cell damage from overdischarge might include the anode foil dissolving. Safety issues can arise from further efforts to recharge a cell that has been severely and repeatedly overcharged. Since the battery management system cannot stop the self-discharge of the battery cells even when the battery system is separated from its load, overdischarge presents a unique difficulty. The minimum permitted discharge voltages per cell range from 1.8V to 2.5V.

High temperature: Exposure to high temperatures can cause thermal runaway, in which the activation temperature of a number of exothermic chemical reactions inside the cell is reached and the cell degrades quickly with a significant release of energy. This can result in the venting of the contents of the cell, an increase in temperature, fire, or explosion. High ambient temperatures, exposure to unusual heat sources, or battery overcharge that causes internal heating may all result in high temperatures. The allowable temperature range varies, but most cells start to degrade more quickly beyond 45–55°C and begin to reach safety thresholds at 60–100°C.

Low temperature: The majority of lithium-ion batteries have poor performance, particularly when it comes to charging. Charging at low temperatures may result in metallic lithium plating on the anode, which would irreversibly reduce capacity. There is also a chance that metallic "dendrite" development will occur, which might pierce the separator and result in an internal short circuit. Due to higher cell impedance at low temperatures, the capacity to discharge is likewise constrained. Many cells advise against charging below 0°C, however others allow low-rate charging as low as 10°C.

Overcurrent: The same kinds of responses as generalized overcharge and overdischarge may result from localized overcharge and discharge, which can be brought on by excessive charge and discharge currents. High currents may cause overheating situations by causing internal heating. The maximum permissible current varies significantly across cell types, is often varied during charge and discharge, and depends on both temperature and charge state. Due to the anode's limited capacity to receive lithium ions at fast rates, excessive charge currents may still result in lithium plating even if thermal effects are maintained under control.

defects in internal cells: Internal short circuits may result from the inclusion of foreign material, flaws in the cell separator, and other internal errors, which can result in heat events. A short circuit that is caused by foreign material that has entered the separator might result in localized heating and more separator degradation, which leads to more shorting. Due to a string of laptop battery fires between 2006 and 2008, these flaws received a lot of media attention; thus, strong measures must be in place to remedy them. Although the hazards associated with these flaws may be lessened, they will never completely disappear, hence it is important to take the proper precautions to stop thermal runaway from spreading across cells or modules. We'll talk about cutting-edge methods that may be able to detect this kind of "soft" short fault before it becomes dangerous.Mechanical stress, crush, or penetration: Mechanical damage to cells or systems may result in internal or external short-circuiting, which can cause electrolyte and cell contents to leak out or vent, thermal runaway, or fire and shock dangers because of electric arcing. Best practices state that safety and resistance to mechanical abuse are required at every level of the system development, including cell materials and design, battery modules, pack design, system integration, and battery management system behavior. Ensuring robust safety against mechanical defects is a difficult, interdisciplinary task with no assurance that a severe impact won't create a dangerous condition.

While not notably harmful, the likelihood of the majority of lithium-ion battery failure mechanisms rises with age. The cycle life of lithium-ion batteries ranges from 300–800 cycles to tens of thousands of cycles for cells designed for long cycle life. The calendar life of cells designed for the longest service lifespan might range from a few years to 10 to 15 years. To provide the maximum level of battery system safety, the battery management system often has main duty for avoiding the first five incidents and secondary responsibility for providing a fast reaction to the other three.

Failure to stop these abusive circumstances may result in thermal events like fire and explosion, the discharge of hazardous and combustible materials, and electric arc and shock in large-format battery systems. The battery management system for large-format lithium-ion batteries has to provide strong and dependable protection against these occurrences as a consequence. Large-format systems with many of cells have the potential for thermal events to spread from one cell to the next. Therefore, overcharging or discharging even one cell too much is dangerous. Even if propagation does not take place, the reduction in total pack performance caused by a single damaged cell shows that all cells need to be carefully regulated to prevent overcharging or over discharging of any one cell.

The susceptibility of the cells being utilized to certain sorts of risks, as well as the safety standards and application environment, must be understood by designers of battery management systems. Less durable cells will need more safety considerations in the development of the battery management system. The unique use heavily influences the safety standards. In the case of a battery fire or other thermal incident, many battery-powered equipment have the potential to hurt or harm people or their property. Lithium-ion batteries will start to be used more often as battery technology advances in critical applications where the battery must continue to deliver energy and power to avoid catastrophic collapse of the system.

Longevity

All battery technologies raise the possibility of battery systems losing performance with time, both in terms of cycle life and calendar life. Although lithium-ion batteries perform better in terms of cycle life and calendar life than many other batteries, the size and expense of large-format battery systems often need the battery management system to play a role in improving the battery cells' lifetime.Power fade and capacity fade are the two main ways that lithium-ion battery cells degrade. The battery's useful capacity often diminishes with time, lowering the amount of energy it can hold. Additionally, when a battery ages, its internal impedance rises, decreasing the amount of power that can be extracted from the cell.The lifespan of batteries is influenced by a variety of parameters, including the following, despite the fact that various battery chemistries, designs, and technologies may have very varied life spans:

Temperature: Temperature accelerates a variety of chemical processes that cause capacity loss and power fading. Low-temperature charging may result in the anode's lithium plating, which causes a premature loss of capacity.Operating window: Compared to operating at an intermediate state of charge, operation at high and low levels of charge tends to be more harmful to the battery. Batteries will often age more quickly if they are both deeply depleted and completely charged.

Charge/Discharge Rate:A battery will typically degrade more quickly with higher charge and discharge rates. The impact of charge and discharge rates may sometimes have quite diverse effects on battery life. The battery management system is typically in charge of somewhat regulating each of these elements in large-format battery systems. The batteries may be actively heated and cooled, performance can be limited when temperatures approach extremes, or a simple high- and low-temperature shutdown can be used for temperature management. To achieve the anticipated lifetime, the battery management system must correctly assess the level of charge and guarantee that the required operating window is adhered to. The maximum permitted charge and discharge rates must also be sent to the load device by the battery management system, often in real-time. The battery management system is in charge of managing an optimal balance between safety, longevity, and performance since the operating conditions for maximum life span are more stringent than those for safety. Tracking distinctive parameters regarding the battery's life, such as the highest and lowest temperatures encountered, the quantity of charge/discharge cycles, and the amount of time in use, is often valuable as well. This data may be used to establish if the battery cells have been subjected to unusual circumstances. The battery management system is required to monitor the battery's remaining lifespan as it matures, which is often described as the battery's "state of health." SOH may take into account forecast inputs like the number of cycles and time in service on the calendar in addition to in-the-moment battery data.

Performance

Modern large-format battery systems are expected to include a battery management system that does more than just avoid performance degradation and guarantee safe operation. The user is anticipated to be able to take use of the full capabilities of contemporary lithium-ion batteries. Therefore, in order for the application to utilise the battery effectively, the battery management system must provide precise and dynamic input regarding the battery's potential.The significance of improving battery system performance is heightened by the relatively high cost of battery energy storage. The cost of the system must be maintained to a minimum even though battery systems are typically sized to guarantee that appropriate performance is available during end-of-life and off-nominal usage situations.

Less oversizing will be necessary and the price of the battery will be cheaper if it has a battery management system that can use the battery closer to its limitations. A thorough grasp of battery capabilities may be essential for the safety of the whole battery-powered system in certain situations when battery systems are utilized to carry out functions that cannot be safely interrupted or terminated. There will be detrimental effects if a battery that powers an aircraft engine or life support system is turned off to avoid overdischarge.A large-format battery management system is intended to meet the following critical performance criteria: State of charge: The load device uses state of charge to calculate the amount of runtime that is available. State of charge is also connected to many other battery characteristics, including impedance and power capacity[3].

Condition of health for many applications, a model of the battery's aging effects is crucial since it can predict how long the battery will still be viable while also simulating how its behavior will vary over time.Power limitations to evaluate the battery's real-time charge and discharge capacity, the majority of "smart" battery applications connect with the load device.Inaccuracies in these parameters will need the use of a bigger battery in order to achieve the desired performance levels. The battery may be pushed longer and perform better with the same cells if the battery management system appropriately assesses the battery state.

Integration

A lot of contemporary battery management systems are required to do tasks more than only tracking performance statistics and monitoring battery health. In order to measure data from extra sensors and inputs and to regulate actuators and outputs that power auxiliary tasks, integrated systems depend on the battery management system. Systems with a high degree of thermal integration may make use of the battery management system to keep track of a number of temperature sensors located all over the system and to regulate fans, pumps, and heating/cooling equipment to keep the battery temperature within a specified range. In order to preserve system safety, it is typical for the battery management system to regulate contactors and relays by disconnecting the battery if required[4], [5].

Large-Format Systems

A single battery cell powers a load device in the most basic battery-powered applications. To stop the flow of electricity between the battery and the gadget, there could be a switch or other control mechanism. A main or secondary battery might be used. In general, the load device is unable to receive any data on the battery's state. If the battery is severely depleted, at a very low temperature, the incorrect kind, or connected in the incorrect polarity, the load could not function properly or at all. Flashlights, battery-operated radios, several basic consumer devices, and even the 12-V starting and ignition system in many cars are examples of such systems. In these kinds of applications, the quantity of individual battery cells is often low.In the perspective of this book, large-format systems are ones having two key distinctions. In comparison to the straightforward electrical connection that generates energy, the number of battery cells is significantly bigger and the interactions between the battery and the load device are more complex[6], [7].

Small-capacity batteries, such as the widely used cylindrical 18650 and 26650, or any other sorts of cells, may be used to build large-format systems. The form factors of lithium-ion batteries, apart from their tiny cylindrical diameters, are not widely standardized. Typically, individual cells range in capacity from 1.5 Ah to 60 Ah. Trade-offs between energy capacity, power capacity, and life occur in a particular cell form factor, and each application determines which cell to use.The following section provides some instances of lithium-ion batteries utilized in large-format systems.

1. There are battery management systems for smaller-scale "smart" batteries, such those used in laptops and cell phones, however due to certain criteria, these systems are not appropriate for big size systems.
2. Electric cars, such as hybrid, plug-in hybrid, and battery electric vehicles, grid-tied utility scale energy storage systems, and backup power systems are a few examples of large-format battery uses.
3. Large-format systems typically have energy capacities in the range of kilowatt-hours to megawatt-hours and operating voltages of 250-1,200 VDC, in contrast to the typical laptop battery, which consists of six 18650 lithium-ion cells, each with an operating voltage of 3.7V nominal and an amp-hour capacity of 2.2-2.4 Ah for a total energy capacity of about 50 watt-hours.

Large-format systems often need high voltage, but not always. Electrical efficiency rises for a given amount of energy storage and power as voltages climb and currents reduce. There are significant variations between the voltages used in modern large-format battery management system electronics and those often found in other kinds of embedded control systems, but the distinction between high and low voltage systems is not always clear-cut. Electronics for high-voltage applications are designed with different components from those used in many low-voltage battery systems, which are common in consumer electronics products. All phases of the electronic control system's development should be conducted with the assumption that systems running at 42 VDC or more are high-voltage systems.

Another important differentiator for large-format systems is the requisite degree of safety. Electrical shock and arc dangers become substantially more severe and dangerous at high voltages, hence the amount of caution needed to reduce these risks must also grow proportionately. Battery currents can surpass several hundred amps, which may pose serious risks if they pass via connections with high impedance. With hundreds to thousands of battery cells, large-format devices are capable of storing tens to hundreds of kilowatt-hours of power. The potential energy release is substantially greater in the case of heat events, short circuits, or electrical shocks. The battery of a typical electric car may hold 500 times more energy than that of a laptop.

Plant Balance

Beyond the battery cells and battery management system, large-format battery systems include other components. A contemporary battery system also includes a variety of additional crucial parts and features. The battery is often connected and disconnected from the load device using contactors or relays. As a result, many batteries don't have voltage on their terminals unless they are linked to and in active communication with a load. The battery management system often controls these contactors and relays to make sure the battery connects to the load when necessary and disconnects when not required or in the case of a major problem. In many situations, contactor control is seen as crucial since losing it prohibits the battery from being disconnected in the event of a danger[8].

Sensors for measuring current and temperature are often used by the battery management system. The battery management system modules may directly monitor current in certain systems. The battery is housed in an enclosure that is suitable for its environment and use. By limiting contact with electrically live objects, the enclosure shields the battery cells from dangers of electrical shock. When an enclosure or connection is opened, a system interlock is often utilized to disconnect or de-energize it. Nearly usually, overcurrent protection devices both passive and active—are implemented. The condition of these devices may be monitored and managed by the battery management system.

Modern battery management systems are using a variety of new technologies for new methods of identifying extra battery risks. These techniques include spotting internal short circuits and cell venting. Although they are still in the early stages of research, these technologies will be used to increase the safety of large-format systems. The use of these technologies in bigger size devices is constrained by smaller lithium batteries' poor energy capacity and severe cost sensitivity. For contemporary battery systems, isolation or ground fault detection is often necessary. This function recognizes situations where people could be exposed to voltages that might be dangerous via contact with ordinarily non-electrified battery system components. The voltages found in ordinary computer or consumer electronics applications, in comparison, are not even harmful when in direct contact, necessitating the use of minimal, if any, electrical shock precautions. Depending on the application, further special functions could be included, such the ability to turn on fire suppression systems and manage power electronics.

Interface for Load

There is more than just the high-power electrical connection between the battery and load in large-format systems, which is used to provide power to run the load. Information may be transmitted between the battery system and the load device through a communication channel. Battery charge, health, and charge and discharge limitations are typical examples of information; requests to connect or detach the battery or notifications that the battery is about to connect or disengage;Commands to control auxiliary components of the battery system; values of measurable parameters such as cell and pack voltages, temperatures, current, and power.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Battery Management Systems (BMS) have wide-ranging effects and are essential for the efficient and secure functioning of contemporary energy storage systems. The effectiveness, sustainability, and safety of battery packs used in electric vehicles (EVs), renewable energy storage, and other applications are impacted by BMS. Because BMS may enhance battery performance via cell balancing, SOC and SOH estimates, and thermal control, their effects on performance are clear. Battery management systems (BMS) make ensuring that batteries function at their best, increasing their lifetime and preserving efficiency. BMS has significant safety ramifications since it guards against overcharging, over discharging, and overheating, avoiding safety concerns and reducing those related to battery operation. The sustainability implications of BMS are especially crucial since they help promote sustainability by maximizing battery use, decreasing waste, and maximizing resource usage.

REFERENCES:

[1] C. Pastor-Fernández, T. Bruen, W. D. Widanage, M. A. Gama-Valdez, and J. Marco, "A Study of Cell-to-Cell Interactions and Degradation in Parallel Strings: Implications for the Battery Management System," *J. Power Sources*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.jpowsour.2016.07.121.

[2] K. Uddin, A. D. Moore, A. Barai, and J. Marco, "The effects of high frequency current ripple on electric vehicle battery performance," *Appl. Energy*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2016.06.033.

[3] X. Hu, C. Zou, X. Tang, T. Liu, and L. Hu, "Cost-optimal energy management of hybrid electric vehicles using fuel cell/battery health-aware predictive control," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, 2020, doi: 10.1109/TPEL.2019.2915675.

[4] H. Karlsen, T. Dong, Z. Yang, and R. Carvalho, "Temperature-dependence in battery management systems for electric vehicles: Challenges, criteria, and solutions," *IEEE Access*, 2019, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2019.2943558.

[5] Q. Lin, J. Wang, R. Xiong, W. Shen, and H. He, "Towards a smarter battery management system: A critical review on optimal charging methods of lithium ion batteries," *Energy*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.energy.2019.06.128.

[6] J. Kim, J. Oh, and H. Lee, "Review on battery thermal management system for electric vehicles," *Applied Thermal Engineering*. 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.applthermaleng.2018.12.020.

[7] H. Ren, Y. Zhao, S. Chen, and T. Wang, "Design and implementation of a battery management system with active charge balance based on the SOC and SOH online estimation," *Energy*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.energy.2018.10.133.

[8] W. He, M. Pecht, D. Flynn, and F. Dinmohammadi, "A physics-based electrochemical model for lithium-ion battery state-of-charge estimation solved by an optimised projection-based method and moving-window filtering," *Energies*, 2018, doi: 10.3390/en11082120.

CHAPTER 3

CHARACTERISTICS OF BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

Dr. Sreenivasappa Bhupasandra, Associate Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication (Communication System Engineering), Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id-sreenivasappabv@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Battery Management Systems (BMS) are essential components for the efficient and safe operation of battery-based energy storage systems. This abstract provides an overview of the key characteristics of BMS, including their functions, features, and requirements. The features of BMS vary depending on the specific application and battery chemistry. Common features include voltage and current monitoring, temperature sensing, communication interfaces, control algorithms, and safety measures such as overvoltage and overcurrent protection. Advanced BMS may also include features such as predictive SOC and SOH estimation, adaptive balancing algorithms, and advanced thermal management strategies.

KEYWORDS:

Battery Monitoring, Cell Voltage Measurement, Charging Algorithms, Current Sensing, Energy Storage, Lithium-Ion Batteries.

INTRODUCTION

The battery may experience high rates of charge and discharge capable of completely charging or draining the battery in a couple of minutes in a high-power grid storage application used for frequency control. Within seconds, the battery current may switch from a quick charge to a rapid drain. The battery management system's responsiveness, which can determine the battery's capacities every 50–100 milliseconds, is a vital characteristic for this kind of application.

Variations and Divergence

The idea that all battery cells are the same should be avoided in many large-format devices. Variability in the manufacturing process will affect a number of factors, including self-discharge, impedance, and capacity. This variance could become more pronounced as people age as a result of both changes in how different cells function and hidden impacts of manufacturing variation that become apparent over time. Designing large-format battery systems should reduce both of these disadvantages.The following presumptions should be made with the majority of large-format applications as a result:

Every battery cell's capacity varies. No two cells will be precisely the same, despite the fact that contemporary battery makers are reaching improved consistency and quality. All battery cells have capacities that are different from their quoted capacities. Large-format systems often run for long enough periods of time before the cells start to show capacity decline. Importantly, depending on how the cell is aged and manufacturing variations from cell to cell, not all cells will exhibit capacity fading at the same pace.Each battery cell has a self-discharge rate that is not zero. Although the self-discharge rates of lithium-ion batteries are orders of magnitude lower than those of many previous battery technologies, it is risky to assume that the rate is zero.Each battery cell self-discharges at a different pace. The cells' rate of charge loss should never be taken for granted. As a result, even batteries with comparable capacity may vary in state of charge depending on state of charge differences.For all the aforementioned reasons, it is advised to presume that a group of "identical" series-connected cells that have all been subjected to the same current profile do not all have an equivalent state of charge.To avoid the condition of individual cells diverging, a large-format battery management system must make up for these less-than-ideal properties. Years of uninterrupted use of the battery system are to be anticipated. Cells' minor variations must not over time result in significant performance changes[1], [2].

As a result, the battery management system has to take on a variety of new tasks. Cell balancing, which equalizes the level of charge between series linked cells, is necessary to get the most performance out of the battery system. The fact that not every cell is the same and that these outlying cells will be the first to leave the safe operating region must be taken into account by power limit and state of charge algorithms. With time and under different operating modes, the limiting cell or cells may vary. The ability of large-format battery management systems to manage a battery pack as a collection of independent and unique cells is crucial for all of the aforementioned reasons. For a product to have a long service life, production and exposure variations must be handled and regulated. Most of the time, these changes are negligible, and providing an appropriate level of performance without incurring excessive costs is a problem for the design of cost-effective battery management systems.

DISCUSSION

Application Parameters

Similar to how certain cell properties will have an effect on battery management system design, there are several variables of the intended application that will have a significant influence on the design of the battery management system. The first set of characteristics to be understood is the battery system's "size". The battery pack will be made up of a number of series components that are connected together and each have one or more parallel cells. The sum of the individual cell's energy and charge content, multiplied by the sum of the series and parallel cell counts, determines the system's overall energy and charge content. In many cases, the amount of energy actually used by the application will be significantly reduced compared to the cell's total energy content. This is done to extend the battery system's cycle and calendar lives, as well as to increase safety margins against overcharging and overdischarging and/or to provide reserve capacity in case of emergency. The voltage of the system is a result of the voltage range of each individual cell, which is mostly determined by the chemistry choice and the quantity of series components.

A greater number of parallel cells will raise the charge capacity and lower the total string resistance, enhancing power capability for a given cell capacity and number of series components. Any battery management system development program has to include the cell chemistry, capacity, series/parallel arrangement, system voltage range, and necessary energy and power availability. The desired design space must be completely described if the battery management system is planned to support a variety of different configurations of the aforementioned parameters. By internally conducting basic scaling calculations, a well-designed customizable battery management system may make the configuration process clear and logically related to physical characteristics like the quantity of cells in series and parallel.

A thorough understanding of the environment is necessary. Components of battery management systems must be kept dry and clean since they work at high voltages. The battery management system will need to provide its own degree of protection against dust and moisture incursion if the environment does not fulfill these standards. Battery management system components will be subject to mechanical stress, vibration, and g-forces in transportation applications. Strict restrictions on system mass will be required for applications like aerospace. The majority of commercial and industrial applications will have interference and compatibility standards for electromagnetic fields.

Serviceability requirements are one aspect that may have a big influence on design decisions. Large-format battery systems may be anticipated to have service lifetimes of 10 to 20 years or more, in contrast to laptop and mobile phone batteries, which are sometimes only changed with the complete device. Battery modules are likely to be changed throughout this period owing to their high cost, and components of the battery management system should be serviceable and interchangeable as well. In pursuit of lower prices and smaller packaging, consumer electronics often do away with servicing capabilities, while large-format systems in important applications will need to include replacement battery management system components.

The battery management system and related connections must be simple to detach and reconnect with little effort since these systems may have criteria for the maximum permissible downtime or minimum availability. For any design of a large-format battery management system, take into account the system's dependability, uptime, and service life. Internal adjustments will also be prompted by high reliability systems. Microprocessors are intended to function continuously for long periods of time without causing data or program corruption, which presents unique design issues that are not present in normal battery-powered systems. Although batteries for backup power for important applications may only sometimes run during times of power outage, dependability is still a major problem since it is expected that the system would always function.

Numerous potentialsuse for large-format batteries and the related management systems are subject to special requirements. The integration of distributed and renewable generating sources, stationary energy storage systems, and battery systems for uninterruptible power supply may all be expected to comply with UL1973. This standard was created for use in the rail sector and is still relevant today.Automobile batteries with high voltage often adhere to a variety of industry-wide standards as well as strict specifications from the individual manufacturer. When doing isolation detection in automotive applications, the FMVSS 305/SAE J1766 standard should be followed.

The DO-178B standard for aerospace software applies to battery management systems because they include failure modes that might result in hazardous failure modes that could jeopardize an aircraft's ability to fly. Automotive battery management systems are considered electrical/electronic systems and are covered by the functional safety requirements of ISO 26262 standard. Batteries may be fully charged over many hours or completely discharged in only a few minutes, depending on their capacity. Battery management system needs are impacted by charge and discharge rates. Higher polarization and hysteresis levels are a result of fast charge and discharge rates. Battery models that are correct at low rates may become insufficient at higher charge and discharge rates as a result of this. The inaccuracy associated with amp-hour integration, which also calls for better model fidelity, is increased by low rates, on the other hand.

condition of charge and condition of health estimate accuracy requirements may vary depending on the application. Applications that are anticipated to use a significant amount of the battery's energy will need more precise SOC estimations than those with a huge buffer at the end of charge and discharge. The condition of charge and capacity estimation must be improved in line with essential estimations of the remaining energy. This may result in more sophisticated models that need greater processing power, more accurate measurements, and quicker measurement frequency.

Synopsis of the System

An essential stage in the creation of a battery management system is the black-box perspective. It should detail every interaction the battery management system will have with the host application, other battery components like sensors and contactors, as well as the battery cells. The external interface between the battery and the load device or many devices that work together to fulfill these activities contains the largest volume and rate of information. These operations may also entail data-rich interfaces between specific battery management system components.Drawing distinct representations for logical and physical interfaces is often beneficial. Each logical interface or signal that enters or exits the battery management system consists of a single piece of data. Examples of signals include desired relay status, battery pack current, and cell voltage.

Electrical circuits make of one or more physical interfaces. A single physical circuit may transport several logical signals in the case of communication buses. An analog or discrete input or output requires a physical interface that can only convey one signal. The same logical function may be performed by two or more physical circuits in fail-safe or redundant control circuits. Each physical interface's electrical characteristics should be precisely defined. A voltage range, input impedance, and maximum applied voltage, for instance, are all characteristics of an analog input. The voltage range for the logic 0 and 1 states, the maximum current that can be given, and the time it takes for the output to go from on to off are all characteristics of a digital output.

In addition to being a helpful tool in systems engineering, the idea of information concealing is a recommended practice in software engineering. Only the information needed for each subsystem to function should be shared with other subsystems. It is often assumed in the context of battery management systems that the load device and other network components need all of the data that the battery management system uses to execute its internal computations, including the whole set of cell voltages and temperatures. However, a successful system design will only provide each device the data they need.

Since there may be various galvanic isolation barriers present throughout the system, it is often crucial to determine the voltage reference for electrical signals when developing large-format battery management systems. For instance, a certain voltage could be referenced to earth ground, which would be the potential of the battery system's chassis or casing, or the high-voltage stack, where the negative terminal of the lowest-voltage cell is frequently isolated from the chassis and is typically thought of as the reference potential. There are more floating voltages that are not related to these two potentials. It is common practice to distinguish between analog, digital, and power grounds for earth ground reference signals. These grounds are all referred to the same potential but maintained apart to avoid delicate analog signals from being affected by quick digital switching transients or switching of high-power devices.

Typical Inputs

Cell voltage, string current, and cell temperature are the three fundamental parameters that should be measured by the battery management system to identify the battery condition. The majority of the time, sensors are not used in between the battery cells and the battery management system to detect the voltage of the cells directly. External sensor devices are not employed because synchronous measurements are necessary and a high degree of precision is needed. If the voltage measurements are divided into modules or if the battery management system is designed for multiple battery pack sizes with potentially more cells, the number of inputs for a battery pack with n series cells will range from n to a higher value depending on the architecture. These inputs have a massive high-voltage stack while having relatively modest voltages individually. As a result, they often run at dangerous voltages in comparison to other voltages in the battery pack and ground potential.

To prevent over- and under-voltage circumstances, compute SOC and SOH, establish and enforce current and power limitations, and identify battery failures, the measurements of the cell voltage are employed. The cell voltages themselves serve as the logical and physical connectors for the voltage signals. In order for the voltage measured at the battery management system to precisely match the voltage existing at the terminals of the battery cells, the battery management system design and implementation should attempt to achieve a unity-gain transfer function. Meeting this objective becomes more difficult when the cell voltage monitoring circuit combines components with the cell balancing circuitry. It is also typical practice to measure the voltage of each module or substring as well as the voltage of the whole battery series string. This extra layer of monitoring offers a substantial advantage in terms of failure detections, as will be detailed later[3].

The battery management system measures battery current using one of the techniques mentioned. The flow of current is two-way. The measurement of the battery current should be made at a single location that includes the currents going to all load devices, notwithstanding the possibility that there may be several devices on the high-voltage bus, some of which may only be able to perform one function. The battery current is often converted to a voltage signal that represents the current level using an external sensor. When using smaller-format batteries with lower currents, this strategy is more typical than transmitting the full battery stack current via the battery management system for the physical interface. The physical interface is a voltage signal, while the logical interface is a signal that indicates current. Depending on the measuring method employed, this signal may be referred to the high-voltage stack or to earth ground. It is anticipated that the signal would fluctuate as rapidly as the battery current.

At sites where temperature measurements are required, temperatures are also generally monitored using external sensors that are physically placed throughout the battery system. The resistance or voltage of these sensors often changes in response to the temperature detected. The signal's dynamic range must be suitable for the anticipated temperatures and the voltages generated by the sensors at these temperatures. Earth referenced, high-voltage stack referenced, or floating temperature readings are all possible.

A minimal amount of information, such as when the battery should connect to or disengage from the load, must typically be sent by the load device. This may ask the battery to switch to an active mode by a discrete signal or a communications message. A handshake mechanism is often used when the load network issues a command and the battery tries to connect to the high-voltage bus. A response indicating that the battery is ready to function will be given if the battery status is nominal and the connection procedure goes according to plan; if not, an error will be generated and a negative answer will be issued.

Common Outputs

Battery status parameters, which must be calculated via intricate functions of the input data, are often computed by battery management systems. A host or load device may receive enormous numbers of cell voltages and temperatures thanks to the architecture of many battery management systems. The external device is often unable to process this information in a useful manner. It is possible to make the case that a different device could be used for redundant monitoring and to add additional safety, but doing so would be a poor system design decision since the battery management system should be able to offer all necessary protection. However, in general, this sort of information does not need to be continuously shared with external devices. On occasion, this type of information may be required for system diagnostics. Only data that is utilized by external systems should be included in output information[4].

The amount of electrical charge now available for discharge from the battery to the maximum amount that may be stored is referred to as the state of charge. It is written as a fraction with a value between 0 and 1. Since the state of the art for SOC calculation makes much lower resolutions problematic, this is often transformed to a percentage and can be calculated with a resolution of between 1% and 0.1%.The battery's state of health is a measure of how much of its original capacity has been preserved. Impedance and capacity are two factors that have an impact on SOH and deteriorate with time. A fresh battery should have a SOH of 100%, whereas a battery that has to be changed because it can no longer handle the demands of the application should have a SOH of 0%. SOH metrics, which generally relate to capacity deterioration, rise in impedance, and increase in self-discharge rate, differ greatly on the application, chemistry, and battery needs. For most applications, a SOH resolution of 1% is sufficient.

The load device is typically informed of the battery pack's limitations. In order to keep the battery in a safe state, it has a maximum permissible current and power during charge and discharge. Over the course of a single cycle, these limitations fluctuate dynamically with the state of charge and temperature. They also alter as a battery age and loses performance. These might be expressed as percentages of the rated maximum or as absolute numbers.

Typically, faults and error codes are sent to external devices, such as the normal load network as well as diagnostic tools needed to analyze and pinpoint issues with the battery system. These fault codes need to specify the problem's kind as well as the tiniest component, cell, or subsystem that has been discovered to be impacted. These diagnostics messages may not be included in the standard output set; instead, they might only be sent in response to a diagnostics device's request.

Regular Operations

In a large-format battery system, the battery management system is in charge of maintaining cell balance, making sure that all cells are able to deliver and accept a similar amount of charge over the course of the battery system's lifetime despite variations in cell impedance, capacity, and self-discharge. In the high voltage stack, the cell balancing outputs take the form of currents that specifically charge or discharge certain cells. These currents are computed from measurements of the cell voltage and are affected by a variety of elements, including the battery system's mode of operation. Comparatively speaking to the full-scale current of the complete battery pack, balancing currents are little. In order to connect and disconnect the battery from the load device as necessary, including emergency disconnections in the event of unsafe battery conditions, soft-start or precharge functionality for capacitive loads, and the discharge of high-voltage buses for safety reasons, battery management systems are frequently needed. These signals might be power or control signals with sufficient current and voltage to directly control the devices. The latter strategy increases the battery management system's size and power needs while providing certain safety advantages. To assess the battery's state of charge, or SOH, and its limits—which will be discussed later advanced algorithms are applied. These outputs are produced by processing the time-sequenced observations of current, voltage, and temperature using sophisticated models. To guarantee that the battery system isn't utilized in an inappropriate manner, these values are continuously sent to the load network. Although serial communications, like CAN, are often used to transmit this data, analog or pulse-width modulation signals might also be employed in place of or in addition to the digital communications connection.

The performance of the battery system is frequently improved or preserved by the integration of the battery management system with other features. Thermal management is an excellent example; battery temperature and other metrics may be utilized to send drive signals to fans, pumps, chillers, or heaters that are used to keep batteries at the ideal temperature for extending battery life. These signals, which may be used to change outputs or speeds, can be digital, PWM, or analog. Additionally, information may be sent through communications signals to external control modules, which in turn generate drive signals.The interface between the battery management system and the outside world, as well as the features that the battery management system designer will need to implement, are defined by the inputs, outputs, and processing that will be carried out. With minimal distinction between hardware and software components or a description of the implementation approach, the internal functioning is now described in a very abstract manner[5].

Over the complete range of anticipated operating conditions and environments, a competent battery management system will provide precise outputs from the inputs. Noise factors are environmental variables that may have an impact on the accuracy of the outputs, such as temperature, age, and part-to-part fluctuation. The performance of each function will be impacted by a variety of noise variables; for instance, the measurement of battery current may be temperature-dependent. The designer selects control parameters to enhance the function's resilience by mitigating the impacts of noisy sources. In the example above, how much the ambient temperature impacts the battery current measurement depends on the kind of sensor utilized. To start the design process, a brief but thorough description of every interface is required. To fully explain the battery management system context, don't forget the mechanical and thermal interfaces[6].

Architectures

Decisions concerning the system's implementation may start after the external behavior and interface have been established. It is inevitable that general-purpose microcontrollers or microprocessors will be used to implement the battery management system along with the necessary measurement, power, and control circuitry on one or more printed circuit board assemblies. The control, calculation, and analysis functions will be housed in the microcontroller software. The simplest systems may be implemented using a variety of definite-purpose integrated circuits, although smaller systems running at lower voltages designed for consumer electronics applications tend to use this architecture more often[7], [8].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, battery-based energy storage systems must operate effectively and safely, and this is made possible by the qualities of battery management systems (BMS). Cell balance, SOC and SOH estimates, thermal management, charging and discharging control, problem detection and diagnostics, and communication with external systems are just a few of the many tasks carried out by BMS. These features guarantee the best possible battery performance, security, and lifespan. For a BMS, accuracy, dependability, and safety are prerequisites. Reliability is vital for consistent and secure battery system operation, while accuracy in SOC and SOH estimates is essential for efficient battery management. To reduce dangers connected with battery operation, safety standards include protection against overcharging, over discharging, and overheating, as well as fault detection and diagnostic capabilities. In conclusion, the features of BMS are crucial for enhancing battery performance, guaranteeing safety, and encouraging the use of clean energy solutions. Constant improvements in BMS technology will improve their qualities even further, spurring innovation in energy storage and fostering a future powered by sustainable sources of energy. For battery-based energy storage systems to reach their full potential and enable the broad adoption of electric cars, renewable energy storage, and other developing applications, properly designed, deployed, and maintained BMS are essential.

REFERENCES:

[1] M. Uzair, G. Abbas, and S. Hosain, "Characteristics of battery management systems of electric vehicles with consideration of the active and passive cell balancing process," *World Electric Vehicle Journal*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/wevj12030120.

[2] S. Yang, C. Ling, Y. Fan, Y. Yang, X. Tan, and H. Dong, "A review of lithium-ion battery thermal management system strategies and the evaluate criteria," *International Journal of Electrochemical Science*. 2019. doi: 10.20964/2019.07.06.

[3] P. Wang and C. Zhu, "Summary of Lead-acid Battery Management System," in *IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science*, 2020. doi: 10.1088/1755-1315/440/2/022014.

[4] I. H. Cho, D. Y. Kim, and B. H. Lee, "Research on technical characteristics of battery management system for railway systems," *J. Korean Soc. Railw.*, 2018, doi: 10.7782/JKSR.2018.21.9.882.

[5] P. K. Gayen, R. Majumdar, and S. Mondal, "Development and implementation of adaptive solar module– and battery characteristics–based real-time power management for

solar battery system under grid-connected and -islanded conditions," *Int. Trans. Electr. Energy Syst.*, 2020, doi: 10.1002/2050-7038.12240.

[6] W. Li, X. Peng, M. Xiao, A. Garg, and L. Gao, "Multi-objective design optimization for mini-channel cooling battery thermal management system in an electric vehicle," *Int. J. Energy Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.1002/er.4518.

[7] Q. Lin, J. Wang, R. Xiong, W. Shen, and H. He, "Towards a smarter battery management system: A critical review on optimal charging methods of lithium ion batteries," *Energy*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.energy.2019.06.128.

[8] R. Zhang, J. Wu, R. Wang, R. Yan, Y. Zhu, and X. He, "A Novel Battery Management System Architecture Based on an Isolated Power/Data Multiplexing Transmission Bus," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, 2019, doi: 10.1109/TIE.2018.2873143.

CHAPTER 4

COMMON DECISION TO BE MADE FOR BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM DEVELOPMENT IS THE DEGREE OF MODULARITY DESIRED

Dr. Shilpa Mehta, Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication (Communication System Engineering), Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id-shilpamehta@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Battery Management Systems (BMS) are critical components in battery-based energy storage systems, ensuring the efficient and safe operation of batteries. This abstract provides an overview of the development of BMS, including their evolution, challenges, and future prospects. The development of BMS has evolved significantly over the years, driven by the increasing demand for electric vehicles, renewable energy storage, and other applications. Early BMS were relatively simple, with basic functions such as voltage and current monitoring, temperature sensing, and basic charging and discharging control. However, with advancements in battery technology, electronics, and communication interfaces, BMS have become more complex and sophisticated, incorporating advanced algorithms for cell balancing, state of charge (SOC) and state of health (SOH) estimation, thermal management, and fault detection and diagnosis.

KEYWORDS:

Lithium-ion batteries, Overcharge protection, Over-discharge protection, State of Charge (SoC), State of Health (SoH), Thermal management.

INTRODUCTION

One module with all the functionality is the easiest option. Monolithic systems eliminate the necessity for designing, defining, and paying for interfaces that connect units. A monolithic BMS that includes a long string of batteries. A monolithic system has a restricted capacity for scalability. The number of installed cell-monitoring circuits determines the maximum number of cells that may be observed. In many circumstances, monitoring any arbitrarily smaller number of cells may not be practicable. Additionally, since the number of battery management system components cannot be decreased, there are no cost savings for smaller batteries.

A single controller must handle the full pack voltage as well as all cell measurement connections in monolithic systems. Due to increased voltages, the creep age and clearance distances must be greater. The range of available components for a particular application may be limited, and connector and component ratings must also be adequate. The potential for substantially larger voltages and fault energy exists during fault conditions, even though a good monolithic design will make an effort to minimize the possible difference between neighboring component selections and provide suitable isolation barriers as required. When the same battery management system will be utilized on several devices with only minor variations, monolithic designs make sense. When dealing with very high quantities, a battery management system with just the necessary functions will be the least expensive and difficult, but it will sacrifice flexibility and scalability.

DISCUSSION

Distributed

The modularity of distributed battery management system topologies is quite great. Numerous systems use a master-slave architecture. The majority of computational requirements are handled by a single central control module, battery pack control module, battery electronic control module, or battery management unit in the most typical designs. A number of identical or nearly identical slave modules are connected to the battery cells or modules. The slave modules are in charge of measuring the voltages and temperatures of the cells and relaying this data to the master device. They also carry out cell balancing at the master's command.

There is often a close correlation between the number of battery modules and slave devices in a distributed design. In highly integrated systems, the sensing slave circuit could be included right into the battery module. Communication between the master and slave devices is required, often using a communications protocol. This protocol may be proprietary or one that is widely used, like CAN, RS-232, or Ethernet.

Distributed systems often have the greatest costs because of the greater number of communications circuits as well as supporting circuits such microprocessors, power supply, and isolation. In compared to a comparable implementation of a monolithic design, these additional circuits also make the battery management system heavier, larger, and use more parasitic power. The benefits mentioned above more than make up for this in the applications where they are employed.

Semi-Distributed

Less sensing circuits, separate from the battery modules, are used in a semi-distributed design. If the size or form factor of the battery modules changes, this makes scaling the system easier. Contrary to dispersed systems, which are intimately integrated with each module, the system is more extensible than a monolithic system and may be extended with new sizes or kinds of battery modules without changing the battery management system hardware. a BMS architecture with semidistribution. The functionality may be further distributed. Using an isolated communications interface to a low-voltage only master device functioning relative to the ground potential, measurement slave devices that operate at a potential referenced to the cell stack make up one conceivable design.

The sole component of the electronic system exposed to the entire battery voltage is a high-voltage measuring and control device that works in tandem with these two devices. High voltage measurement, contactors, relays, fuses, current sensors, or shunts might all be included in this module. A separate communications link to the master module is also included in the high-voltage module. As a result, the size and quantity of high voltage handling devices are reduced, but the number of isolation barriers, modules, and data being transmitted over communications buses is increased. This is a good architecture for extremely high-voltage systems where the high-voltage components must receive critical attention, and where it may be challenging to integrate the high-voltage section with the low-voltage control electronics due to the feature size, nec- tors, and insulation ratings required at these voltages.

Connection Procedures

Although it may appear simple, connecting the battery management system electronics to the battery cells requires a very high level of dependability. The cell balancing current and the voltage signal for the measurement circuit are both carried by this link, which serves two purposes.The most apparent technique that may be utilized for this is wire harnesses. The wire has to be the right size to carry the balancing current without experiencing a significant temperature increase. The wire must have a temperature rating that is higher than the combined maximum service temperature and the anticipated temperature increase during balancing. An significant factor to take into account is the failure mode of short-circuit currents flowing in the sensing harness. Harnesses may short out due to friction within the harness bundle, in which case the voltage of a short is restricted to the maximum voltage of the cells connected by that specific harness or bundle, or a short may form in the battery management system, in which case the voltage of the short may span the entire battery pack voltage. The harness should function as a fusible link in this circumstance, as is expected, but the wire size should be kept to a minimum to lower the overall short energy, and the necessary testing is needed to make sure the failure is benign. When constructing a harness to do this, it's crucial to take into account the connections you choose, the wire insulation material, the routing, and the bundling.

Wire harnesses should be built using conductors rated for the maximum anticipated potential difference between the high voltage system and earth ground, as well as between the battery pack terminals when fully charged. Measurement circuits may be exposed to voltages that exceed their design limits due to improperly routed harnesses. In production systems, it is recommended practice to run a thorough test to ensure that the battery management system is not connected incorrectly before final connection of the sensing harness to the BMS. This will help to avoid damage to the measuring circuit or even worse[1], [2].Unwanted connections between the voltage and temperature sensing leads are a potential failure scenario in the typical circumstance when temperature sense connections are routed alongside those for voltage sensing. The voltage perceived across a short may be limited if the temperature sensor circuits are referred to the cell stack. Cut-through of voltage and temperature leads may result in both an isolating fault and a high-voltage short circuit if the temperature sensors are connected to the earth. The safety hazards of such a failure are reduced if a floating reference is utilized, but an effective isolation barrier must exist between the floating reference and the cell stack.

Connectors for cell sensing must be rated for sufficient voltage and, more crucially, for sufficient current at the specified temperature. A configuration that reduces the voltages between neighboring pins should be used when assigning the connectors' pinouts. The connecting pins must also observe the creepage and clearance distances, so keep that in mind. If there is a chance of humidity or dust contamination, un-sealed connections will need greater creepage and clearance distances. The maximum voltage and most connections per connector will be found in monolithic architectures.The sensory interconnect conducts balance currents while balancing is occurring. Balancing currents are often quite small and only flow sporadically in many systems. Contact oxidation may occur at terminals of contacts that do not carry continuous current, which can result in high contact resistance and possible measurement difficulties, particularly during balancing. To avoid this issue, it is critical that the balancing current be strong enough and flow often enough to eliminate the oxide buildup. Using gold-plated contacts, provided the cost penalty is acceptable, is one way to avoid this.

minimizing the number of connections in the measurement signal path; using sealed connectors to prevent humidity because moisture accelerates the growth of insulating oxide; ensuring that a periodic balancing current flows through each battery pack connection even if that particular cell does not need any balancing. Setting the balancing current at a level that will give sufficient wetting current. Avoiding the use of mechanical or electromechanical switches in the cell balancing control or measurement signal route.

It is possible to integrate in other, more sophisticated ways, for as by connecting measuring PCBs directly to busbars or battery tabs. These techniques often have a classy appearance and promise significant advantages from the decrease of cable complexity. Although wire harnesses are inexpensive, easy to create and test, dependable when placed properly, and simple to maintain, this claim should be carefully examined in many situations. In contrast to flexible wire harnesses, busbars and tabs may also transfer destructive mechanical loads and vibration from battery modules to circuit boards. Due to the limited tolerance for excessive heat and cold of lithium-ion batteries, it is often assumed that the position of the battery management system adjacent to the battery cells will be both moderate in temperature as well as the requirement for as a clean and dry environment. The battery management system may need to meet more stringent standards for temperature tolerance and environmental sealing if it is located remotely[3].

Further Scalability

The flexibility and scalability of the system are also impacted by the quantity and kind of measurement and control circuits for new measurements. It is typical to incorporate a number of inputs and outputs with various uses in a system designed to service a broad range of applications, as well as to provide for the highest level of projected balance-of-plant integration. The electronics will cost more as a result, but fewer configurations will need to be created, tested, and serviced.

Architectures for battery packs

There are several methods to split up the battery cells itself. The most popular approach is a single-string construction, in which the quantity of battery cells necessary to reach the specified amp-hour capacity are arranged in parallel to form a "cell group" or series element. This functions as if it were a single, sizable cell with a capacity equal to the sum of the capacities of all the smaller cells arranged in parallel. To reach the appropriate system voltage, the necessary number of series elements are subsequently put in series.

Strings of smaller series items may also be arranged in parallel at the pack level. A system with multiple parallel strings offers redundancy if each string can supply enough power and energy to the load to operate, possibly at a reduced capability, but it also complicates state-of-charge balancing between strings and necessitates more advanced decision-making. A substantial failure mode is also reduced by the multiple parallel string architecture if an internal short circuit occurs in a cell. The equivalent source impedance of the cell group rises as the number of parallel cells decreases, yet the battery is still able to provide the same total power output because to the many parallel strings. Due to the substantially greater source impedance, if a short circuit occurs, the current provided into the cell by the other parallel cells in the string will be greatly decreased. Strings may be kept apart from one another using contractors. This may enable extremely low impedance cells to operate with greater safety[4].

The following are some ways that choices regarding battery pack architecture impact the design of the battery management system. The number of cell voltages per system that must be monitored rises as the number of series components grows. Reducing the number of cells to be monitored will lower the cost of the battery management system since a component of its cost grows roughly linearly with the number of cell monitoring channels. There are often some "discretization" effects; to lower the cost of the battery management system, the number of cells must be reduced by a minimum amount in order to remove an additional IC, module, or circuit.

The cost of the battery management system will dramatically rise as a result of several parallel strings since each parallel string will need its own set of monitoring channels.For the same compensating capability, higher capacity battery cells need a correspondingly bigger balancing current.A higher total system voltage is produced by more series elements or by using a higher-voltage chemistry, which calls for greater creepage and clearance distances, thicker insulation, and isolation components with higher voltage ratings. Many of these effects most notably the isolation voltage ratings offered for various kinds of electronic components are discrete while others are continuous or semi-continuous[5].The number of contactors that must be managed and high-voltage readings that must be taken rises as a result of several parallel strings.In a system with several parallel strings, defining the overall boundaries, state of charge, and condition of health is more difficult than with a single parallel string.

Power Source

There are many potential sources for the battery management system's power supply. The battery management system may be entirely powered by an external control voltage source or directly from the battery cells in the battery stack. As an alternative, a potential power source might be employed on the high voltage bus, either on the battery side or the load side. The aforementioned implementations may be combined. Important trade-offs must be made when choosing a power supply topology.The battery management system is never attached to a cell stack without a source of power to carry out measurement and control operations thanks to the electricity coming from the battery cells.

It's crucial to reduce power usage in both active and inactive modes if this architecture is used. Additionally, this design will result in greater imbalance if the amount of power used by certain modules or circuits changes from module to module, placing an uneven power demand on all of the cells. It's crucial that each cell drains the same amount of energy, in addition to the power consumption being minimal. Circuit design may not always aim to achieve uniform power consumption across units, and this should be taken into account when implementing a battery management system. Temperature imbalance across the system might exacerbate these consequences since the power consumption of electrical equipment often relies on temperature. The voltages of the cells themselves may have an effect on how much power is used. It is important to take precautions, particularly with low-capacity systems, to prevent a situation in which the system's ability to balance is compromised by using battery cells for battery management system power[6].

Due to the battery management system circuits' continual power consumption, powering the battery management system with battery cells will result in an increase in the apparent self-discharge of the battery cells. To guarantee that this rise is not too large, it is the task of the battery management system.

If low-voltage control power is eventually supplied from the battery via a power conversion device, then using the high-voltage bus or the cell stack may boost overall system efficiency. A good example of this is the usage of a dc-dc converter in automotive applications to maintain a conventional 12-V system, which powers the battery management system. In an electric car, the high-voltage battery system serves as the only source of energy. Any energy that is taken out of the 12-V system must travel through a power conversion device, potentially a lead-acid storage battery, and other parts, and losses happen when energy is converted in this way.

Powerful Control

For a battery management system to operate auxiliary devices, contactors, and powered sensors, low-voltage direct current control power is almost always necessary. Although different voltage ranges could be achievable, the 12-V automobile system is an excellent example.A starting, lighting, and ignition battery that may be shared with other vehicle systems and, in the event of a hybrid vehicle, utilized for high-current loads like engine cranking, often provides this control power for car systems. This suggests that there might be a very large range of voltages. Devices using automobile 12-V systems, for instance, often need to show operation between 6 and 18 volts. Producing the control power by power conversion from the high-voltage stack may be preferable. Real-time monitoring of this supply voltage is often necessary inside the BMS for a variety of purposes, regardless of its source. If the supply voltage fluctuates outside of the expected ranges, a number of functions may need to be disabled.

Unwanted occurrences might happen if the control power fails while the battery management system is operating. Under load, contactors may open erratically or chatter if the control power fluctuates. If a sizable amount of data is lost, or worse, corrupted, during an uncontrolled power-down, errors may be present during the battery's subsequent operational cycle. This is because battery management frequently requires that data integrity for values like state of charge be maintained from one operational period to the next. To ensure that a loss of power results in a controlled shutdown and an orderly saving of data to nonvolatile memory, it is often desirable to include on-board backup power for at least the CPU and supporting circuitry[7].

Technology Architecture

The required software and related processing power for the battery management system operations may be set up differently, just as the necessary hardware can be divided up into many modules or concentrated in a single device. There is no opportunity for decision-making in a monolithic hardware design with a single processor since the single processor must implement all software functions in a single software program.

Each slave device in a distributed or semi-distributed master-slave design will generally contain a microprocessor in charge of, at the very least, measuring voltage and temperature as well as cell balancing. There are certain restrictions on the benefits that may be obtained by adding extra functionality to these microcontrollers in order to give more computing resources. Slave modules may not always have access to all system inputs, such as total string current, which would be necessary to carry out intricate battery model calculations to, for instance, provide state of charge estimations. For the deployment of battery management systems, a multitier design is advised. Software functions can be broken down into low-level hardware interface routines and device drivers, middle layers that implement communications protocols and interpret physical measurements, upper layers that perform high-level battery computations like state of charge and power limit calculations, and finally a top-level application layer that makes decisions based on data from lower layers. Code modules may be reused to the fullest extent by strictly adhering to abstraction levels and using a multitier strategy. For instance, it is not necessary to disclose the method used to calculate the SOC for an application that selects whether to connect or detach the battery depending on its state of charge; in fact, it may be desirable to employ various SOC calculation techniques in various applications. As a result, the SOC calculation algorithm is not required to comprehend the specifics of how its inputs are handled. Any of these levels may be changed with very little effects on the ones above it if this sort of layered design is maintained.

Multitasking environments are implemented by the majority of software architectures. This might be anything from a simple "round-robin" task scheduler to an operating system with full preemptive multitasking. It is essential to make sure that tasks responsible for safety functions, such as voltage measurement and related over-charge and overdischarge prevention, temperature and current measurement, limit calculation, and contactor actuation, are completed in a timely manner in safety-critical systems, such as battery management systems, to ensure prompt responses to hazards. It is essential that safety-critical jobs be not delayed, missed, or interrupted in a multitasking environment where it is conceivable for one activity to be interrupted to complete another. To prevent task overrun that results in late or missing tasks, think about using active profiling, particularly during the development periods[8].

Measurement

Voltage Measurement in a Cell

The electrical potential difference between a battery's positive and negative electrodes is directly reflected by the cell voltage, which is also referred to as the battery voltage. For determining the level of charge of a battery, assessing its performance, and keeping track of its safety, the cell voltage is a crucial metric. For battery management systems to maintain appropriate charging and discharging operations, avoid overcharging or overdischarging, and maximize battery performance, accurate monitoring of cell voltage is crucial. In this review article, we provide an overview of the many methods used to measure the voltage of the cells in batteries, outlining their benefits, drawbacks, and difficulties while also emphasizing recent developments and potential future directions.

Traditional Methods for Measuring Cell Voltage

Voltmeters, multimeters, and data gathering systems are commonly used ways for measuring cell voltage in batteries. Voltmeters and multimeters are often used to measure single-cell voltage, while data collection devices are frequently used to monitor multiple-cell voltage in battery packs. These methods include directly measuring the voltage by attaching the voltmeter or data gathering device to the battery terminals. They are popular in battery research and industry because they are easy, affordable, and simple. The precision, resolution, and reaction time of these methods may be constrained, which may jeopardize the accuracy of cell voltage monitoring, particularly in high-performance batteries and in situations with variable operating circumstances.

Modern Methods for Measuring Cell Voltage

In order to get beyond the limits of traditional approaches and deliver more accurate, precise, and real-time cell voltage measurements, advanced methodologies for battery cell voltage measuring have been created. Impedance spectroscopy, electrochemical impedance spectroscopy, and in-situ or in-operando measuring techniques are a few of these technologies. The frequency-dependent impedance of a battery is measured via impedance spectroscopy, which may provide details about the electrochemical reactions and cell voltage. By measuring the battery's impedance at various frequencies, electrochemical impedance spectroscopy may learn more about the electrochemical process and cell voltage. During battery operation, the cell voltage is measured using in-situ or in-operando measurement techniques, which provide real-time data regarding the cell voltage under dynamic circumstances.

CONCLUSION

As a result of the growing need for battery-based energy storage systems across a range of applications, Battery Management Systems (BMS) have advanced significantly. With the incorporation of cutting-edge algorithms, sensor technologies, and communication interfaces, BMS have developed from basic systems to complex and sophisticated ones. In spite of the difficulties associated with accuracy, dependability, complexity, adherence to safety requirements, and cost-effectiveness, BMS have made great strides in ensuring effective and secure battery operation. The growth of BMS has bright prospects because to technological developments and a growing focus on sustainability. Better SOC and SOH estimation, more effective cell balancing algorithms, and better thermal management strategies are anticipated as a result of the integration of AI and ML techniques, as well as improvements in sensor technologies and communication interfaces. Battery-based energy storage systems will be more environmentally friendly if features like end-of-life management, recycling, and circular economy concepts are included.

REFERENCES:

[1] P. R. Tete, M. M. Gupta, and S. S. Joshi, "Developments in battery thermal management systems for electric vehicles: A technical review," *Journal of Energy Storage*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.est.2021.102255.

[2] K. W. E. Cheng, B. P. Divakar, H. Wu, K. Ding, and H. F. Ho, "Battery-management system (BMS) and SOC development for electrical vehicles," *IEEE Trans. Veh. Technol.*, 2011, doi: 10.1109/TVT.2010.2089647.

[3] W. Wang, J. Wang, J. Tian, J. Lu, and R. Xiong, "Application of Digital Twin in Smart Battery Management Systems," *Chinese Journal of Mechanical Engineering (English Edition)*. 2021. doi: 10.1186/s10033-021-00577-0.

[4] S. Potrykus, F. Kutt, J. Nieznanski, and F. J. F. Morales, "Advanced lithium-ion battery model for power system performance analysis," *Energies*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/en13102411.

[5] Y. Hirose, Y. Kato, and T. Watanabe, "Development of Battery Management System," *Fujitsu Ten Tech. J. No*, 2016.

[6] W. Yan, B. Zhang, G. Zhao, S. Tang, G. Niu, and X. Wang, "A Battery Management System with a Lebesgue-Sampling-Based Extended Kalman Filter," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, 2019, doi: 10.1109/TIE.2018.2842782.

[7] H. Dai, B. Jiang, X. Hu, X. Lin, X. Wei, and M. Pecht, "Advanced battery management strategies for a sustainable energy future: Multilayer design concepts and research trends," *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.rser.2020.110480.

[8] V. Viswanathan *et al.*, "Cost and performance model for redox flow batteries," *J. Power Sources*, 2014, doi: 10.1016/j.jpowsour.2012.12.023.

CHAPTER 5
CHALLENGES IN CELL VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT

Mrs. Kamireddi Sunandana, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- sunandanak@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Accurate measurement of cell voltage is a critical aspect of Battery Management Systems (BMS) in battery-based energy storage systems. However, challenges arise in the measurement of cell voltage due to various factors such as cell characteristics, measurement techniques, and environmental conditions. This abstract provides an overview of the challenges associated with cell voltage measurement in battery systems, including issues related to cell variability, measurement accuracy, measurement techniques, temperature effects, and interference from external factors. The challenges in cell voltage measurement arise from the inherent variability in battery cells, including differences in capacity, internal resistance, and aging effects. These variations can result in inaccurate voltage measurements, leading to incorrect estimation of State of Charge (SOC) and State of Health (SOH) of the battery. Moreover, the accuracy of cell voltage measurement is influenced by the measurement techniques used, such as direct measurement, indirect measurement, and differential measurement. Each technique has its limitations, including measurement errors, sensitivity to noise, and complexity of implementation.

KEYWORDS:

Battery, Electrochemical, Electrode, Electrolyte, Potential.

INTRODUCTION

The measuring of cell voltage in batteries is difficult due to issues with accuracy, resolution, reaction time, calibration, interference, and safety. For battery management systems to guarantee optimum battery operation and performance, accurate cell voltage monitoring is crucial. However, the accuracy of cell voltage measurement may be impacted by elements including contact resistance, parasitic effects, and temperature changes. For identifying subtle changes in battery performance and behavior, high-resolution monitoring of cell voltage is essential, but it may be difficult owing to noise, drift, and other issues. Response time, or how quickly a measuring system reacts to changes in cell voltage, is essential for real-time monitoring and controlling of battery performance, but it may be constrained by the dynamics of both the measurement device and the battery.

Accurate voltage measurement is essential for battery management system performance since it helps to avoid overcharge and overdischarge and provides precise information about the battery's condition. Within a large-format system, various battery voltages, including those of individual cells, groups, or modules of cells, all the way up to the whole series-connected string, might be monitored.The presumption that a number of serially linked cells in the same battery system are necessarily of the same capacity or at the same state of charge has previously been made evident. As a result, the majority of implementations demand that each series element's voltage be measured at least once. Contrary to several other battery technologies, lead-acid 12-V batteries frequently have six series-connected cells and lack external terminals for measuring the voltages of the individual cells. Instead, it is assumed that the state of the battery can be accurately determined by looking at the total battery voltage. To reduce parasitic power consumption, the cell measuring circuit should have a high dc impedance for the battery cells. The capacity of the battery cells being monitored will determine whether a specific measurement impedance is high enough; extremely tiny cells will need significantly higher impedances to prevent the battery management system from unintentionally increasing the apparent self-discharge. In addition to minimizing power consumption, it's crucial to minimize the variance in power consumption among individual cells, since this will cause cell imbalance and impair battery efficiency. This is especially problematic when many slave modules are linked to various cells and the power consumption of the modules varies. Both the active mode, during which measurements are actively being taken, and the passive mode, during which no measurements are being performed, should be used to describe the impedance of the measuring circuit.

Reducing the passive mode current, also known as the standby current, quiescent current, or parasitic current, ensures that the battery cells won't be overcharged by the battery management system when the system is turned off and that the battery can remain in standby for an extended period of time without risk. Currents in the active mode are anticipated to be greater. The specifications for the active and passive measurement current can be determined based on the overall duty cycle of the battery system and battery management system, the battery's capacity, the anticipated storage/standby time, and the battery's minimum operating state of charge. In addition to potentially causing deviations from true open-circuit voltage due to cell overpotentials, the measurement current flowing through interconnects and various devices will result in a voltage drop between the terminal voltage and the measurement circuit and interfere with other battery management system operations. Finally, because one of the main purposes of the battery system is to store energy, the measuring circuit's energy consumption has a negative impact on the battery system's effectiveness. Nearly all battery management system topologies have the common aim of lowering the energy used by the monitoring circuit[1].

Multiple measurements of the voltages of individual cells are not unusual. Both symmetrical and asymmetrical multiple measurement techniques are possible. It is easy to determine that two unequal measurements of the same quantity indicate a malfunction, but the classic question of which piece of data to use and which to discard arises, necessitating additional information, may be needed in the most critical of systems to give the battery management system the relative plausibility of the measurements. An asymmetric dual measurement may be used in applications where the hazards caused by a measurement error can be avoided by simply shutting down the battery system and where the measurements' reliability is high enough that the overall battery system reliability can meet its requirements. More measurements increase complexity and expense. To understand the risk and safety level that must be attained with the design, the voltage measuring technique should be put through a fault-tree analysis.

The range of cell voltages predicted under typical circumstances should be covered by the individual cell voltage measurement range. To ensure that in the event of an overcharged or over-discharged cell, the battery management system will be undamaged and able to react to the event and stop further abuse, it is also generally desirable to have the battery management system capable of handling cell voltages outside of normal operating ranges. It is typical for the BMS to conduct a single measurement of the voltage of all parallel cells in a cell group in many large-format systems where many cells are arranged in parallel. Cell connection failure, which results in the creation of a subgroup that is linked to the measurement circuit but disconnected from the series string, is a crucial failure scenario to take into account. The cell voltage that is recorded in this instance won't be indicative of the real cell voltages in the serial string since it will be constant. Therefore, it becomes feasible to overcharge and overdischarge. Methods of detection for this include looking for infinite capacitance or zero cell impedance.

It's common practice to test different battery voltage kinds. The voltage over the whole battery stack is the most typical. Numerous methods also monitor the voltage of specific modules or collections of devices connected in series. A variety of potential measurement errors may be found by comparing these measurements to one another. Simply expressed, the sum of each element in a series should equal the string's or substring's bulk measurement. This may be used to find calibration errors if there is a systematic error present in all cell readings. The high-voltage measurement circuits' wiring issues may be diagnosed using this technique. The accuracy and precision of the various measurement circuits must be carefully examined in order to utilize these measurements to avoid overcharge and overdischarge dangers brought on by main measurement mistakes.

Another crucial choice is deciding on the appropriate degree of cell measuring precision. The link between mistakes in voltage measurement and errors in state of charge may be calculated in systems where cell voltage is utilized to calculate state of charge. A lesser degree of measurement precision might be utilized to simply avoid overcharge and overdischarge and enforce re-active power limitations when cell voltages exceed working limits. Secondary measurement error values between 25 and 100 mV are not out of the ordinary. Limits should be chosen such that worst-case mistakes do not result in recurrent overcharge and discharge occurrences if the main measurement has failed and the system is allowed to keep running. The easiest approach is to establish an alert signal from the measuring circuit that signals a cell measurement has surpassed a specific limit if an actual measurement is not required. In order to trigger a common fault reaction, these signals might be logically ORed together if it is not required to identify which cell has crossed the limit. As a result, the required state of charge accuracy and the battery's SOC/OCV curve determine the specification for cell measurement accuracy. At the moment, cell measurement accuracy comes from standard measurement. It is usual to find ICs with a precision of around 1 mV and a total error of less than 10 mV. The proper care in design that must be taken to guarantee that these levels of accuracy can be maintained in actual implementation under all conceivable operating scenarios will be covered in this book.

The assumption is that the SOC, SOH, and limit algorithms will perform worse if the main measurement is lost if an asymmetric dual-measurement technique is applied. A triple-redundant main measurement is necessary for systems that cannot tolerate this kind of performance reduction. Hazards related to cell overcharging and overdischarging often come within the purview of functional safety. As a result, the dangers of overcharging and overdischarging must be listed and thoroughly examined. A consideration of the battery management system's potential failure modes, as well as a number of other system-level elements, must be included in the study. These failure modes might result in an overcharge or overdischarge danger. several systems have several parts that provide some level of security. The total level of risk is influenced by a variety of non-battery management system variables, such as cell chemistry and design, battery pack architecture and construction, and application-specific details. The battery management system is a component of a complete battery system, and the full response to an overcharge or discharge event should be considered for appropriate design. Specifics of the design of the battery management system functional safety will be discussed later. Various devices provide varying degrees of precision across various ranges. Generally speaking, this is a respectable and even desirable trait. Only while the cells are still within of their safe working region is a very accurate voltage measurement often required. Many systems will choose a shutdown or restricted operation approach if the battery cell voltages exceed the acceptable operating ranges. Accurate SOC and power limit calculations may not be necessary or even feasible in these modes.

The battery management system's reaction to a cell experiencing polarity reversal or a significant overvoltage is of special significance. Most circuits will have a maximum voltage that can be read on a certain measurement channel that is not much larger than the highest cell voltage seen under normal circumstances since many semiconductor devices are not able to handle negative input voltages. Cell voltage measurements that are inaccurate due to damaged measuring circuits may not be indicative of a problem.The use of an external voltage reference is an option provided by several cell-stack measuring ICs. Measuring inaccuracy may be decreased with this choice. Verifying that the main voltage reference is free of significant measurement errors that prevent the primary measurement from ensuring overcharge and over discharge protection ought to be a common safety feature. Many voltage references depend on temperature for their output voltage.All systems should undergo thorough investigation and testing of the cell measurement inaccuracy.

Typical Mistakes Include:

Failing to take into consideration the voltage loss brought on by using cell current to balance circuit components and connections. The most vulnerable systems are those that need great precision and have huge balancing currents. Ignoring voltage dips brought on by bus bar and cell interconnect impedances, which might vary from cell to cell not doing analysis and validation throughout the whole predicted range of voltages and temperatures. Over these ranges, several measuring circuits will have varying degrees of accuracy. The cell measuring system must be resilient against failures when cell voltages are over the typical battery limits but values are presented to the software that seem normal. This is how overcharge and over discharge are avoided. The following potential failures should be taken into account depending on the components and measurement architecture selected: Failures of this kind are very risky. In the case that these occurrences persist for an extended length of time without being noticed, the battery may be badly overcharged or over discharged.The majority of these circumstances are prevented by a redundant measuring design. If failures with a similar root cause are recognized, good design practices should be used to reduce the frequency of multiple-point failures that might result in the loss of both measurement circuits.

DISCUSSION

Current Measurement

Another essential battery quantity that is often measured by a battery management system is string current. A single measurement of current will reveal the current flowing in each of the cells since they are all linked in series. It could be necessary to carry out numerous redundant current sensor readings for the same reasons as those mentioned above for voltage measurement. A second current sensor could be necessary if precise current sensing is necessary to provide excellent state of charge performance and state of charge performance is a crucial element warranting resilience against a single-point failure. A second current sensor is necessary if there is a wide range of currents that exceed the battery limitations but no other way that is likely to detect or stop these excessive currents. Two current sensors should be utilized if reliable reporting of the battery current is required by an external device for a safety-critical function.

The following section discusses several sensor types. The employment of many sensors, whether they be of the same kind or distinct sorts, is possible. The precision needed to verify that the batteries are functioning within a safe range in the second of the aforementioned reasons is far less than what could be needed for state of charge and other algorithms. For this kind of application, an asymmetrical redundancy technique might be appropriate. Additionally, in order to achieve a better level of precision, additional sensors are sometimes employed for reasons that will be addressed.The complete signal chain must be taken into account when assessing the accuracy and dependability of contemporary sensors. The sensor or sensors itself; the analog signal link between the sensor and the measurement equipment; analog prefilters; an amplifier; an analog-to-digital converter; digital filtering; digital integration; and an isolation barrier are often included.

Flow Sensors

No matter which sort of current sensor is used, a few basic criteria still apply. Keeping in mind that many battery systems could not have equal current capabilities in both directions, the sensor's range has to be long enough to cover the complete predicted range of battery current in both charge and discharge. Making ensuring the sensor measurement range has enough headroom is a smart idea. There is a large dynamic range in the application currents for many battery systems. The rate of discharge and charge might vary greatly in a typical vehicle battery system. It is often challenging to measure big and tiny currents with the same degree of relative precision since the size of certain kinds of measurement mistakes relies on the whole scale of the current sensor utilized. When tiny currents are present for a long time and current integration is used to calculate SOC, mistakes in small currents may become considerable. In other applications, this is not a problem since faults in small currents have a subsequently much lesser impact. The sensor may include the analog measurement circuits and communicate with the battery management system through a digital interface, or the battery management system may measure the sensor's analog output directly. The analog measurement circuit of the battery management system must be built to reduce measurement error in the event of an analog sensor. The sensor's bandwidth and frequency response are often overlooked. The sensor must be quick enough to catch dynamic current variations since the battery current may fluctuate rapidly in many applications. When building the battery management system, it is important to be aware of the maximum anticipated slew rate. This has an impact on the sensor, sampling rate, and related electronics. It is often easy to demonstrate that the amp-hour error connected with a current measurement that is slower than the quickest achievable load slew rate is minimal and, typically, equal in both positive and negative directions[2].

Shunts

Simply said, a shunt is a precise resistor with a very small value. The voltage drop across the shunt will be proportional to the battery current. The battery management system can measure the voltage drop even when the shunt resistance is too enormous to be insignificant in the context of the high-power current channel of the battery system. Shunts link using a four-wire or Kelvin system. The current carrying terminals and the voltage detecting terminals of the shunt are divided in this arrangement.Shunts come in a number of ranges and are reasonably priced. The output of many shunts is 50 mV or 100 mV at the maximum measuring current. They are very reliable due to their simplicity and don't need an external power source. Shunts often have a cheap cost and are quite precise. Shunts occur in a variety of sizes, but those used for extremely high currents may grow to be very huge and heavy. Small shunt signals need to be amplified before being measured, and a very high impedance circuit is required to measure shunt voltage. For shunt amplifier circuits to obtain high measurement accuracy, the following properties are necessary:

Excessive common-mode rejection ratio Both ac and dc common-mode faults must be rejected by the shunt amplifier circuit.

Low dc offset: The majority of battery systems require monitor tiny positive and negative currents. Charging currents may be confused for discharging currents and vice versa due to the dc offset, which may be quite troublesome. Shunt amplifiers must routinely offer precise gains of 100 or more, and they have the natural benefit of having no large intrinsic dc offset. Current measurement mistakes are caused by gain errors.

Good Thermal Stability: The shunt and amplifier circuits may operate at various temperatures, and the gain and offset errors of the amplifier circuit may change with temperature.

The battery management system must take into account the change in the shunt's resistance as its temperature varies in systems that must function over a broad temperature range. A typical shunt can have an 80 ppm/°C thermal coefficient of resistance. Battery currents cause the shunt to self-heat as well.Due to their noninductive design, shunts have a very wide measuring bandwidth. As a result, they are able to detect extremely quick changes in battery current, but this also implies that transmitted emissions from the load will continue to enter the circuit used for shunt amplification and measurement without being stopped. Most of the time, it is desirable to exclude them.

Shunts for Measuring Current

It's crucial to remember that the shunt in large-format systems refers to the voltage of the battery stack. Despite the relatively low voltage across the shunt itself, the voltage between the shunt and other battery parts may be quite high. Therefore, the battery stack must also be taken into consideration when designing the electronics to process, amplify, and measure the shunt signal. The shunt measurement must transcend an isolation barrier in cases where isolation is needed.Additionally, the absence of isolation makes common mode voltages a possible cause of measurement inaccuracy.

The common-mode voltage rises as the load current rises. The differential-mode signal's amplification shouldn't be affected in a negative way by this. Installing the shunt on the low side, where the common-mode voltage will be considerably lower, can lessen the impact of this. This is only true when the shunt amplifier and/or complete BMS are connected to the high-voltage battery's negative terminal. The issue may also be resolved using an isolated shunt amplifier[3].

Hall Effect Transducers

In the presence of a magnetic field, the Hall effect causes a voltage to be generated that is proportional to an electric current. Devices using the raw Hall effect have severe temperature sensitivity as well as other negative impacts. A considerable amount of these mistakes are eliminated by an integrated signal processing circuit that processes the voltage signal that commercial Hall effect current sensors output.The signal voltage of Hall Effect sensors is separated from the high-current route, which is a benefit. In many sensors, a current-carrying bus-bar or cable is fed through the sensor body since the sensor lacks high-current connections. Hall Effect sensors must be positioned in a certain direction; if done wrong, the sensor will report negative numbers.

Hall Effect sensors need external power, which is often provided by the electronics of the battery management system. It is necessary to confirm the electronics' capacity to deliver current. In certain circumstances, this voltage source also determines the measurement output's full-scale voltage. This kind of sensor, referred to as a ratiometric sensor, eliminates current measuring inaccuracy brought on by various voltage references. Due to its greater accuracy and decreased need for a very precise absolute reference, the ratiometric sensing technology is often selected. It should be supplied by a reliable precision reference and utilized with a ratiometric analog-to-digital converter that takes an external reference since the supply voltage also determines the scaling. Finally, the voltage reference device's current supply capacity has to be sufficient to drive the current sensor with enough headroom. Numerous precision reference devices are solely intended to provide analog reference voltages with a constrained capacity for current. Magnetic fields have the ability to skew the results of Hall Effect sensors. The Hall Effect sensor must be shielded from outside magnetic fields during installation.

The Hall Effect sensor comes in open-loop and closed-loop varieties. The magnetic core is encircled by an additional coil in the closed-loop design. The overall flux in the core may be controlled by adjusting the coil's current magnitude and direction, and the amount of current needed to completely cancel the flux created by the battery current is proportional to the battery current. Closed-loop sensors are bigger, costlier, and use a lot more power, but they are more accurate, quicker to respond, and less prone to magnetic saturation. Both kinds have uses in large-format systems. Due to economic considerations, open-loop sensors are often used in automotive applications[4].

Bipolar or unipolar outputs are offered for hall effect sensors. Bipolar sensors have positive voltages for positive currents and negative voltages for negative currents, while unipolar Hall effect sensors map the whole range of currents into a positive output voltage. Bipolar supply voltage circuits, which are often only needed in a very small number of other kinds of control circuits, are necessary for bipolar sensors. To guarantee that a minimum load condition is fulfilled, a load resistor should also be linked to the output of Hall effect sensors. To guarantee production stability, this is essential.

Zero-offset error affects the majority of Hall effect sensors. It may be characterized as the sensor's output when there is no current flowing. The easiest way to simulate this offset, which is often constant over the current measurement range, is by adding a constant error to the current measurement. The sign of this inaccuracy might be either positive or negative. It changes with temperature, and it might change from one device to another, as well as with time, using only one sensor. This kind of inaccuracy makes up a significant portion of measurement error when current measurements are combined to assess battery state of charge. There is no cancellation of mistakes during currents of the opposite sign since the error is of the same sign regardless of the direction of the current. When this kind of continuous additive mistake in the present signal is integrated, the integration error grows linearly with time, and even minor errors may balloon to extremely enormous proportions in systems with lengthy operational cycles. In one week of operation, a continuous duty current sensor with this kind of offset error, which is equivalent to 0.001C, would build up 16.8% SOC error[5].

For this reason, using zero drift compensation and zero current cancellation with Hall effect sensors is preferred whenever it is practical. There are several battery systems that may not always perceive a connection to their load devices. No matter how the current is measured, it is a given that it is zero when the battery is removed via relays or contactors. Therefore, regardless of the sensor signal, the current signal within the battery management system should be set to zero. Additionally, this offers a chance to determine the sensor's zero offset and adapt later measurements to utilize this new zero point. To have better performance, utilize this value throughout the subsequent operation cycle. This will provide some temperature correction in addition to adaptive calibration to take sensor aging into consideration[6].

Hysteresis, gain, and nonlinearity errors are further forms of mistakes. Gain errors and hysteresis are often symmetrical with respect to the zero-current point. If the battery's current profile is essentially symmetrical in this instance, the integrated errors will be of similar size and opposite sign and will tend to cancel one another out. When analyzing present sensor errors, the level of symmetry anticipated in the current profile should be taken into account. Gain errors are inversely correlated with current flow. Systems are more resilient to gain mistakes in current sensing when they do not run often at peak battery current[7], [8].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, reliable cell voltage monitoring is essential for Battery Management Systems (BMS) to function properly in battery-based energy storage systems. Cell variability, measurement precision, measurement procedures, temperature effects, and outside interference all provide difficulties in measuring cell voltage. These difficulties may lead to faulty voltage measurements, which may affect how the battery's SOC and SOH are calculated. It is crucial to carefully evaluate cell properties, choose suitable measuring methods, put temperature compensation strategies into practice, and use strong noise filtering techniques in order to overcome these obstacles. For minimizing the difficulties connected with cell voltage monitoring, calibration and characterization of battery cells are also essential, as well as appropriate BMS design and implementation.

REFERENCES:

[1] E. Zimmermann *et al.*, “Characterization of perovskite solar cells: Towards a reliable measurement protocol,” *APL Mater.*, 2016, doi: 10.1063/1.4960759.

[2] V. Grenier, B. R. Daws, P. Liu, and E. W. Miller, “Spying on Neuronal Membrane Potential with Genetically Targetable Voltage Indicators,” *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2019, doi: 10.1021/jacs.8b11997.

[3] A. Goshtasbi, J. Chen, J. R. Waldecker, S. Hirano, and T. Ersal, "Effective Parameterization of PEM Fuel Cell Models—Part I: Sensitivity Analysis and Parameter Identifiability," *J. Electrochem. Soc.*, 2020, doi: 10.1149/1945-7111/ab7091.

[4] C. G. Shuttle, R. Hamilton, B. C. O'Regan, J. Nelson, and J. R. Durrant, "Charge-density-based analysis of the current-voltage response of polythiophene/fullerene photovoltaic devices," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.*, 2010, doi: 10.1073/pnas.1004363107.

[5] L. K. Amifia, M. I. Riansyah, I. Hafidz, D. Adiputra, and A. Faricha, "Desain Deteksi Kesalahan Battery Management System Menggunakan Algoritma Kalman Filter Pada Mobil Listrik," *J. Teknol. dan Terap. Bisnis*, 2019.

[6] T. Hennen *et al.*, "Current-limiting amplifier for high speed measurement of resistive switching data," *Rev. Sci. Instrum.*, 2021, doi: 10.1063/5.0047571.

[7] L. A. Perişoară, I. C. Guran, and D. C. Costache, "A Passive Battery Management System for Fast Balancing of Four LiFePO4 Cells," in *2018 IEEE 24th International Symposium for Design and Technology in Electronic Packaging, SIITME 2018 - Proceedings*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/SIITME.2018.8599258.

[8] W. Yan, B. Zhang, G. Zhao, S. Tang, G. Niu, and X. Wang, "A Battery Management System with a Lebesgue-Sampling-Based Extended Kalman Filter," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, 2019, doi: 10.1109/TIE.2018.2842782.

CHAPTER 6

A STUDY ON MAGNETO-STRICTIVE SENSORS

Mr. Tirumala Vasu Galithoti, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- tirumala.vasu@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Magneto-strictive sensors are a type of sensor that utilize the Magneto-strictive effect, which is the phenomenon of a material changing its shape or dimensions when subjected to a magnetic field. These sensors have gained significant attention in various industries due to their ability to provide accurate, non-contact, and reliable measurements of various physical quantities, such as position, velocity, force, and torque. This abstract provides an overview of Magneto-strictive sensors, including their working principle, types, applications, advantages, and limitations. The working principle of Magneto-strictive sensors involves the generation of a mechanical strain in a Magneto-strictive material due to the interaction with a magnetic field, which can be detected and converted into an electrical signal for measurement. There are different types of Magneto-strictive sensors, including waveguide-based, torsional, and axial sensors, each with its unique advantages and applications.

KEYWORDS:

Actuation, Magnetostriction, Non-destructive testing, Position, Sensing.

INTRODUCTION

In comparison to the other two alternatives mentioned before, Magneto-strictive sensors are a relatively recent technology. These sensors work on the magnetostriction concept, where a current produces a magnetic field that puts strain on a material. A strain gage is used to measure the strain, which is correlated with the current.

Sense of the Moment Measurement

The resolution of the analog-to-digital converter utilized to turn the current sensor measurement into a digital signal is given a lot of attention. Although this is a crucial characteristic, a number of upstream choices may have an impact on how useful this assessment is in actual life.Associated with the battery management system: The current sense signal in a shunt must be linked to a high-impedance input since it is low voltage. Due to the high sensitivity of this sort of connection to noise, it should be protected using the proper grounding and shielding procedures. Connect using twisted-bundle cables to reduce current-mode interference. as well as the anticipated frequency content of the load current, ascertain the converter and sensor's bandwidth and sampling rate. To eliminate frequency content over the conversion circuit's Nyquist frequency, an analog prefilter should be utilized.Active filters have to be designed with zero dc offset in mind. By include dc offset in the filter and amplifier stages of the measuring circuit, it is simple to take great care to eliminate offset errors in the transducer only to reintroduce the same issue[1].

For the current sensing circuit, think about using a separate precise voltage reference. Use a ratiometric sensor and converter to reduce voltage reference inaccuracies, if at all feasible. The measuring circuitry must have a high common mode rejection ratio, particularly when utilized with a shunt. Shunts should be strategically placed to lower common-mode voltages.

The battery management system modules may include internal or external current sensors. If they are internal, the battery management system component must receive the whole battery current. Due to the PCB area needed for huge current traces and high-voltage separations, using an internal sensor with high voltages and large currents may not be cost-effective. In addition, there are tiny PCB-mount sensors and shunts that may provide a very small packaging.

By combining numerous sensors with various measurement ranges, it is occasionally possible to retain acceptable integration accuracy throughout extended integration durations and vast dynamic ranges. There are Hall Effect sensors on the market with two or more ranges. When the bigger range is employed because the smaller range's maximum measurement range has been reached, the smaller range merely stabilizes. The transition between low-range and high-range sensors must be handled with care. A common current shunt interface circuit. Circuits used in Hall Effect interfaces are similar[2], [3].

DISCUSSION

Synchronization of Current and Voltage

Understanding the time-domain relationship between current and voltage measurements is just as crucial as their individual accuracy and sample rate.For reasons that will be explained in greater detail later, many sophisticated aspects of large-format battery management systems depend on being able to acquire synchronized or coordinated readings of voltage and current. Since detecting the immediate relationship between voltage and current is necessary for measuring cell impedance, the current and voltage sampling must be synchronized in some way.Therefore, all measuring instruments must be deterministic in time. The device must accept an external trigger signal in order to perform measurements, and there must be a minimum amount of time before the measurement starts and a maximum amount of time before it ends. The measuring window must have a narrow enough overall width for the amount being measured to stay roughly constant throughout this time. The measurement's minimum start time must be brief enough to prevent the system's real-time capabilities from being compromised.

A measurement may be started in a variety of ways. The most straightforward is a digital logic signal that starts the measurement time at a level or edge. On the last edge of the last bit of a command message in a serial communication stream that is controlling the device, certain devices will start converting. If this message has been sent asynchronously via interrupts, it could be difficult to pinpoint when this edge will happen since it won't happen at a certain phase of the program's usual execution. Perhaps a thorough time study is necessary.

Conceptually, synchronizing all measurements very closely in time to the point where any variation may be deemed to be insignificant and all measurements presumed to be simultaneous is the simplest method. This strategy offers the simplest software solution, but its hardware implementation could be more difficult. Many cell-measurement IC providers offer ICs that execute all cell measurements in a matter of microseconds, which are regarded as simultaneous for the majority of systems. These chips could use a faster ADC that is multiplexed between cells or an analog-to-digital converter for each cell to enable synchronized measurement, but doing so might reduce the accuracy possible when trying to perform measurements quickly enough to be regarded as synchronous[4].

When many measurement ICs are utilized on a single module and when slave modules are employed in a distributed architecture with a single master, synchronization problems between ICs and slave modules result, adding another layer of complexity. Attempting to coordinate measurements without reaching total synchronization is another option. It could be feasible to interpolate data to acquire voltage or current data at intermediate time points if voltage and current measurements take place at separate times but with consistent offsets.

Allowing voltage and current measurements to go asynchronously is a third option. When a current and voltage measurement occur at the same time, a sort of opportunity calculation may be performed on individual cells since numerous measurements that call on synchro- chronicity of these two measurements do not need to be made continuously. To synchronize the measurements, no extra gear or software is needed; nevertheless, careful postprocessing of the data is necessary to pinpoint the locations where a synchronized measurement has been taken. Although it may not happen often enough to offer sufficient fidelity for precise battery status detection, it allows for a straightforward implementation.

Measurement voltages are often sent in fixed-length packets or messages across a communications channel. The transmission will happen after a number of messages have been sent, and it could happen after the measurements are finished at a nondeterministic time interval. Therefore, it is not possible to tell when the measurements were really taken by looking at the time the message arrives at the receiving device. Attaching a timestamp to the measurements taken by slave devices is a wise move. With regular synchronization of all slave devices to the master, a master clock may be initiated on the master device. A rolling counter with a long enough period will serve; neither an absolute time reference nor one that is monotonic are required. One time stamp could be sufficient if all measurements are taken simultaneously or within a very short time frame. A start time may be utilized if measurements are spaced out regularly. To provide precise battery condition assessment, voltage and current measurements taken on various devices may be synchronized using the master clock and time stamps.

Measurement of Temperature

Temperature has a big impact on battery behavior and performance. Additionally, it's crucial to prohibit operating outside of the battery's safe temperature range. These factors lead to the incorporation of one or more temperature measures by the majority of battery management systems. The temperature measurements' range should include the largest feasible working range anticipated for the battery system, plus enough buffer to account for any measurement errors at the operational range's outer limits. The majority of lithium-ion batteries can operate between a minimum temperature of 10°C and 30°C and a maximum temperature of 45°C and 65°C.

Temperature measurements may be made using a variety of sensors. The temperature differential between the junction and the metals' bodies influences the extremely tiny voltage that thermocouples produce across the junction of two dissimilar metals. Thermocouples are often used in laboratory settings and are excellent for monitoring high temperatures in general. Due to the very tiny signals and poor noise immunity, use in embedded systems is less popular. The measurement of temperatures suitable for lithium ion batteries is also not well suited to thermocouples. Other kinds of temperature sensors are increasingly prevalent because of this[5].

Thermistors are often used in numerous sectors, notably the automobile industry, for temperature monitoring with embedded control systems. The resistance value of thermoscistors varies with temperature. They are offered with various nominal resistances, various temperature dependency coefficients, and either positive or negative temperature coefficient kinds. PTC and NTC thermistors have resistance increases that correspond to rising and falling temperatures, respectively.

To optimize the thermometer for the desired measurement ranges, the temperature coefficient should be chosen. Most lithium ion batteries cannot work between 20 and 30 degrees Celsius. Most people consider temperatures between 50°C and 65°C to be excessive. Because battery function is hindered at temperatures outside of this range, accuracy is often not as important. Many cells cannot be charged below 0°C without the potential of lithium plating. Due to higher battery impedance, charge and discharge performance may suffer at 25°C. Therefore, it would be appropriate for the majority of cell types to optimize the measuring circuit to offer the greatest accuracy in a range of around 5°C to 30°C.

Over the desired temperature range, the connection between thermistor resistance and temperature is complex and nonlinear. The resistance of the thermistor is roughly a linear function of temperature in many applications. Accuracy may suffer significantly as a result of this. There are several nonlinear models of thermistor resistance, but for the majority of battery management system applications, a simple one-dimensional lookup table with linear interpolation may be utilized to give enough accuracy without the need for intricate calculations or the use of numerical models.The way extreme values of temperature are perceived affects the outcomes of using NTC or PTC thermistors, in addition to the usual technical limitations of cost, performance, and size. Extremely high temperature excursions are more common than extremely low ones due to lithium batteries' potential to enter thermal runaway and produce significant heat.

Another factor is the thermistors' reference voltage. The danger of short circuits between temperature sensing circuits and cell voltage occurs due to the proximity of the thermistors to the cells and the frequent routing of the voltage and temperature sensor wire via the same conduits and harnesses. A short of this kind that happens in cells that are separated from the ground will result in an isolation fault. Multiple shorts of this kind might result in a short that spans numerous cells. Very high potentials might exist between the temperature circuits and the most positive cells if the temperature measurements are made with reference to the lowest cell in the battery stack. A preferable compromise is to aggregate temperature readings from cells with comparable potentials and reference them to the cell with the lowest potential. Simple techniques can be used to make sure that the worst-case short circuit won't harm the battery management system or result in a high-energy circuit by reducing the potential difference between the cell stack and the temperature sense circuits that are most likely to experience a short circuit to the stack[6].

The conventional method for determining a thermistor's resistance is to construct a voltage divider out of the thermistor and one or more fixed resistors. The complete series of resistors may then be set to a fixed voltage, and the voltage across the thermistor, which will be proportionate to its resistance, can then be measured.A fixed resistor may be positioned on both sides of the thermistor to avoid a scenario in which a harness short circuit will result in a short circuit of the thermistor supply voltage. A shorted sensing circuit won't harm the measurement circuit in this instance.

Thermistor accuracy worst-case analysis is more intricate than it first seems. There is a fundamental tolerance zone for the thermistor's nominal resistance. The tolerance factor for the temperature coefficient is also included, and b itself can be temperature-dependent. This is a deterministic effect that may be eliminated by utilizing a suitable lookup table, as was previously explained. The fixed resistors used to build the voltage divider are likewise subject to tolerances. Since temperature and resistance have a nonlinear relationship, the accuracy of the circuit will often fluctuate greatly throughout the range of interest.

Thermistors may self-heat and provide false readings if they are sized incorrectly such that a considerable current flows while they are in use. In order to reduce self-heating, thermistor sensing circuits should make sure that thermistor current is maintained to a minimum. There are many factors that affect temperature measurement accuracy, some of which are not related to the electronics and sensor signal chain. Remember that while the battery management system is attempting to determine the temperature within the cells, the sensor is detecting the temperature at the sensor. Measurement inaccuracies are caused by the thermal resistance between the sensor and the cell enclosures, which is impacted by sensor placement. The necessity for electrical isolation may clash with the need for good, constant contact, which is necessary for accurate measurement.

A temperature gradient inside the cell itself may occur depending on the cell's size, particularly in systems that use active heating and cooling. An efficient way to decide whether this is a problem is to calculate the cell's Biot number using a numerical model. Biot numbers of 0.1 suggest that it is safe to assume that the temperature is the same across the whole cell. Numerical techniques, computer simulations, or empirical formulae may all be used to calculate this[7].Another crucial element is the position of the temperature sensor. Temperature gradients are often predicted in a big battery system. It is possible for isolated cells whose temperature is not monitored to exceed the safe operating area while all temperature readings stay within the acceptable range if the system runs with large gradients or operates near to the edge of the safe operating region. Additionally, the likelihood that a cell experiencing a spontaneous thermal event would be noticed decreases and detection times lengthens the farther away the sensors are from the cell.To get a good outcome, a multidisciplinary approach and consideration of these thermal restrictions by the battery management system designer are required. Validation must be approached systematically. The design of temperature measurements must take into account the following issues.

What is the maximum possible difference between the cells that were assessed to be the hottest and coolest and the actual cells that are the hottest and coolest in the battery system? This has to be confirmed at the battery, ambient temperature, and thermal management input extremes. How much does the observed temperature deviate from the cell core temperature when there is a maximum thermal load? Can a cell's internal temperature rise over the permissible operating range before temperature measurements reveal a problem? If this is the case, the battery management system's performance may be enhanced by adding a simple model of heat production and rejection. Given the battery current, cell resistance, heat rejection, and heat capacity, this model is able to forecast the interior temperature of the cell. Although such a model's long-term accuracy won't be sufficient to replace the requirement for temperature sensors, under the right conditions, it could be able to provide a more accurate estimate of the peak cell temperature than measurement data. A measurement accuracy that fluctuates throughout the temperature range being measured is acceptable. Battery performance is already restricted or even stopped at hot and low temperatures, thus high temperature fidelity does not provide much of an advantage.

The situation in which a single cell encounters an internal short circuit and starts to heat up or perhaps enters thermal runaway is crucial to take into account. Numerous countermeasures may be launched if this kind of circumstance could be identified. Due to the expense and complexity, installing a temperature sensor on each individual cell is usually not an option in applications. However, if the precision and position of the specific cell are not critical, a variety of less expensive techniques may be used. In many circumstances, knowing which cell has achieved a very high temperature may not be as important[8].

It is possible to identify a high temperature cell using inexpensive PTC components that experience a substantial resistance rise around a threshold temperature. It is also possible to employ fusible wires with melting points adjusted to the temperature corresponding to the overheating threshold. A cell has achieved this temperature when an open circuit can be seen on the wire.You may also utilize a method that installs closely matched diodes in parallel to enable low-cost maximum temperature detection. The equation states that the voltage drop across a forward biased diode depends on the junction's temperature. The hottest diode will have the lowest voltage drop when many diodes are connected in series, making it possible to measure the highest temperature using a relatively low-cost set of sensors.This method has a number of drawbacks, including the very small difference in diode voltage between the temperatures of interest, which necessitates accurate measurement and close attention to other voltage drops in the circuit caused by connectors, traces, and other elements of the conductive path.

Measurement Performance of the Battery Management System and Uncertainty

In engineering systems, every measurement has some degree of uncertainty. The system requirements should include a determination of the maximum allowable error. A worst-case circuit analysis utilizing the component tolerances and limitations given should be carried out as part of the implementation and validation process. The outcome of the worst-case circuit analysis ought to provide a thorough engineering examination of the hardware's capabilities. To determine what the average measurement errors will be, this should be done in conjunction with testing a variety of sample devices, ideally throughout the predicted working range of temperature and other environmental factors. System designers may take steps to guarantee that the consequences of measurement mistakes do not unacceptably impair the performance of battery management systems by arming themselves with information of both usual and worst-case measurement errors.

Relationship Status

An interlock mechanism is used by many battery systems that use dangerous voltages. Before powering the conductive portions, the interlock checks to see if the barriers separating people from them at dangerous electrical potentials are still in place. The effectiveness of the interlock is essential for reducing the danger of an electric shock. The battery management system often checks the status of the interlocks since the battery is a source of electrical energy to decide whether or not to take action. Interlock loops are created such that if an insulating barrier is breached, a conductive channel between the source and detector of the loop signal is broken. Instances of how this may be accomplished include:

Doors, coverings, or panels that block access to current-carrying components are removed to operate switches.When the HV connection is unmated, additional low voltage terminals of the high-voltage connector are disconnected. These terminals need to be built using break-first/make-last principles.The interlock loop should travel through all components and linkages in order to safeguard all logical sites of access to hazardous voltages. Although the interlock loop's functioning is straightforward in theory, caution must be exercised owing to its crucial significance to prevent faults that might render the battery system useless or impair personnel protection.

Loops may employ numerous sources and sinks or just a single source and sink. When a single source and sink are used in the loop, they may be located on the same device or on distinct ones. The easiest and shortest route across all of the components is provided by placing the source and sink separately, however this poses a number of challenges. If the source signal is known, detection limits for an unbroken loop may be tightened. Source measurement is much simpler if the same device serves as the source and sink.

Control Contactor

Contactor control is a crucial task that has to be carried out carefully in various systems. The contactors and related disconnect gear serve as the battery system's last line of defense and are used each time the battery system is put into function. An essential way of avoiding overcharge and overdischarge is lost if the contactors do not operate properly and the battery cannot be removed.The majority of battery management systems must be able to identify contactor defects, such as contactors that have failed to open or shut. The "economizing" function to lower current after closure is often included into the battery management system since various contactors have variable pull-in and hold current requirements.

Relays and contactors are electromechanical switches that work by electrically energizing a solenoid, which then mechanically closes contacts on a higher-power circuit. Due to the physical separation of the main and secondary circuits, the high levels of amplification, and the lack of level shifting and gate drive circuitry, transistors provide dependable isolation in comparison to solid-state semiconductor switches. Unlike semiconductor switches, which always have some leakage current and often have a larger on-resistance, they provide extremely low resistance to current when closed and very high resistance when open.

Especially when an inductive load is present, contactors for dc circuits are carefully designed to put out any arcs that may occur when the circuit is opened. Although most of the time, capacitors are quite dependable, there are a few susceptibilities that system designers need to be aware of. The failure modes that are most worrying are contactors that fail to shut and those that fail to open since the main purpose of a contactor system is to connect and separate the battery from/from the load as required.

In many instances, closing a contactor into a short circuit will aid in the welding of the secondary contacts. Capacitive loads, which generate a significant in-rush current when the contractor is closed, might cause this. Contactor welding may also happen if the contacts are pulled apart while the solenoid coil is still activated, then immediately forced to close again. This happens when the contacts are subjected to higher than rated current.

The contactor coil may close and open quickly due to an unstable control circuit. Contact welding is often caused by the bouncing of the contacts against one another. If the coil current is not reduced to zero fast enough, contacts may also weld, leading to a "soft" opening state where the contacts may reclose during the opening process.

Welded contactors that won't open may lead to potentially dangerous circumstances. The battery may become hard to separate from the load, rendering the battery's overcharge and overdischarge risks unavoidable and the battery management system ineffective in stopping them. Normally believed to be in a safe state when the battery is unplugged, certain components may continue to be electrically live at all times, increasing the risk of electrical shock and fire dangers. Contactors that fail to close are equally harmful but less dangerous. As a result, the battery won't be able to be connected to the load, rendering the system useless.

Overload may harm contactors in this manner. Overvoltage may result in contact failure and excessive arc energy. A high temperature might cause thermal damage to the armature, preventing contactors from closing. There are maximum rated lifespan for all contactors. These lives will take into account the maximum number of opening cycles the contactor can withstand. High current opening of contactors will significantly shorten their useful life. All of these possible contactor damage sources will be examined, along with solutions[9].

CONCLUSION

As a result, Magneto-strictive sensors are well suited for a variety of applications in sectors including automotive, aerospace, energy, robotics, and industrial automation due to their distinct advantages in terms of precision, repeatability, and non-contact measuring capabilities. They provide accurate readings of physical parameters like location, velocity, force, and torque and are unaffected by external variables like dust, filth, temperature, and humidity. Magneto-strictive sensor technology is likely to continue to advance in terms of performance, price, and reliability, creating new potential for its use in a variety of sectors. Magneto-strictive sensors, which provide accurate and dependable measurements in difficult settings, have the potential to dramatically expand industrial automation, robotics, and other sectors as technology develops.

REFERENCES:

[1] F. T. Calkins, A. B. Flatau, and M. J. Dapino, "Overview of Magneto-strictive sensor technology," *Journal of Intelligent Material Systems and Structures*. 2007. doi: 10.1177/1045389X06072358.

[2] L. Weng, G. Xie, B. Zhang, W. Huang, B. Wang, and Z. Deng, "Magneto-strictive tactile sensor array for force and stiffness detection," *J. Magn. Magn. Mater.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.jmmm.2020.167068.

[3] M. J. Dapino, R. C. Smith, F. T. Calkins, and A. B. Flatau, "A magnetoelastic model for Villari-effect Magneto-strictive sensors," *North Carolina State Univ. Cent. Res. Sci. Comput.*, 2002.

[4] A. M. Pernía, H. A. Mayor, M. J. Prieto, P. J. Villegas, F. Nuño, and J. A. Martín-Ramos, "Magneto-strictive sensor for blockage detection in pipes subjected to high temperatures," *Sensors (Switzerland)*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/s19102382.

[5] Y. G. Kim, H. S. Moon, K. J. Park, and J. K. Lee, "Generating and detecting torsional guided waves using Magneto-strictive sensors of crossed coils," *NDT E Int.*, 2011, doi: 10.1016/j.ndteint.2010.11.006.

[6] L. Ren, K. Yu, and Y. Tan, "A Self-Powered Magneto-strictive Sensor for Long-Term Earthquake Monitoring," *IEEE Trans. Magn.*, 2020, doi: 10.1109/TMAG.2019.2958783.

[7] M. C. Rajagopal and S. Sinha, "Design and analysis of Magneto-strictive sensors for wireless temperature sensing," *Rev. Sci. Instrum.*, 2021, doi: 10.1063/5.0035296.

[8] S. Gao, L. Weng, Z. Deng, B. Wang, and W. Huang, "Biomimetic tactile sensor array based on Magneto-strictive materials," *IEEE Sens. J.*, 2021, doi: 10.1109/JSEN.2021.3068160.

[9] X. Z. Zhou, C. Yu, Z. Y. Tang, C. P. Zhao, and H. Yan, "Wiedemann effect in Fe83Ga17 alloys for Magneto-strictive sensors," *IEEE Sens. J.*, 2014, doi: 10.1109/JSEN.2013.2282408.

CHAPTER 7

SOFT START OR RECHARGE CIRCUITS

Ms. Ginkawar Shwetha, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- swethag@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Recharge circuits are essential components in rechargeable battery systems, providing the necessary control and protection for charging batteries safely and efficiently. This abstract provides an overview of recharge circuits, including their functions, types, and applications. The functions of recharge circuits include regulating charging voltage and current, monitoring battery state-of-charge (SOC) and state-of-health (SOH), implementing safety features such as overcharge protection, temperature monitoring, and short-circuit protection, and managing charging profiles to optimize battery performance and extend battery life. There are different types of recharge circuits, including linear chargers, switched-mode chargers, and pulse chargers, each with its advantages and limitations. Linear chargers are simple and cost-effective but are less efficient and generate more heat. Switched-mode chargers are more efficient and compact but are more complex and expensive. Pulse chargers use a combination of pulse charging and trickle charging to enhance charging efficiency and battery performance.

KEYWORDS:

Battery, Charging, Circuits, Current, Electronics, Energy.

INTRODUCTION

To enable the battery to be linked to a significant capacitive load, several battery management systems are needed to operate a soft-start or pre-charge circuit. The internal impedance of the battery, load, and connector will be the sole factor preventing extremely high, perhaps harmful currents from flowing if the battery is connected directly to an uncharged capacitive load. The contactor contacts are prone to weld as a result of this kind of uncontrolled soft start since the contacts close across a lot of voltage and current. Even low voltages across the contacts during closure may cause this kind of damage to contactors that are rated for ostensibly large currents and operational voltage. As a result, contactors should be shut off at low voltages and no current should flow until all of the contacts are closed. Include a soft-start circuit, which consists of a resistor in series with an extra relay or contactor inserted in parallel across one of the primary contactors, to solve this issue. This is the most popular solution.

The proper contactors shut when the battery is connected to the load, creating a connection to the load via the precharge resistor, limiting the current to Vbatt/Rprecharge and allowing the voltage on the capacitive load to increase exponentially. The main contactor may be closed, essentially shorting out the precharge circuit, when the voltage on the load is high enough that the voltage across it is insignificant. The battery is now linked to the load and prepared for use once the precharge contactor has been opened.

The simplest way to make sure the precharge is finished is to simply timing the activations of the contactors such that the precharge circuit is shut off for the right amount of time to give the load capacitors enough time to completely charge before closing the main contactor. Although simple, this approach has certain disadvantages since it is incapable of problem detection or diagnosis and may not take into account sudden changes in resistance, capacitance, or leakage current across the load. Additionally, the battery voltage will determine the voltage difference across the main contactor at a certain moment after the precharge contactor has been closed. The primary contactor might shut into a strong inrush current as a consequence of any of these processes, which could have devastating implications. As a result, this function often requires greater attention.

The simplest approach is to just gauge the load's voltage and contrast it with the battery voltage. The voltage across the contactor terminals will be determined by this. When the voltage differential between the battery voltage and load voltage is small enough to operate the main contactor without causing harm, the contactor should be closed. This will manage modest conductances across the load capacitor as well as regular variations in battery voltage as well as a variety of potential defects including changes in load capacitance and precharge resistance.

The load capacitor will either never fully charge or charge extremely slowly if a lot of current is taken by the load during the precharge cycle. The precharge resistor, which is often only sized for a surge application and not capable of managing high load currents for more than the short amount of time during the pre- charge, will conduct any current drawn during the precharge. If the load voltage increases too slowly or does not reach the needed voltage soon enough, a proper precharge control sequence will check to make sure it is increasing at the right pace and will open the precharge contactor to stop the process. By avoiding repeated precharge efforts in quick succession, it may be crucial to reduce the duty cycle that the precharge resistor observes. These adjustments will guard against overheating-related damage to the precharge resistor. In the precharge sequence, voltage, current, and power.The load capacitance value might vary greatly. Particularly when device age and temperature impacts are taken into account, many capaci- tors have extensive tolerance bands. A "hot start," where the battery is anticipated to reconnect to the load before the load capacitance has completely depleted, may also be necessary for many devices. In this instance, it will be necessary to adjust the allowable range of voltage/time relationships to take the partly charged load into consideration.Rapid rises in load voltage might mean that there is no load attached or that the battery is being used against its intended purpose. This might be problematic in certain circumstances, thus the precharge process should also come to a stop[1].

DISCUSSION

Control Topologies

It is essential that the battery system be capable of severing the battery from the load in order to avert a hazardous situation. Contactor control switches may malfunction in a variety of ways, such as an open or short circuit or anywhere in between. The following primary failure scenarios for contactor control circuits should be taken into consideration while developing the schematic and layout:

1. Avoid failures that cause contactors to shut that need to be open.
2. Avoid failures that open contactors that need to be closed.

3. Avoid malfunctions that lead to the battery being connected across a capacitive load that has been discharged.

The degree of caution necessary for each of the aforementioned failure scenarios will depend on the safety criteria and amount of risk associated with unintentional contactor operation. We'll talk about the following implementation strategies. It is possible to increase the reliability of interrupting the contactor coil current and thus opening the contactor by connecting multiple switches in series, but doing so reduces the reliability of keeping the contactor closed because there are now two switches that could malfunction in the open state. The development of safety-critical functionality must take this kind of trade-off into account.

Current, voltage, and power should be recharged in order

Most of the time, it is thought that the safety risks posed by contactors that cannot be opened are worse than the functional loss brought on by contactors that cannot be closed. This results in the use of a fail-safe technique that involves connecting many switches in series, all of which must be functional for the contactor to shut. This results in a high degree of resilience in the disconnect capability when paired with several contactors.

A typical arrangement inserts one switching device on the positive "high" side of the conductor coil and another on the negative "low" side. This has many benefits. A contactor can no longer shut due to a single short to the ground or to the control power of the contactor. Due to the possibility that the two devices are now of different designs, it is less probable that a single root cause would result in repeated failures than it would if two identical devices were connected in series. Using a single device in either the high-side or low-side position to provide control to all contactors, along with separate devices in the other position to control each individual contactor, can simplify and lower the cost of an application where multiple contactors need to be controlled. In addition to the significance of this function, the size of the pull-in and hold currents for contactors makes them often one of the bigger loads that the battery management system must handle.

Dual Contactor Driving Circuit

For many applications, the use of so-called smart semiconductor switches, also known as high side drivers or low side drivers, for contactor control is recommended. These switches can dissipate the inductive switching load without the aid of external components and offer protection against short circuits, overheating, electrostatic discharge, and overvoltage. Short-circuit failures may result from these kinds of errors in semiconductor switches.

Transient Contactor Opening

Relays and contactors are inductive loads with large energy storage in their internal magnetic circuit when the contactor is closed, according to their electromechanical nature. If not adequately dissipated, this energy may harm switching electronics and lengthen contactor opening times. Due to the longer arc length and higher contact erosion, the longer opening time is harmful to the contactor. However, the energy in the contactor coil is solely dissipated by the internal resistance of the contactor coil, diode, and related interconnections. The use of a typical freewheeling diode will safeguard the switching electronics from harm. This basically creates an RL circuit with an exponential decay of the current, which will considerably increase the contactor opening time. Low forward voltage drop and quick yet "soft" reverse voltage recovery properties are desirable in a diode. Typically, a Schottky diode is the best option for this purpose[2].

The freewheeling diode and a resistor may be connected in series to lower the circuit's time constant. The resistor, which will drain the energy from the contactor coil, has to have the right power/energy rating for this application. Due to the surge application, it may be necessary to match the resistor's continuous power rating to the peak power anticipated in the resistor. If the resistor is not capable of continuous duty, care must be taken to prevent the resistor from being harmed by repeated contactor cycling.

Use of a transient voltage surge suppression or Zener diode in the freewheel circuit is a preferable choice. A certain amount of back electromotive force will be permitted by the TVS/Zener diode, but it will conduct at a specific forward voltage drop and clamp the voltage at this level. This modifies the contactor opening's characteristics. The current will decrease in a fairly linear ramp because the voltage across the inductor is equal to the roughly constant forward voltage drop across the diode and $V_L = L\,di/dt$. The quickest contactor opening is provided by this. In order to offer a quick opening time without going beyond the voltage rating of the switching components, the voltage may be regulated by choosing the right TVS/Zener diode. The contactor control outputs may also benefit from ESD shielding when a bidirectional TVS is used.

Talk Detection

Numerous factors may cause contactor "chatter," or the frequent opening and shutting of the contactor armature, but it almost always results in contactor dam- age, such as armature overheating owing to high inrush current and contactor welding, producing a dangerous state. A strong strategy should be used to stop chatter to make sure this doesn't happen. Chattering results from dynamic interactions between the contactor's load profile and the power source that activates it. Contactor chatter may be brought on by a low control supply voltage. The contactor supplier should provide the bare minimum voltage necessary to achieve contactor closure, and testing should be done in the whole range of anticipated operating temperatures. To accommodate for measurement errors in contactor control voltage measurements, a safety margin should be included. In order to guarantee that the voltage increases to a suitable level for long enough to avoid contactor activation in a marginal state, a hysteresis band is also advised.A high-impedance current channel via the contactor coil is another potential reason for contactor chatter. This may occur as a result of broken semiconductor switches, inadequately sized components, defective wire harnesses or connectors, or a high-impedance power supply. This may generate enough voltage to trigger the contactor, whose inrush current causes it to drop sharply. The contactor then opens, cutting the inrush current and restoring the power supply voltage, which creates oscillation.

Several safety measures must be implemented if the contactors used operate at the full control power supply voltage. To guarantee that the battery management system receives an appropriate voltage supply prior to contactor activation, the allowable supply voltage range must first be constrained. Second, it is necessary to analyze the voltage drops that occur in the contactor control circuit. The high and low side control switches' on-resistance normally dominates this, although it may also comprise connections, PCB traces, and a current detecting resistor if one is employed. The results of this study must demonstrate that the contactors will be wired to a high enough voltage to effectively shut them. Consider that the worst-case scenario must include the worst-case pairing of hold and pull-in currents when numerous contactors share certain parts of the driving circuit. Limiting the number of contactors that shut simultaneously is often a wise move since it lowers the possibility of chatter, voltage drop, and peak currents. To prevent strong inrush currents from overlapping, contactor activation may be spaced out with no negative influence on battery performance.

By using a contactor with a lower rated voltage than the nominal supply voltage, it is feasible to utilize a simple buck converter or PWM driving circuit to make sure that even the lowest supply voltage can effectively power the contactor. Utilizing a buck-boost dc-dc converter is an option. This increases expense and complexity but may avoid chatter or contactor failure to activate owing to low voltage. These two options both raise the chance of increased electromagnetic interference.Some contactors may be mechanically chattered by applying physical vibration or shock, which causes the contactor's armature to be physically pushed open. The contactor then often shuts once again right away. Contact welding often results from a voltage differential between the contacts. Damaged contactors may chatter for further internal mechanical or electrical causes. Identifying the present transitory associated with shutting in these circumstances might help to avoid harmful situations or lasting damage.Chattering may be seen in contactors with auxiliary connections if such contacts show patchy connectivity. This might happen as a result of improper wiring or other system flaws and result in a wrong diagnosis.

To stop con-tactor chattering, dynamically measuring coil current is a good solution. Any of the aforementioned causes may result in the in-rush current associated with a contactor reclosing being noticed, allowing the contactor to be turned off before the chattering has a chance to seriously harm the system. In order for this to be effective, the current must be accurately measured to confirm the occurrence of the in-rush and sampled often enough to allow for a dynamic analysis of the complete contactor closure event. Throughout the closing process, a minimum of 10 sample points should be obtained. A contactor's hold current varies with contactor temperature, which is affected by outside temperature and, in most instances, self-heating over time owing to contactor coil current. If a straightforward maximum threshold is employed to find a chatter transient, care must be taken. Use of a dynamically modified detection window that adjusts for variations in the steady-state current may be essential. Only in response to an instruction to shut a contactor should the closure temporary take place. There is a chance of contactor chatter if the closing transient is found at a different time. Chattering will be minimized or prevented by opening the contactor drive circuit. But if the chatter detection circuit malfunctions, the contactors would open while the battery system is running, which is a very bad outcome.

Economizers

The majority of electromechanical relays need a lot more current to shut the contactor than they need to keep the contacts closed. This is caused by the contactor coil's inductive action as well as the fleeting electromechanical effects brought on by the movement of the contactor's armature. After the contactor has closed, the current supply to the contactor coil is decreased using a circuit called as an economizer. Economical optimization may either be optional to lower power consumption or increase contactor dependability owing to less heating, or it might be necessary to stop contactor damage from thermal stress[3].

By operating the switching transistor in a pulse-width modulated mode, a contactor may be reduced in size using a simple chopping technique. Using an open-loop PWM control to give a variable current to the contactor coil is the simplest method. The current may be managed as the contactor shuts using a simple time sequence. As the coil resistance rises, a larger voltage is required to accomplish pull-in and retain contactors closed; this method, however, does not take into consideration variations in contactor current or temperature-dependent contactor closure requirements. Over-economized contactors may not have enough holding power and may open when vibrated, whereas under-economized contactors may overheat.

Economizers must also avoid obstructing the necessity for fast dropout, which enables contactors to open rapidly. Electromagnetic interference may come from PWM economizers. The frequencies and magnitudes of radiated and conducted emissions will depend on the PWM signal's frequency components. Both the fundamental and edge speeds of the PWM signal are involved in this. Fast edge rates feature high-frequency components and will expand the frequency range and number of emissions. The contactor coil current measuring approach is useful for identifying contactors that fail to economize as well as other economizer defects if economizers are necessary to avoid contactor overheating.

Topologies of Contactors

Multiple contactors are often used in battery systems to increase safety and performance. A trustworthy disconnect method is essential because the battery management system will activate contactors to safeguard the battery system in response to the most serious problems it detects. A single placed contactor in the battery pack would be the bare minimum disconnect topology. The contactor could be found in the positive, negative, or middle positions of the pack. While the battery will be disconnected, the battery cells won't be entirely cut off from the load. The battery will stay permanently linked to the load if the contactor welds, and there won't be a backup way to detach it. With this layout, soft-start functionality is not available. The least expensive but also least practical and safe layout is this one. Using a single contactor on the positive terminal is a safer choice if the battery system is referenced to earth ground at its lowest potential since the negative terminal does not provide a major voltage threat[4], [5].

Particularly in the case of a battery stack that is completely isolated from earth ground, many battery systems employ a pair of contactors at both battery terminals. When both contactors open, this provides total isolation from the load as well as from any possible ground faults. The second contactor may serve as a useful way of isolation if the first contactor welds. In the middle of the group, there can be a contactor. A pair of mid-pack contactors may be used to effectively separate sub-packs if the battery stack is divided into two parts. For soft-start functionality, an extra contactor is often used. This contactor is connected to one of the main contactors in parallel using a resistor. Typically smaller, this contactor may close with variable transitory characteristics. The battery system's positive or negative leg might host the precharge/soft-start contactor.

Contactor Fault Detection

The previously described contactor failures, such as welded contacts and failure to shut, have the potential to result in hazardous circumstances, and detection techniques are often needed to reduce the risk involved with them. The location of the contactors is primarily determined using two ways. One is to conduct tests on the real high-voltage system to see whether a conductive channel connects the contactor's two sides. The other is to use the position of the contactor's auxiliary contacts, which move synchronously with the main contacts but are made to form a low-voltage, low-current control circuit that the battery management system can monitor to see if the contactor has operated properly.

According to the high-voltage measurement technique, the high-voltage bus on the contactors' battery and load sides must be measured. This does not create a new requirement if the system already needs this measurement to be done for other reasons. This approach can dependably identify welded or opened contacts regardless of the contactor's state since it can tell with confidence whether a conductive route crosses it. To guarantee that trustworthy results are produced with a capacitive load, a few problems will be presented. The main drawback of auxiliary connections is that they increase the contactor's costs and need a second digital input to track their status. Instances when the measured state of the auxiliary contacts does not accurately predict the state of the main contacts can give rise to new failure modes. This may occur if auxiliary contacts are damaged by contactor damage, burnt by high current, or fail to shut as a result of oxidation.

In general, the auxiliary contact technique requires more wiring and inputs and results in a greater range of failure scenarios linked to incorrect auxiliary contact functioning. The contactor circuit's current status is directly detected by the high-voltage measuring technique, which also has a significantly larger fault tolerance. Think of a two-contactor topology with a contactor at each of the battery's terminals, negative and positive. In this case, contactor fault detection requires four high-voltage measurement locations two for the battery voltage and two for the load voltage[6].

While contactors are kept closed, contact welding may also happen, as it often does during contactor shutting. At system starting and after an unsuccessful effort to open the contactors, contactor welding tests should be carried out.Because mild "tack" welding may be released by mechanical stress or vibration that may happen during the transfer of the system for repair, contactor welding defects may be intermittent. It may be preferable to disable the battery system until the contactor is replaced and the fault condition is cleared rather than reverting to normal operation if the welded condition is no longer detected because previously welded contacts typically exhibit a higher susceptibility to welding again.In systems with redundant contactors, if a single welded contactor is discovered during starting, there may not be an immediate safety concern, but it could be difficult to shut contactors while retaining soft-start functioning. The load device may sustain serious damage and even catch fire if a good soft-start cannot be maintained, hence the battery should never be connected to the load under any circumstances. The battery is now permanently linked to the load and its terminals are always electrically active if a second contact welding failure takes place. In most circumstances, it is advisable to prevent battery functioning with a single welded contactor until the problem has been fixed. The system operator should be informed at the very least of the need for servicing in order for the contactor system to be fixed right away.

A defective wire harness, an internal contactor coil open circuit, damaged contacts, or the disconnecting of high-voltage terminals may all cause a contactor to fail to shut. Regardless of whether the contactors are closed or open, or if the battery management system is continuously monitoring the system, these failures may happen at any moment. As a result, to make sure that contactors that have been ordered to shut truly have done so, they should be checked both after the order to close is given and while the system is operating. This may be used in conjunction with coil-current monitoring to distinguish between coil faults and high-voltage contact faults.

Following is a typical contactor sequence:

Finding welded contactors: First, make that V12 is present and V34 is zero, indicating that the load capacitor has been completely discharged. Verify a zero reading for V32 measurement. Verify V14 to make sure the negative contactor's zero reading is not welded[7]. Order of contactor closing: If necessary, do welded detection. Set the battery limitations to zero and/or instruct the load to draw no current. Close the negative contactor and make sure that V14 and V12 are equivalent. Close the precharge contactor and start observing V34, which ought to increase exponentially in accordance with V=. The closing procedure should be stopped if V34 does not increase within the predicted tolerances or if it does not climb to within VCmax of V12. In certain circumstances, the process should also be stopped if the load voltage increases right away since this might mean that the correct load isn't connected. The positive contactor might be closed when V34 V12 - Vmax. After giving the positive contactor time to physically shut, the precharge contactor may be opened[8].

CONCLUSION

Recharge circuits, which provide secure and effective charging of batteries in a variety of applications, are crucial parts of rechargeable battery systems. They perform crucial tasks including controlling charging voltage and current, keeping track of the charge and condition of the battery, and putting safety measures in place to guard against dangers like overcharging and overheating. Depending on elements including efficiency, cost, complexity, and charging needs, the kind of recharge circuit used for a given application is determined. Different recharge circuit methods, such linear chargers, switched-mode chargers, and pulse chargers, each have certain benefits and drawbacks that must be taken into account when designing and implementing a system. With the advent of rapid charging, wireless charging, and smart charging technologies, recharge circuits are advancing along with battery technology. These developments are intended to enhance battery performance, charging efficiency, and convenience for end consumers across a range of sectors, including consumer electronics, electric cars, renewable energy systems, and industrial machinery.

REFERENCES:

[1] I. Vornicu, R. Carmona-Galán, B. Pérez-Verdú, and Á. Rodríguez-Vázquez, "Compact CMOS active quenching/recharge circuit for SPAD arrays," *Int. J. Circuit Theory Appl.*, 2016, doi: 10.1002/cta.2113.

[2] A. A. Shcherba, N. I. Suprunovska, and M. A. Shcherba, "Transient analysis in circuits of electric discharge installations with voltage feedback taking into account the recovery time of locking properties their semiconductor switches," *Tech. Electrodyn.*, 2018, doi: 10.15407/techned2018.03.043.

[3] M. Grönholm, J. Poikonen, and M. Laiho, "A ring-oscillator-based active quenching and active recharge circuit for single photon avalanche diodes," in *ECCTD 2009 - European Conference on Circuit Theory and Design Conference Program*, 2009. doi: 10.1109/ECCTD.2009.5275143.

[4] L. K. Amifia, M. I. Riansyah, I. Hafidz, D. Adiputra, and A. Faricha, "Desain Deteksi Kesalahan Battery Management System Menggunakan Algoritma Kalman Filter Pada Mobil Listrik," *J. Teknol. dan Terap. Bisnis*, 2019.

[5] M. Baťa and D. Mikle, “Battery Management System Hardware Design for a Student Electric Racing Car,” in *IFAC-PapersOnLine*, 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.ifacol.2019.12.736.

[6] M. Hemanth, S. Gowtham, and R. Hari Haran, “Smart stick for visually impaired people,” *J. Chem. Pharm. Sci.*, 2016.

[7] A. M. S. M. H. S. Attanayaka, J. P. Karunadasa, and K. T. M. U. Hemapala, “Estimation of state of charge for lithium-ion batteries - A Review,” *AIMS Energy*. 2019. doi: 10.3934/ENERGY.2019.2.186.

[8] T. Frach, “Optimization of the digital Silicon Photomultiplier for Cherenkov light detection,” *J. Instrum.*, 2012, doi: 10.1088/1748-0221/7/01/C01112.

CHAPTER 8

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM FUNCTIONALITY

Ms. Samreen Fiza, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- samreenfiza@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Battery management systems (BMS) play a critical role in managing the performance, safety, and longevity of rechargeable batteries. This abstract provides an overview of BMS functionality, including its key functions, components, and applications. The primary functions of a BMS include state-of-charge (SOC) and state-of-health (SOH) estimation, cell balancing, overcharge protection, over-discharge protection, temperature monitoring, and fault detection. SOC estimation involves accurately estimating the remaining capacity of the battery, while SOH estimation provides information about the battery's health and degradation over time. Cell balancing ensures that individual cells in a battery pack are charged and discharged uniformly to prevent capacity imbalance and extend battery life. Overcharge and over-discharge protection prevent the battery from being charged or discharged beyond safe limits, protecting against potential hazards. Temperature monitoring monitors the temperature of the battery cells to prevent overheating, which can degrade battery performance and safety. Fault detection identifies any abnormalities or malfunctions in the battery system, allowing for timely intervention.

KEYWORDS:

Fault Detection, Health Monitoring, Protection, Safety, State of charge (SOC), State of health (SOH), State of power (SOP).

INTRODUCTION

Charging Strategies

The battery management system is at least partially in charge of managing the battery charging in several large-format applications. Control authority could range from a charger-centric implementation in which the battery management system enables the charger and the charger is then in charge of the majority of charging-related decisions to a very battery management-centric viewpoint in which the battery management system makes all charging-related decisions and the battery charger electronics only carry out the desired power conversion at the management system's command. The battery management system must decide on the rate of charge to maximize system utility, battery life, overall efficiency, and other criteria, as well as when to stop charging.

Charging Method: CC/CV

The CC/CV technique is often cited as the best way to charge lithium-ion batteries. The batteries should be charged using this technique at a consistent current until the end-of-charge voltage is achieved. When this voltage is attained, the charging process should change to constant voltage, where the current will progressively decrease as the cell charges. When the current tapers to a certain level, charging is finished. Although this approach works well for charging a single cell, it has several drawbacks when utilized to power large-format devices. The majority of large-format battery packs are charged by connecting a single charger to the whole series stack of all cells. As a result, it is impossible to regulate the voltage or current that is delivered to certain cells. The voltage of the whole battery pack would be the only area that could be controlled. Furthermore, the cells can be in various states of charge, which would cause them to reach the cutoff voltage at various times and need various currents for every cell. Fundamentally, a large-format battery pack cannot be directly used with the CC/CV technique. To successfully terminate the charge, a new strategy is required. Precise voltage management is required to guarantee that overload is avoided since, for the majority of chemistries, the voltage profile is fairly steep as the battery approaches 100% SOC. As was previously said, even a little repeated overcharge might result in a disastrous situation.

DISCUSSION

Target Voltage Method

Without a precise model of cell dynamics, the target voltage technique may be utilized to approximate CC-CV charging while preventing overcharging with a large-format battery pack. The initial goal voltage is chosen to be somewhat lower than the advised CV value. The pack is charged until the high-est cell voltage in the pack achieves the target voltage at the highest rate that the battery charger is capable of charging at or at the maximum suggested charge current for the cells. The target voltage is then raised, the current is reduced, and the cycle is repeated. The current will progressively taper down as the goal voltage approaches the CV voltage asymptotically.

The cell voltage may be higher than the CV voltage and result in a moderate overcharge situation if the goal voltage is extremely near to the final CV voltage and the current is not sufficiently lowered when the target voltage is attained. This may be avoided by reducing the current to almost nothing, introducing a pause, and giving the cell voltages some time to settle before starting the charging process again.

Method of Constant Current

The rate of battery charging is predetermined for many simple battery systems. Even though there is no current control available, lithium-ion battery systems may be securely charged using a variant of the target voltage approach. This is less frequent now that lower-cost, higher-capability power electronics are available.

As mentioned previously, the desired voltage is determined. The current is stopped when the goal voltage is attained, and the cells are then permitted to rest until the maximum voltage drops below a restart threshold, at which time the current starts flowing once again. In a similar way as the target voltage approach, the target voltage is increased. The charging period for each current pulse will become shorter as the battery gets closer to being fully charged since the current cannot be lowered. The length of the relaxation session will also lengthen.

Thermal Control

The battery often needs thermal management in a large-format battery system, and the battery management system is anticipated to perform the control duties. Battery temperature readings, which are necessary for fundamental safety and operation, as well as potential extra temperature data for intake and output air or coolant, are among the inputs needed for thermal management control. A feedback signal is often implemented when pumps, valves, or fans are operated to ensure that they are operating as intended and to enable failure detection. If a dehumidification technique can be utilized, humidity monitoring may be used to avoid excessive condensation within the battery system[1], [2].

Multiple layers of safety are war- ranted whenever battery heating is involved to stop the heating components from sending the batteries into thermal runaway. This is an extremely risky scenario since the battery pack will be overheated all throughout and might experience many concurrent thermal incidents. In the contacts-welded condition, single-point relays or contactors might malfunction, resulting in continuous heating. In order to avoid contactors accidentally shutting due to driver failure, several transistors should also be employed to regulate contactor drive circuits.

Operating Procedures

One or more finite state machines, which are in charge of regulating the operational states of the battery, are often implemented by battery management systems. These state machines will react to both orders from outside sources and the identification of different battery system internal circumstances. There will often be a "sleep" or "low-power" mode. Because the contactors are opened in this mode, the battery is cut off from the load and must thus have zero current. The system should use as little power from the control power supply and high voltage battery stack as possible. Since the battery system is disconnected, there is no need to monitor cell voltages or temperatures, thus all monitoring circuits and ICs should be in a high-impedance condition. Buses for communications are in a low-power, idle condition. The power should be turned off for the microprocessors, and as many circuits as feasible should be turned off. An excellent illustration of how such a mode might be used is in an electric car with the ignition off.

Even when the battery system is not being used, a periodic wake-up from sleep mode is still beneficial. A more accurate assessment of state of charge and cell balance is feasible when cell dynamics loosen up. The battery management system has self-testing capabilities, and battery cells may be inspected for a number of flaws. A real-time clock or timer circuit must be included in the hardware in order to accomplish this. It is possible to establish a "alarm-clock" function in certain very low-power devices utilizing a serial bus like I2C or a serial peripheral interface connected to the main CPU. Cell balancing may sometimes be done when the device is in this sleep state. If so, you need periodically wake up to make sure the balance is going well. A large amount of the lifespan of many battery systems will be spent in this condition. In most cases, there is also a "idle" or "standby" condition.

The monitoring circuits remain operational even if the battery is still not connected to the load in this mode. State of charge, limitations, and other state estimate methods will be put to use when cell voltages and temperatures are monitored, fault detection algorithms are running, and so forth. While the battery system is unplugged and charging and discharging are stopped, this state enables the status of the battery cells and the complete system to be inspected. To make sure the system is secure before shutting contactors, this state may be utilized at startup and shutdown. If necessary, cell balancing might take place in this condition. With active communications channels and the battery exchanging data with the load and other networked devices, orders may be sent and information like failure status can be collected. Devices connected to the high-voltage bus that need a high voltage shouldn't anticipate one to be there[3].

It could be necessary to use a particular operating mode for this if the battery precharges or soft starts. Other devices on the high voltage bus should be aware of this mode and prepare for the bus voltage to increase to the battery voltage. However, they must refrain from drawing any current from the bus to avoid a precharge failure. In this configuration, an external command to connect the battery would start the contactor closure procedure. The condition would either terminate with the contactor closure sequence being successfully completed or with a problem being discovered during the attempt.

The battery may be linked to a load or charging device in a number of different online states. There is no difference established between a charging mode and a discharging mode since many applications, such grid storage and hybrid electric cars, utilize the same network of devices to charge and empty the battery. Other systems that have a separate load and charger may connect each item using a different method. Due to issues with the battery system, an error condition may occur where the battery is off and the contactors are open but does not react to specific inputs. The system may be queried for fault codes and diagnostic procedures can be run in this mode, but the system is unable to shut contactors until a clear command is issued to exit the error state. Different implementations could permit connection but prevent charging and/or discharging. It's crucial to avoid trying to connect the battery and cycling endlessly between error states; this might happen if certain battery faults automatically clear, causing an effort to return to the active state.

If the temperature of the battery has to be adjusted to a certain goal before the battery can be utilized, preconditioning cycles may be run in battery systems with thermal control before the battery is brought online. In this mode, thermal management devices are active to modify the battery temperature and voltage and temperature measurement are active. However, the contactors may be left open to prevent current flow into a battery that is over the permitted operating temperature range. This, of course, precludes the heating or cooling from being powered by the battery and necessitates the use of an additional power source for this kind of architecture[4].

Fundamentals of High-Voltage Electronics

Hazards of High-Voltage DC

There is a wealth of information in the literature and institutional knowledge concerning the dangers posed by high-voltage ac systems, which are present in almost all commercial and industrial settings. High-voltage DC systems are more and more prevalent thanks to the development of contemporary battery systems and power electronics. The safety features of ac and dc high-voltage systems vary significantly, and this should be considered by designers of battery management systems. Dc current interruption in high-voltage systems is trickier than ac current interruption. Electric arcs are not self-extinguishing because, unlike with ac, the current does not fall to zero with each half-cycle. Relays and contactors designed expressly for use with direct current are identified as such on the packaging and often include features like hermetically sealed, hydrogen-filled enclosures and magnetic arc suppression/blowout. When opened, the dc disconnects are specifically designed to end the dc arc. Never interrupt dc using a contactor, disconnector, or relay that is not designed for dc.

Electrolytic electromigration, often known as "dendrite" growth, is the electric field-driven movement of conductor material over an insulating surface. Open circuits or unintended shorts may result from this phenomenon. The rate of development is dependent on the applied voltage, and high-voltage direct current considerably enhances dendritic formation. Surface moisture and ionic contamination are necessary for dendritic development to begin. Electronics with high voltage.

High-Voltage Electronics Safety

Between "normal" embedded control systems and high-voltage devices like battery management systems for large-format lithium batteries, there are significant implementation differences.In most low-voltage embedded control systems, the risk of electric arc risks from dielectric breakdown or electric shock is generally minimal. Both of these possible threats must be taken into account in high-voltage electronics. Even with low voltage electronics, the risk of heat incidents or fire grows considerably the higher the maximum voltage encountered. Dielectric breakdown between two conducting elements with a significant potential difference is the most evident issue with high-voltage electronics. This may happen between traces, component leads, connection pins, or mounting features on a single printed circuit board. Breakdown may also happen between connection pins, PCBs, PCBs and housings, or any two conductive pieces that are not necessary designed to transport current[5].

Simply using the typical breakdown numbers for dielectric materials is risky. Local field strengths may be much greater near sharp edges. The breakdown resistance decreases as pollution and humidity levels rise.The best strategy to minimize breakdown risks is to make sure that proper creepage and clearance distances are maintained throughout the product design phase. Creepage is defined as the shortest distance along a dielectric material's surface between two conducting components. To avoid breakdown brought on by tracking the growth of a conductive dendritic on the surface of an insulator creepage distances are necessary. The distinction between the clearance and creepage distances between two conductors.The PCB sub-strate may be notched or slotted to extend the creep distances. The relative indication of a material's sensitivity to electrical breakdown along its surface is called the comparative tracking index. The tests to determine a material's CTI examine the voltage needed to generate tracking under typical test circumstances. At a certain operating voltage, the necessary creepage distance may be impacted by the insulating material's CTI.

The prevalence of tracking is increased with the following factors:

1. A high relative humidity.
2. Contamination or the presence of caustic substances.
3. Creepage in comparison to clearance distances.

High service altitudes can result in the somewhat paradoxical occurrence of low ambient pressure. Altitudes of up to 12,000 feet may be encountered during ground transportation. 50,000 feet or higher heights may be encountered by aircraft. Applications for the aerospace industry may require to function in space's vacuum.The minimal route length between two conducive components, as measured via air, is referred to as clearance. The minimum creepage and clearance distances for a certain operating voltage and pollution level are specified by a variety of standards. Among these standards, IEC 60950 and IEC 60664 are the most widely used. The features of the environment in which the gadget functions are defined by the pollution level. Next is a summary of how IEC 60950 and IEC 60664 define pollution degrees.

This standard specifies several insulation classes. The bare minimum recommended for protection against dielectric breakdown and electric shock is known as basic insulation. As the name suggests, double insulation needs two separate barriers between high voltage and user-accessible components. A single barrier may offer a degree of isolation called reinforced isolation that is comparable to double isolation in terms of breakdown resistance. A sound guiding concept is that there should be no conductive channel between high-voltage and any component that a user may potentially touch, both during normal operation and in the event of a single-point malfunction. Grid-tied and other forms of electrical equipment should adhere to these criteria, as specified in standards like IEC 60950. There is no comparable creepage and clearance standard that has been established, hence the requirements do not apply to all applications. Therefore, good first-principles engineering and extensive testing should be used in conjunction with the usage of these standards in applications outside of their purview.Minimum creepage and clearance values are provided by IEC 60950 and IEC 60664 for a specific material class, operating voltage, pollution level, and insulation level. The following section discusses strategies for properly applying this standard.

Coatings may be utilized to increase the breakdown resistance. Using coated PCBs with high voltage requires caution in a few places despite the conformal coatings' great breakdown strength. The efficiency of coatings might be decreased by applying them incorrectly or inconsistently. Coatings should be applied mechanically for optimal uniformity. To find uncoated spots, coated boards may be examined under UV light. The application will determine the inspection frequency, which might range from 100% inspection for the most safety-critical components to random spot inspections. Standards specify acceptable thresholds for coating flaws, such as IPC-A-610D. Automated conformal coat inspection equipment can assess coating coverage and thickness as well as speed up inspection processes and make them repeatable. When coatings are used to fulfill creepage and clearance criteria, a suitable strategy must be in place to guarantee the quality and performance of the coating[6].

Creepage and clearance requirements should be taken into consideration while choosing component packaging. It's possible that the smallest package offered is insufficient for spacing. Even UL-listed semiconductor devices sometimes need to have their lead/leg spacing double-checked.The majority of high-quality PCB layout tools can conduct design rule testing on the final layout artwork in situations when the BMS is implemented on a PCB. This is a crucial stage in the process of helping to verify creepage and clearance distances. Only the printed traces and pads may be used by certain software programs to accomplish this analysis, which is only a partial answer. A complete three-dimensional study of creepage and clearance between PCB traces, component leads, connections, mounting hardware, and enclosures may be provided by other packages or combinations of PCB layout software and three-dimensional modeling tools. Any high-voltage electronic system should adhere to the best practice of demonstrating that this significant contributor to product safety has been correctly implemented.

The best practices for creepage and clearance safety on high-voltage circuit boards are outlined in the paragraphs that follow. For information on creepage and clearance specifications, see IEC 60950, IEC 60664, or an equivalent standard. Based on the installation in the application, determine the suitable contamination degree. With a reduced pollution level and hence shorter creepage and clearance distances, a sealed enclosure may be used. Establish the voltage levels and reference ports for each system component. According to the voltage level and reference voltage, divide up the circuit board into different sections. In order to evaluate creepage and clearance, calculate the minimum distance between pieces using an automated approach if feasible.

Anodic Conductive Filaments

Hazards associated with conductive anodic filaments are a problem for high-voltage electronics. Due to the electromigration of copper ions from the PCB traces along the woven glass fiber of the PCB, conductive anodic filaments can form on printed circuit boards in humid environments with high voltages between two plated through-hole features. This filament can unintentionally connect two points with a large potential difference. A variety of practices should be used in the design and production of printed circuit boards exposed to high voltages in order to avoid CAF dangers.

Because copper ions are present in a damp environment, the copper filament conducts. The CAF conductivity is ionic as opposed to dendrites, which are metallic and conduct electrically. Since the warp and fill orientations are where the filaments develop, caution may be used to avoid aligning vias or through-holes with the glass fibers. If the glass fibers do not come into touch with numerous vias at various potentials, offset vias and holes will aid in preventing CAF development.

Susceptibility to CAF risks is also influenced by the laminate's quality. Separation of the glass and epoxy is necessary for CAF production because it creates a pathway for copper ions to enter and build the CAF. The laminate's sensitivity to this phenomenon may grow as a result of water absorption. The laminate materials that are suitable for this use should be specified in detail in the manufacturing standards for PCBs for high-voltage applications. IPC-4101B outlines specifications for PCB base materials, including quality standards and test procedures. Contrary to dendrites that develop on PCB surfaces, CAFs are the surface and are not easily visible. Dendrites grow from a cathode to an anode, while CAFs grow from an anode to a cathode. The test method recommended by IPC should be applied on PCBs before they are employed in high-voltage applications[7].

The Floating Measures

Circuits designed to monitor voltages that are not referred to "earth" or "chassis" ground have some significant quirks. The selection of any specific point in an isolated battery stack as a reference voltage for making cell measurements is equivalent to using any other reference, in principle. Contrary to popular belief, many systems with separated high-voltage components have parasitic capacitances and conductance between those components and the chassis ground or the earth. The design, development, and testing of large-format battery management systems are made more difficult by these parasitic features.

Y-Capacitance

Traditionally, capacitors positioned intentionally between a power supply's ac input and chassis ground are referred to as Y-capacitance. Y-capacitance, as used in the context of battery systems, refers to any purposeful or parasitic capacitance that occurs between the high-voltage system and the earth ground. Although these capacitors are often positioned for what are believed to be beneficial purposes, they may nonetheless lead to a variety of issues. Y- capacitances may get dangerously big and endanger safety. Take into account the isolated battery system and isolated load shown below, with a Y-capacitance fitted between the load's two terminals and earth ground. Assume that a person accidentally makes contact with both the earth ground and a portion of the high-voltage system, leading to the introduction of a fault. Fault is the fault's resistance. In a transient analysis, the uncharged capacitor C2 may be swapped out for a short circuit. The resulting circuit demonstrates how the discharged capacitor will be used to link the fault resistance across a high potential. The magnitude of the Y-capacitance determines how much energy may flow in this transfer. Electric shock dangers of various magnitudes are detailed in terms of the safety level associated with them in standards like IEC 60479.

When the system includes switching power electronics that produce ac voltages that may flow across capacitors that block dc voltages, Y-capacitances also provide a similar safety risk.

The HV Isolation

The dc battery voltage is often not referred to any earth or chassis ground in large-format devices. The high-voltage battery in EV and HEV vehicle battery systems is not at all connected to the 12-V chassis ground system. Because the HV system is linked to earth ground, a single point failure there does not result in a significant fault current, adding an additional layer of safety. As a result, electrical isolation barriers between the battery cells and earth ground must be provided by electronic systems that are coupled to the battery cells. These isolation barriers must be crossed by power and signal transmission without losing their isolation.

The signals are referred to various ground potentials that are not electrically coupled on either side of an isolation barrier. The potential difference between these two systems is arbitrary since there isn't a set potential that can be utilized to gauge it. The reference potentials of these two electrical systems may vary significantly from one another because, as is sometimes said, they are "floating" with regard to one another[8]. Different kinds of signal isolators can transfer signals. These may be further divided into magnetic, capacitive, and optical isolators.

High-speed digital signals like RS-232, RS-485, SPI, I2C, or May communications may be sent over an isolation barrier using digital isolators. Although devices with many channels and varied combinations of directionality are available to suit various communications strategies, each isolation circuit is typically only capable of conveying a signal in a single fixed direction. If suitable designing requirements are not followed, high-speed digital isolators may produce significant amounts of radiated emissions. To prevent the parasitic dipole antenna from being produced between the two sides of the isolation barrier when using digital isolators, such as the ADuMTM family of devices, capacitive coupling between the two sides of the isolator is necessary.

Optically separated signals are often used for low-speed transmissions. The most popular optoisolator combines a photo transistor and light-emitting diode in a single device. Between the two halves, a dielectric insulating substance is utilized. The current on the switched side of the optoisolator can only travel in one direction since the switched side employs a transistor device.

Despite not offering the bidirectional power flow needed for many power connections, this is ideal for isolating signals.

There are many isolation ratings for optoisolators. The two ratings that are typically available are the working voltage and the dielectric withstand voltage. The working voltage is the maximum voltage that can be applied between the primary and secondary sides without running the risk of dielectric breakdown. The maximum voltage that will be present during typical device operation should be represented by the working voltage rating, whereas the maximum fault or abnormal condition that must be tolerated should be represented by the withstand rating. These rankings are determined by the optoisolator package's materials, creepage and clearance distances, and both. The clearance distance is typically measured between the two sides of the component internally. The package's exterior will be measured for the creepage distance.

Due to a complementary pair of transistors on the switching side, optoisolated relays enable bidirectional current flow. A bidirectional low-impedance connection is made when the transistors are turned on, like a pair of contacts in a mechanical relay. There are several current and voltage ratings for optoisolated relays. The relay will have a maximum voltage differential across the isolated barrier and a maximum voltage blockage rating on the secondary side. When utilized in switching applications, optoisolators and optoisolated relays will have a set turn-on and turn-off time that, in many instances, won't be equal.

A thorough examination of the driving circuit is necessary for all optically separated components. To guarantee that the photo transistor goes on completely, the LED has to receive enough driving current. Although the switched current is dependent on the driving current in practice, ideal optoisolators for switching digital signals would have an unlimited current transfer ratio. The driving current required to obtain a given secondary current rises with device aging as the CTR decreases. At greater running currents and temperatures, LED deterioration is severe. Optoisolated devices need to be built to work well for the duration of their useful lives. Some optocouplers contain an input driver IC that compensates for the LED output deterioration.

Parasitic capacitance is also added between the main and secondary sides of optical isolators. If a significant number of optical isolators are used, this capacitance must be taken into account in the Y capacitance budget. In general, choosing isolating components is a crucial step in designing the hardware for battery management systems. Numerous parts are rated to fulfill the criteria set by different regulatory authorities, which may be necessary depending on how the battery system will be used. Isolator components are designed to prevent dangerous voltages from touching user-touchable surfaces and low-voltage circuits that aren't protected from high voltages with enough insulation. When choosing any component intended to pass an isolation barrier, make sure the following details are available:

1. Maximum working voltage anticipated over the isolation barrier;
2. Maximum breakdown, overload, or test voltage anticipated over the isolation barrier;
3. The devices must meet the necessary requirements;
4. Necessary clearance and creepage above the isolation barrier.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the functioning of rechargeable battery systems must be safe, effective, and trustworthy. This is made possible by the capability of a Battery Management System (BMS).

The BMS carries out important tasks such temperature monitoring, fault detection, cell balancing, overcharge and over-discharge prevention, state-of-charge and state-of-health estimates. These processes are necessary for prolonging battery life, enhancing battery performance, and avoiding risks including overcharging, over-discharging, overheating, and capacity imbalance. Cell voltage sensors, temperature sensors, current sensors, microcontrollers, protective circuits, communication interfaces, and user interfaces all contribute to the collection, processing, and utilization of battery data in a typical BMS. Aerospace, portable electronics, renewable energy systems, electric cars, and other sectors all use BMS, which is essential for monitoring battery performance and safety.

REFERENCES:

[1] C. Campestrini, M. F. Horsche, I. Zilberman, T. Heil, T. Zimmermann, and A. Jossen, “Validation and benchmark methods for battery management system functionalities: State of charge estimation algorithms,” *J. Energy Storage*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.est.2016.05.007.

[2] S. Purushothaman, “Prioritizing Battery Management System Functionalities for Risk Mitigation,” in *2019 IEEE Industry Applications Society Annual Meeting, IAS 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/IAS.2019.8911964.

[3] W. Li, M. Rentemeister, J. Badeda, D. Jöst, D. Schulte, and D. U. Sauer, “Digital twin for battery systems: Cloud battery management system with online state-of-charge and state-of-health estimation,” *J. Energy Storage*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.est.2020.101557.

[4] A. Chandwani, S. Dey, and A. Mallik, “Cybersecurity of Onboard Charging Systems for Electric Vehicles – Review, Challenges and Countermeasures,” *IEEE Access*, 2020, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2020.3045367.

[5] R. Gozdur, T. Przerywacz, and D. Bogdański, “Low power modular battery management system with a wireless communication interface,” *Energies*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/en14196320.

[6] M. S. Hossain Lipu *et al.*, “Intelligent algorithms and control strategies for battery management system in electric vehicles: Progress, challenges and future outlook,” *Journal of Cleaner Production*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2021.126044.

[7] H. Popp, M. Koller, S. Keller, G. Glanz, R. Klambauer, and A. Bergmann, “State Estimation Approach of Lithium-Ion Batteries by Simplified Ultrasonic Time-of-Flight Measurement,” *IEEE Access*, 2019, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2019.2955556.

[8] K. M. Kim, Y. S. Jeong, and I. C. Bang, “Thermal analysis of lithium ion battery-equipped smartphone explosions,” *Eng. Sci. Technol. an Int. J.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jestch.2018.12.008.

CHAPTER 9

ESD SUPPRESSION ON ISOLATED DEVICES

Ms. Ashwini Bhat, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- ashwini.b@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) poses a significant threat to electronic devices, particularly isolated devices that are susceptible to high voltage transients. ESD events can cause device failure, reliability issues, and increased maintenance costs. This abstract discusses the challenges associated with ESD suppression on isolated devices and explores various techniques for mitigating ESD risks in such devices. Isolated devices, such as isolated gate drivers, opto-couplers, and isolated sensors, are commonly used in applications where electrical isolation is required to protect sensitive electronics, ensure safety, or meet regulatory requirements. However, due to their isolation, these devices are more vulnerable to ESD events, as they lack the typical grounding path that dissipates static charges in non-isolated devices.

KEYWORDS:

Charge, Conductive, Current, Discharge, ESD, Electrostatic.

INTRODUCTION

To show that they can resist electrostatic discharge, which might occur during usage or handling, the majority of electronic modules must undergo testing. ESD involves effectively injecting a high-voltage RC discharge into the targeted circuit. Even though the energy in an ESD event is minimal, semiconductor devices, particularly MOS transistors, may sustain long-term damage if they are exposed to high voltages. When an ESD event occurs, whether in use or during testing, a voltage is generated that is applied between the concerned circuit and earth ground and might have either polarity.

Capacitors, diodes, or transient voltage surge suppressors positioned near to connection pins that provide a low-impedance route for the ESD event to be carried to ground are the conventional means of avoiding damage. ESD cannot enter sensitive components via other channels that are not shielded in this fashion since the circuit is typically housed in a protective enclosure. The energy from the ESD event won't be dissipated to ground if isolated circuits are present in the electronic equipment that is not in any way connected to ground. Circuits may readily be destroyed when high voltages are introduced over isolation barriers, leading to failures.

How can this be done when the intention is to separate the battery stack from earth ground while a conduit for ESD to reach earth ground must be provided? One potential option is the deployment of high-voltage TVS equipment. Between the high-voltage inputs and earth ground, TVS devices may be positioned. To guarantee that the TVS does not conduct during normal operation, the TVS must have a breakdown voltage higher than the voltage anticipated on the inputs. However, this value must be low enough to ensure that the downstream components are adequately protected. A decrease in the quantity of TVS needed could be possible with a cascading combination of TVS and capacitors.

Capacitors with high voltage are still another choice. These are far more expensive than the low-voltage capacitors that are commonly used for ESD suppression. These capacitors must be fitted in order to properly bridge the isolation barrier between the high-voltage and low-voltage systems, raising the system's Y-capacitance. The additional Y-capacitance is often acceptable since the capacitance required for ESD suppression is generally modest, but it is important to take this into mind, particularly if this method is applied to every cell voltage measurement input.

DISCUSSION

Isolation Detection

An essential feature of systems with separated battery stacks is the ability to identify an isolation or ground problem. It makes sensible to include this functionality within the battery system since the rest of the system may not be powered if the battery is unplugged. Next, a description of the technique most often used to find isolation flaws follows. The Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 305 test for battery-powered cars uses this technique for static measures of isolation[1].

Assume that there is a resistance fault (Rfault) between the battery system and the earth's surface. Any battery system potential potentially experience this issue. Assume that the fault is between the battery's two terminals in the typical scenario. This will divide the battery pack into two subpacks and result in the comparable circuit shown below. Two metrics may be used to determine the value of Rfault. Between the positive or negative terminal of the battery and earth ground, a known resistor Riso is introduced for each measurement. It measures the voltage across this resistor.

Periodically taking this isolation measurement is possible. To allow ongoing monitoring of this crucial safety parameter, continuous isolation measurement is often used. However, it's critical to comprehend this circuit's temporal constraints. Think about the identical circuit with Y-capacitance present between the high-voltage bus and earth ground. As soon as the measuring resistor Riso is added, the Y-capacitance is used to create an RC circuit. Before the measurement can be done, the capacitor must be completely charged. This specifies a minimum amount of time needed to do this measurement and, as a result, a maximum rate at which it may be performed.

Measurement of the Isolation Resistance

The presence of foreign objects or materials that span gaps between conductive parts, the formation of conductive bridges on circuit boards, internal faults in the isolating components, insulation breakdown, and other dangers can all result in isolation faults. They can also be caused by internal faults in the isolating components. Working with battery systems may be dangerous due to isolation faults, and many distributed faults at various potentials might provide a short-circuit risk. As a result, many programs define that it is either banned or requires a notice to the user during operating with a compromised isolation resistance. High voltages and systems with various reference potentials are brought into close proximity inside the battery management system itself, where defects may develop. To locate the defect, isolation detection may be done both with and without the battery attached. Opening the battery contactors will put the system in a safe condition if the isolation fault is external to the battery. Even though the contactors are open, there is a chance for dangerous situations if the isolation fault occurs within the battery[2].

Communications As opposed to several discrete and/or analog signals, many battery management systems employ a serial communications connection to communicate with the load device. Additionally, battery management systems will include a serial connection for communication between slave and master components of the battery pack. These communication protocols have many benefits, yet there is also enough evidence of their hazards. The following section provides an overview of the different network technologies that are often used as well as the kinds of information that are typically sent over a communications bus.

Information Technology

The functionality of a communications system is often divided into several abstraction layers using the Open Systems Interconnection concept. From physical signaling, addressing, flow control, data representations, and eventually application, each abstraction layer implements a certain portion of the whole connection. The OSI model has a total of seven layers. For each of the levels, many communications methods are available. Here, some of the most typical will be discussed.

I2C/SPI

These protocols were created to facilitate inter-IC communication on a single printed circuit board. I2C and SPI are not advised for communication between circuit boards, even though they are unquestionably acceptable for this use and may be strong enough to manage communication over short distances. It is important to talk about the "level-shifted" communications buses that several IC manufacturers provide for inter- IC communication while monitoring batteries. These buses might be modified versions of well-known buses like SPI or I2C, or they could be made according to a secretive design. A distributed BMS design may be implemented by connecting several ICs across long distances of a meter or more, according to many of these vendors' advertising. If this method is to be used instead of a more traditional intermodule communications technology like CAN, RS-232/485, and others, it should be done carefully and with the right amount of validation and analysis.

The level-shifted bus between fewer ICs on individual PCBs/modules plus the usage of CAN or another communications bus between the slave modules and the master device make up a more reliable and tried-and-true distributed design. Isolation components must be used for this. RS-232 was designed for point-to-point communication rather than a bus or star architecture and lacks differential signaling. Initially popular for connecting computer peripherals, this bus is now seldom utilized in commercial, industrial, or automotive settings. Unless special low-capacitance cable is utilized, the maximum cable length is 15 meters. There are several tools available for communication between embedded controllers and PCs for development and debugging, and many microcontrollers come with a UART to support RS-232. Even though USB and other more modern connection technologies have replaced the native RS-232 connector on most PCs, expensive hardware is not necessary. However, RS-232 is still a widely used communication method[3].

Both the transmit and receive directions need their own cable. Because RS-232 employs single-ended signaling, the information is carried by the potential difference between the communications line and ground. Because of this, RS-232 is vulnerable to ground offsets and unable to reject voltages imposed on the signal line. High voltages are used to solve these difficulties. These voltages are generated by a transceiver like the MAX232 employing a charge-pump converter to provide 12-V output in many embedded systems running at 5V or below, right?

Due to the single-ended signaling and absence of low-level error checking seen in CAN, RS-232 is more susceptible to noise. To guarantee that transmission faults are caught, RS-232 should always be used in conjunction with other services at a higher tier. It is common to employ flow control techniques like software flow control with XON/XOFF or hardware flow control with RTS/CTS handshaking. Buffer overflows are less frequent due to faster devices, although slower tasks like flash programming can need flow control. The OSI physical layer is implemented via RS-232. In contrast to RS-232, RS-485 employs differential signaling while using the same time settings. In commercial and industrial system controls, RS-485 is often utilized as the physical layer for Modbus communications. For battery systems that need to communicate with commercial and industrial electrical equipment, RS-485 is still important in industrial applications utilizing the Modbus protocol stack. For many battery systems in the grid-tied storage industry, Modbus over RS-485 is standard. Compared to RS-232, it is more noise-isolating and allows for longer connection lengths. In contrast to RS-232 networks, which are typically point-to-point, RS-485 permits the building of linear networks. Because RS-485 networks are typically half-duplex, only one device may transmit at a time, necessitating a single-master arrangement.

Local Interconnect Network

In automotive applications where CAN was deemed to be too costly for all components for which OEMs sought to add networking functionality, the local interconnect network was created to offer an affordable serial communications protocol. The slaves in a master/slave topology required by LIN are often ASICs that don't need a microcontroller core or software. Although the 19.2 kbit/s data throughput is somewhat low, guaranteed latency periods and other solid characteristics make it a viable option for BMS master/slave connections. For straightforward, low-bandwidth sensor integration, LIN has often been used. If a direct analog link is not practical, this might have beneficial battery management system-related uses for combining current and temperature sensors. For this use, LIN-compatible sensors are becoming more readily accessible[4].

CAN

Bosch created the controller area network in the 1980s, and it is now widely used in the automobile sector as well as in industrial applications, particularly when coupled with the CANopen protocol, which specifies higher levels of the network architecture. The physical and data connection layers in the OSI paradigm are defined by CAN. The network is implemented via application layers by the extra CANopen stack. CAN offers strong resistance to EMI and high-speed transmission, enabling near-real time performance for many different kinds of communications. CAN networks are often employed in control systems or automotive applications and are connected to earth ground. Nodes on the CAN bus should be able to function with a certain amount of ground offset voltage between them.

The message ID is used by CAN to identify the relative priority of every message sent across the network. If bus loads are heavy, this may be utilized to settle conflicts between conflicting messages. Use a high-priority message for crucial communication connections like power modes and safety interlocks to prevent interruption from lower-priority information. A terminator should normally be placed at either end of a linear layout for CAN buses. It could be necessary to execute the termination method if the battery management system is at the end of a bus. Common mode noise may travel via a low-impedance channel to ground through a split terminator with a center capacitor connected to ground.

Every node on the CAN bus has the ability to send messages, and messages are physically received by every node. Most microprocessors have the ability to employ CAN filtering to eliminate messages depending on the message ID using one or more bit masks. In the majority of networks, all nodes send messages constantly at a rate based on the rate of change of the values it represents.

However, transceivers are needed to adapt between the physical layers used at the microcontroller level and the physical layers used between electronic modules. Many microcontrollers support CAN utilizing one or more CAN ports. It may be challenging to precisely time-stamp message reception and to send messages with predictable timing since the microcontroller often performs the receiving and transmitting of May messages using hardware, low-level software, and interrupts. Automotive systems employ complex network management to enable devices to enter a power-down state and will need wake-on CAN functionality, where the controller will turn on in response to receiving a CAN message. Specialized transceivers with this capabilities are available, however using a wake-on-network technique necessitates a synchronized wake/sleep strategy throughout the whole system to avoid parasitic power consumption. The specifications for the most prevalent CAN networks used in automotive applications are laid forth in the ISO 11898 standard[5], [6].

TCP/IP and Ethernet

In both home and commercial computer networks, Ethernet is the most widely used protocol for defining the physical layer and data connection layer. It is also starting to be used more often in industrial control networks. Ethernet has developed into a solid option for communications that need a lot of bandwidth but are not safety-critical. When used with 10/100/1000BASE-T as the physical layer, Ethernet implements the data link layer. Transmission Control Protocol and Internet Protocol are often used by higher levels of computer networking for the transport and network layers. These higher layers have also moved to industrial Ethernet and will have some importance for industrial battery systems. TCP was not designed to be used in real-time applications at first since acknowledgments are necessary and correctness comes before speed. When real-time speed is desired, User Diagram Protocol is chosen. Real-time communications topologies are unquestionably favored in battery systems when replies must be given in the range of tens to hundreds of milliseconds.

Modbus

An application-layer messaging protocol called Modbus explains how two devices may communicate with one another. The most popular methods for implementing the lower levels are RS-485 and TCP/IP/Ethernet. Numerous commercial and industrial goods are networked and controlled using Modbus. A certain amount of actions may be performed across the network using Modbus. Modbus registers are used to transport data between Modbus-connected systems. Modbus employs a request/reply structure for every communication, hence it needs a master-slave implementation. The device known as the client initiates transactions, while the server is the answering device.

Flex-Ray

A relatively new protocol called FlexRay was created specifically for automotive applications. It was created to provide higher speeds while getting around some of the drawbacks of CAN, including the absence of deterministic timing, redundancy, fault tolerance, and time-triggered behavior. The benefits of greater data rates for battery applications are relatively limited, while other advancements considerably increase resilience and benefit safety-related systems like batteries. FlexRay's use is currently limited to the automobile sector. The extensive functionalities of FlexRay are not now required by the needs of battery management[7].

Network Planning

The connection between master and slave devices for distributed architectures, as well as the data transmission between the battery management system and the load device, must all be accounted for in the network design. The choice of a specific communication technique will have an influence on other choices, such as the clock accuracy and speed needed for different bus types. The battery management system's network configuration and node count, both internal and external, must be taken into account. These elements will also affect the overall system cost. As opposed to even basic networks for computer applications, for instance, the transmission of battery data within a battery management system and between the battery management system and other devices should generally not need significant data bandwidths. The consequences of network failure are much more severe than failures in computer or communications networks, so the reliability of these networks is crucial, and battery power applications require network technologies that are not prone to message corruption or loss under the expected conditions of their environment. It may be beneficial to use redundant signaling utilizing a different, more straightforward technique for important signals like serious fault status. Network latencies will also reduce the response times to instructions sent via the network; for time-sensitive inputs, these latencies must be recognized, and analysis must demonstrate that the selected network design satisfies the timing requirements.

Numerous battery system characteristics only need to be transferred between master and slave devices, as was previously mentioned, and do not need to be sent externally. The battery management system improperly processes data such as cell voltages and temperatures to produce information that is helpful to others. If at all feasible, internal data buses should be used to transmit this data because it will be sent via a significant number of cells. Cell voltages and other individually measured characteristics should be made accessible for specialized diagnostics upon request. It may be possible to create many communications ports or buses to help with the proper information routing. They may utilize the same physical layer and/or communication protocol or they could not. It is helpful to offer a private bus with considerable quantities of diagnostic data that may be utilized to troubleshoot the system during the construction and testing of the battery system.

The cell voltage readings, temperature measurements, and cell balancing commands are among the things that are shared between the master and slave devices. Cell voltage readings typically need 12 to 14 bits and are provided with a precision of around 1 mV, which is typically comparable to the ADC accuracy of the measuring equipment. Before data transfer, there is no need to convert to physical units. The predicted range of 0% to 100% SOC may be compressed into less bits using nonlinear compression. Cell measurements sometimes need the transmission of a timestamp along with the voltage data to the master device in order to assure synchronization. With a 0.5°C-1°C accuracy, temperature measurements are often done across the range of 40°C to 80°C, using 7–8 bits each bit. Again, at severe temperatures, a nonlinear compression method may be utilized, or specific codes can be used to represent measurements that are off-scale. Depending on how sophisticated the balancing circuitry is, multiple methods of communication may be used to provide cell balancing directives. The master device may simply broadcast a single bit for each cell in a simple dissipative balancing system to represent the intended state of the balancing switch in real time. It is not necessary to update more often than once per few seconds when it comes to cell balance. Alternately, the quantity of charge that needs to be removed from each cell may be sent, and the slave devices can be instructed to count down the charge that has been removed, to transmit the balancing requirements less often. For systems that run continually and are not prone to shut down, this will function better[8].

In order to guarantee that the cell voltages and temperatures can be conveyed with complete accuracy, at an update rate equal to their measurement rate, the network must be able to send enough data between the master and slave devices. For a 100-cell battery pack, where each cell's measurement is 1/0.040 = 30 kbit/s. Additional overhead for message headers, start and stop bits, and checksums will be needed on all communication buses. These might increase the needed data by double. Temperature readings and timestamps will need more data and may have quicker sampling rates. The aforementioned example could need up to 60 kbit/s. For RS-232 or RS-485 across medium to long distances, this is a high data rate, however it is highly practical for CAN, for instance. A data bus may be chosen with the use of this simple computation, which also assist can estimate the minimum needed data rates.

Bus bars may have currents including conducted emissions beginning in the low kilohertz range, with harmonics ranging up to hundreds of kilohertz, since the load device for many kinds of systems is switching power electronics. Despite the comparatively low frequencies, the enormous battery currents might result in very high field strengths. Single-ended buses are particularly susceptible to interference from these frequencies, which may affect certain data speeds. Twisted pair is a cheap way to reduce radiation sensitivity in internal battery pack communications harnesses. Long coaxial lines for busbars, power cables, and communications wires should be avoided.

The battery charge and discharge limitations, stated in terms of current or power, are almost always communicated to the load. To avoid a limit violation, they will need to be updated often, particularly in battery systems with high discharge rates that are utilized close to the edge of their safe operating range. Many applications use update rates between 50 and 100 ms, with slower rates being more practical for applications with more cautious battery consumption or lower charge/discharge rates. In every situation, there should be a quick way to alert the load that the battery is about to be removed and to tell the battery system to turn off right away. These two techniques will often be used to maintain system safety, and the communications network should make sure that these messages are always answered as soon as possible. Examples include cutting off power to an electric vehicle's batteries in the case of a collision or alerting the load that the contactors will open owing to a chronic safety issue that hasn't gone away. The following communication problems are relevant for the following sorts of information exchange:

Measurements of cell voltage include bandwidth, latency, network dependability, and the potential to coordinate voltage and current measurements across deterministic communication protocols, external synchronization signals, or master clocks. Cell temperature readings have a little bandwidth but need a highly reliable network to prevent missed temperature observations. Current measurements: Low bandwidth owing to few tests, but low latency and meticulous determinism are needed. For current sensors, an analog interface often makes sense, however serial communications may also be employed. A discrete synchronization signal is one example. The dependability of redundant readings, overvoltage or undervoltage, and temperature signals is crucial for sustaining system safety even if they don't need a lot of bandwidth. To avoid acting on incorrect information, message integrity should be checked at the application layer if the base layer does not contain a checksum or CRC structure[9]. Additional layers of integrity checks are often planned for safety-critical signals, of which there may be many in a battery management system, to guard against the following failure modes:

Prevention of "babbling idiot" failure modes: Strategies may be put in place to make sure that "stale" data is not transmitted and treated as fresh, ensuring that the appropriate action is done if a module starts transmitting correctly formatted but inaccurate data. A "rolling counter" is a straightforward technique in which each message has a counter value associated to it. With each new message, this counter increases in a predictable manner. One might assume that the measuring gadget is working improperly if the counter repeatedly fails to increase. To cope with the chance of lost communications or in networks where messages are not always received in the same sequence as they are broadcast, this method needs additional procedures. There are stronger alternatives out there.

Checks for message format, data length, minimum, and maximum values: Messages that don't arrive in the right format or seem to have additional or missing data may not be dependable; take into account deleting the data and returning the system to a safe condition. Values exchanged across communication networks often employ physical units to represent quantities that may vary from one network node to the next, especially in current systems that are created with a high degree of abstraction between low-level software drivers and model-based code blocks. To avoid unsafe scenarios, it is crucial to make sure that essential data is compared to the lowest and maximum predicted values, especially during development. "Bit-stuff-ing" mistakes, in which bit fields are added to or subtracted from a message with a predetermined structure, often provide inaccurate data that is simple to detect.

On signals that may quickly alter the state, debounce or filtering may be helpful. The chance of an unintentional state transition can be reduced by making sure the same signal with the same command is received numerous times in a row. The handling of lost communications is a crucial design factor. Some networks do not ensure that messages will arrive in the same sequence they were sent, and many networks do not promise that messages will be retried until received. Safety-critical instructions should not be implemented to and from the battery system using a single message if the network does not guarantee that the message will be retried until received. The idea behind the majority of CAN networks is a more solid strategy, where all messages include quasi-real-time data and are continually delivered. The probability of missing or unintelligible communications should be taken into account in failure mode analyses for critical state transitions. The following is a good reference design for the battery connect request signal. This might be read as the signal for an electric vehicle's ignition switch or the command to turn on an energy storage device.

The battery management system gets a secondary state signal in addition to the main instructions for the intended state of the battery system through the serial communications bus. The simplest solution can consist of a single digital signal, but this does not provide a mechanism to identify a broken link. A signal with multiple analog windows or a PWM signal with different frequencies or duty cycles for different state requests would both be preferable methods, though the latter can be susceptible to EMI in some circumstances and requires careful analysis to ensure that the signal is properly interpreted under all circumstances. To confirm that connecting the battery system is both desired and safe, a secondary signal may be produced using a redundant circuit. It can also be sent via a physically separate channel to lessen the chance that a common connector failure would cut off both signal routes.

Whether all communications are lost, it could be required to either put the system into a safe condition right away or temporarily adopt a limited-operation approach while waiting to see whether communications can be restored. In certain circumstances, a total loss of communication is considered a hazardous failure, and the battery is unplugged if it lasts for more than a few hundred milliseconds. In other circumstances, particularly when a redundant signal is present, the battery may choose to operate in a restricted manner where at least one piece of information validates the intended condition of the battery.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, ESD suppression on isolated devices is a crucial component of shielding electronic systems from electrostatic discharge's harmful effects. Isolated devices provide special issues for ESD protection because they lack the conventional grounding channel seen in non-isolated electronics, making them more vulnerable to ESD occurrences. ESD dangers in isolated devices are often reduced using passive and active ESD protection techniques such transient voltage suppressors, metal-oxide varistors, ESD clamps, and diodes. Effective ESD protection measures for isolated devices must be designed and implemented with careful consideration of device selection, layout design, and an awareness of system-specific ESD needs. To guarantee the ESD protection measures' performance under actual working circumstances, testing and validation are essential. The reliability and safety of electronic systems are also dependent on compliance with industry standards and laws governing ESD protection. Further research and development in ESD suppression strategies for isolated devices are anticipated to continue as technology develops and the need for isolated devices in a variety of applications grows. Investigating novel components, layouts, and techniques to improve the resilience and dependability of isolated electronic systems against ESD is part.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. Wang, B. Zhou, S. Ye, and H. Chen, "Novel Electro-Explosive Device Incorporating a Planar Transient Suppression Diode," *IEEE Electron Device Lett.*, 2020, doi: 10.1109/LED.2020.3008907.

[2] D. Bouangeune, Y. J. Lee, D. H. Cho, K. H. Shim, and C. J. Choi, "Reverse current conduction mechanism of transient voltage suppression diode under electrostatic discharge stress," *Mater. Trans.*, 2014, doi: 10.2320/matertrans.M2014214.

[3] Anon, "Electrostatic discharge suppression with multilayer varistors," *Electron. Eng.*, 1994.

[4] C. Y. Lin, Y. C. Huang, and T. L. Wu, "Codesign of Electrostatic Discharge Protection Device and Common Mode Suppression Circuit on Printed Circuit Board," in *IEEE Transactions on Electromagnetic Compatibility*, 2018. doi: 10.1109/TEMC.2018.2793667.

[5] B. Chen, Y. Guo, H. Li, W. Zhou, and B. Liu, "Discharge characteristic of barbed electrodes in electrostatic precipitator," *J. Electrostat.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.elstat.2020.103528.

[6] Y. Wang *et al.*, "Exploring the role of sulfuric acid aerosol in corona discharge through a honeycomb wet electrostatic precipitator," *Process Saf. Environ. Prot.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.psep.2020.12.018.

[7] C. Y. Lin and T. L. Wu, "Investigation on Degradation of Common Mode Noise Suppression with Electrostatic Discharge Protection Array," in *IEEE International Symposium on Electromagnetic Compatibility*, 2018. doi: 10.1109/EMCEurope.2018.8485172.

[8] A. Di Siena *et al.*, "New High-Confinement Regime with Fast Ions in the Core of Fusion Plasmas," *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 2021, doi: 10.1103/PhysRevLett.127.025002.

[9] Z. Yang *et al.*, "Fine particle migration and collection in a wet electrostatic precipitator," *J. Air Waste Manag. Assoc.*, 2017, doi: 10.1080/10962247.2016.1260074.

CHAPTER 10

AN ANALYSIS OF BATTERY MODELS

Ms. Amrutha Nair, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- amruthavnair@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Battery models play a critical role in understanding the behavior and performance of batteries in various applications, such as electric vehicles, grid energy storage, and portable electronics. Battery models are mathematical representations that simulate the electrical, thermal, and electrochemical behavior of batteries, allowing for performance prediction, optimization, and control. An overview of battery models, including empirical, equivalent circuit, and physics-based models. Empirical models are based on experimental data and provide a simple and quick way to approximate battery behavior. Equivalent circuit models represent batteries as an electrical circuit consisting of resistors, capacitors, and/or inductors, and are widely used due to their simplicity and ability to capture battery dynamics. Physics-based models, on the other hand, are based on fundamental electrochemical principles and provide a more detailed and accurate representation of battery behavior, but may require extensive computational resources.

KEYWORDS:

Battery, Circuit, Electrochemical, Equivalent circuit, Lithium-ion, State of charge (SOC), State of health (SOH).

INTRODUCTION

A battery cell's intricate electrochemical and physical processes result in a number of behaviors that may be seen from the outside. These actions are represented by the voltage and current relationships. It is typically beneficial to think of these characteristics as an analogous electric circuit since the lithium-ion cell's principal function is as an energy storage device in an electrical circuit. Based on the underlying physical and electrochemical processes that take place within the battery, several sorts of models could be used. Equivalent circuit modeling is predicated on the basic premise that there exists an observable state variable that is a function of the state of charge. The most common link employed is that between totally relaxed open-circuit voltage and state of charge. It is often assumed that this connection is unaffected by variables like temperature, age, and cycle life.

The control theory context is where the word observability is utilized. An observable system is one whose internal states can be precisely predicted in limited time using just the system's inputs and outputs. A discrete-time version of many of the ideas is necessary since the equations and models covered in this part are often implemented in discrete-time systems. The similar approach is often utilized for other complex electrical circuit devices. A model that approximately captures the electrical behavior of the device is more beneficial to a circuit designer than thinking of a transistor in terms of the semiconductor physics at play.The goal of battery modeling in a battery management system implementation is to provide a technique for translating readily measurably values into an accurate representation of internal states that are not easily measurably, such as states of charge. Other battery types use a variety of methods for determining the level of charge, including load profiles and straightforward voltage look-up tables for simple applications. This method of doing state of charge calculations in large-format lithium-ion systems is inappropriate, necessitating the use of more sophisticated battery models.

Assume that the open-circuit voltage depends on the charge state and is expressed as VOC. The definition of this monotonic connection is such that a distinct SOC translates to a distinct VOC. It's not necessary for the connection to be exponential, linear, or even just commoditiously approximable by a closed-form mathematical relationship. According to this, if VOC is known, then SOC must likewise be. Additionally, if the mistake in VOC can be contained, the error in SOC may be contained as well. To determine the dynamic overpotentials, equivalent-circuit battery modeling is used. The SOC may be computed from the observed voltage and the predicted overpotentials if the overpotential is equal to Vd in that case. It's possible that physics-based models don't employ the empirical SOC-OCV connection.

DISCUSSION

Thévenin Equivalent Circuit

The battery may be represented as an ideal voltage source in even the most simple analysis. A two-terminal device with no internal impedance and a set voltage between the two terminals, irrespective of the current running through it or any other parameter, is the perfect voltage source. The assumption of a perfect voltage supply is no longer true in many big scale applications when the battery is utilized at a rapid discharge or charge rate. The internal dc resistance of the cell is the first nonideal factor to take into account while running a battery system at high currents.

One option is to utilize the Thévenin equivalent circuit as a basic battery model. An ideal voltage source is connected in series with a resistance equal to the battery's dc resistance and has a voltage that is the same as the battery's open-circuit voltage. As a result, the corresponding circuit's terminal voltage is no longer constant and now depends on the battery current. In fact, it's possible that not all observed current-voltage correlations can be modeled by a straightforward dc resistance. The resistance is probably dependent on the temperature and charge level, and it probably changes as the battery matures. When charging and discharging, the resistance may vary.

In order to take these into consideration, a pair of perfect diodes may be added to the comparable circuit, and the resistance could be swapped out for two variable resistances that depend on the environment's temperature, charge level, and age. Additionally, a lot of large-format battery systems are used in a variety of charge states. Therefore, the impact of charge status on electrical behavior must be taken into account[1].

The analogous circuit is now "state dependent," meaning it has a variety of internal states that affect how it behaves. Because the system has a "memory," it is impossible to anticipate the response only based on its inputs. Therefore, a variable voltage source may take the role of the ideal voltage source. The battery's open-circuit voltage at a certain level of charge is the same as the value of the voltage source. State of charge and open-circuit voltage may not always correlate linearly.

The Nernst equation predicts a minor temperature dependency in all electrochemical cells. With rising temperature, the open-circuit voltage should fluctuate somewhat. The relevance of this impact is minimal in the majority of applications across the desired temperature range, save for chemistries having a very flat SOC-OCV profit. Comparison of findings from the ohmic resistance model versus real battery reaction. In this approach, the ohmic resistances of the electrolyte, electrode materials, current collectors, tabs, and terminals are properly accounted for by a simple resistor.

Some of the consequences that this model does not take into consideration are listed below:

Resistance to charge transfer or polarization: The pace of electrochemical reactions is constrained and depends on the applied voltage. This result is governed by the Butler-Volmer equation. The charge transfer resistance resistor may be used to simulate this behavior. At low temperatures, the barrier to charge transfer rises.

Double Layer Capacitance: Due to the charge separation occurring over a relatively small distance, the charge transfer resistance results in the ac- cumulation of charge carriers at the electrode surface.

Diffusion: Concentration gradients may cause overpotentials in both electrodes and electrolytes. The Randles cell is often used to explain how these factors affect electrical activity. A single resistor in series with a parallel arrangement of a resistor and a capacitor make up the Randles cell. The double layer capacitance, or CDL, and the charge transfer resistance, or RCT, are common names for the resistance and capacitance, respectively. The fact that the cells include no actual resistors or capacitors has to be emphasized. Additionally, the dynamic electrical activity of the cell is only roughly predicted by this model. The Randles element simply approximates some of the far more intricate processes that take on within the battery. These methods may not work well enough for certain batteries and applications. However, they are often employed and help achieve good performance.

Circuit equivalence for a Randles cell

Next, a single-element Randles model with the above parameters is used to forecast how an actual lithium-ion battery would react to the application of an alternating profile. The dynamics of steady-state charging and discharging are starting to be approximated by the model. The anticipated and observed voltage differ further with longer current pulses. The precision of the equivalent circuit may be increased by connecting one or more RC elements in series to take into account the many time-dependent dynamic reactions taking place in the cells. The temporal constants of the various elements vary. The entire development of certain cells' dynamic activity may take many hours. It should not be expected that the R and C parameters would remain constant during the lifespan of the cell since they are undoubtedly affected by temperature and state of charge.

Lifetime experiments may be used to identify which parameters are most likely to need adaptive estimation if an online parameter estimation approach cannot be utilized to dynamically update all of these parameters in real time. A single state variable is needed for each RC element to reflect its state. Usually, this is the voltage across the capacitor, but you may instead use the charge on the capacitor. When contrasted to real electrical circuit values, which often have resistances far lower than 1 ohm and capacitances in the thousands of farads, the values of the resistor and capaci- tor may seem absurd. The RC components merely approximate the dynamic impacts that they represent. A handy technique for creating an electrical equivalent circuit that simulates the dynamic, time-dependent performance of the battery is the multiple-element RC circuit. The circuit, a linear time-invariant system, is widely known by systems, electrical, and electronics engineers and provides a variety of benefits for ease of implementation and analysis. Other modeling approaches may be required for certain batteries and applications since even many RC components may not be able to correctly represent the battery's reaction.

Hysteresis

In a variety of cell models, hysteretic activity must be taken into consideration. The OCV-SOC connection is a route function, not only a state function, due to the existence of hysteresis. A traditional experiment involves approaching equal SOCs from opposing directions while using two identical cells, one fully charged and the other totally discharged. Even if the overpotentials are given enough time to completely relax, the measured voltages of these two cells could not always be identical. There is no longer a 1:1 correspondence between SOC and OCV. If the battery in issue has high hysteresis, a technique for simulating the hysteresis is consequently required to appropriately calculate SOC. Since current must flow in order to change the SOC, a real connection between SOC and open-circuit voltage is consequently difficult to establish[2].

By executing charge and discharge cycles at very low rates, allowing for lengthy rest durations, and producing two curves, a "neutral" relationship may be roughly approximated. The zero-hysteresis voltage for a certain SOC may be roughly calculated by drawing a curve halfway between the charge and discharge curves. This test also allows for the extraction of the greatest hysteresis as a function of SOC. Several strategies have been put out to account for hysteretic effects. The most straightforward model assumes that the hysteretic effect is of constant, known size and simply changes sign in response to the battery current's most recent value. Thus, the hysteresis voltage has just two possible values. In fact, when the direction of the current changes, a hysteretic loop takes place. Vh is consequently constrained inside the interval but has a range of possible values. The applied current affects how quickly Vh changes.

The difference between the present value of Vh and the ultimate value of Vh,max is adjusted by the constant, which also controls the pace of decay. By making the maximum hysteresis voltage function also depend on the applied current, as in Vh,max/Vh,max, the model may be further improved. Hysteresis may be modeled in more intricate ways. Typically, they have been created to simulate hysteretic systems where the impacts are more significant than in battery systems. They may be used to simulating lithium-ion batteries if necessary. The Preisach model, which was created to simulate magnetic hysteresis, is one example of such a model. Making effective inferences about state of charge from terminal voltage requires taking into account hysteresis in systems with large hysteresis voltages and/or flat discharge profiles[3], [4].

Efficiency of Coulomb

In most circumstances, lithium-ion batteries have coulombic efficiencies that are better than 99%. This indicates that the battery may eventually discharge almost all of the coulombs that were initially charged into it. As a result, it is often not essential to simulate the coulombic inefficiency in order to get precise SOC estimates. Other SOC algorithm elements will make up for the relatively little impact. However, doing so could be advantageous in certain circumstances. This may be done by altering the battery model's behavior such that the coulombic efficiency is below 1. This may be done in order to offer a bias to the amp-hour integration process so that there is a greater inclination to underestimate SOC than to overestimate it, or it may be done in order to provide the battery management system designer a better estimate of the real coulombic efficiency. It is possible to shift the probability distribution in favor of underestimating in a variety of applications because the effects of underestimation are less severe than those of overestimation.

Unstable Elements

The behavior of battery cells has been suggested to be described by additional sorts of nonlinear circuit components. The constant phase element is the first. The constant phase element often functions in a manner akin to a capacitor. For sinusoidal excitation, regardless of frequency, the current in a constant phase element always trails the applied voltage by a predetermined phase angle that may range from 0° to 90°. True capacitors always have this angle at 90 degrees.A charge-transfer resistance and the CPE often occur in tandem in comparable circuit models developed from EIS. This combination's complicated impedance map looks like a depressed-radius semicircle. The curve and the actual axis form a 90° angle[5].

The Warburg element is yet another uncommon component that is present. A specific kind of CPE with n 0.5 is the Warburg impedance, which is used to mimic the electrical effects of diffusion. The Warburg element's impedance has a constant phase shift of 45° and is inversely proportional to frequency squared. A time domain representation is necessary to include the CPE or Warburg impedance into a model for battery management system implementation. The CPE and Warburg impedances may both be represented in the time-domain. Capacitive and inductive circuit components, which have straightforward time domain exponential representations and transfer readily to discrete-time representations, may be modeled using simple linear differential equations. Due to the complexity of closed-form solutions for the CPE and Warburg representations, several methods depend on approximations made using digital filters.

Think about the Laplace domain's constant phase element. The impedance, or the resultant voltage in response to an applied current, indicates the transfer function of the battery cell. By dividing the current function by the impedance transfer function, the voltage function in the s-domain is produced. This results in a complicated convolution integral in the time domain. Due to the computational complexity, a straight solution to this convolution integral is often not feasible, hence a simplification is preferred. Such an approximation may be effectively represented in the time domain by digital filters. The benefit of digital filters is that their coefficients may be found in the Laplace domain by locating the transfer function's poles and zeros. Obtaining a relationship between the voltage and current functions is the aim. This is expressed in the Laplace domain by multiplying the current function by the filter transfer function.

Using a digital filter with a variable number of poles and zeros, Reference provides a helpful way for estimating the general transfer function of the constant phase/Warburg element. This approximation provides strong correlation between cu and cl in a certain frequency range, which is suitable for the majority of battery system applications. The quickest projected rise time for the battery current is tr, and frequencies of 10-100 Hz are often high enough to approximate the highest frequency component. Although the battery current signal will have frequency components down to dc, restricting the low-frequency components to 102 – 103 rad/s will provide correct results for the majority of applications.

Modeling of Self-Discharge

Lithium-ion cells are susceptible to self-discharge, much like other batteries. Self-discharge has a lot of effects on accurate SOC performance;however, it may not need to be taken into account for many applications due to its very low rates. Laboratorial testing may be used to quantify self-discharge;however, the rate of self-discharge is temperature and SOC dependent. Lithium-ion batteries have self-discharge rates as low as 1% per month, therefore defining the self-discharge and including a self-discharge model into the battery management system won't be of much value for battery systems that are used regularly[6].

Self-discharge effects are more likely to adversely impact system performance in applications where there are large pauses between voltage readings and SOC computations. Self-discharge happens as a result of an internal leakage current route; as it cannot be detected by any external sensor, it is "invisible" to the battery management system. Therefore, it can only be guessed; it cannot be assessed if it is not acceptable to dismiss the self-dis- charge. The first inaccuracy in SOC owing to self-discharge may be significant, but it will eventually be less if a SOC method is devised that is resilient against the initial estimate of SOC. Large self-discharge mistakes are uncommon in many circumstances, making the time it takes to get an exact SOC tolerable. A predictive self-discharge compensation, however, may boost system performance if this is not the case.

Testing should be used to define self-discharge rates. Because self-discharge rates are so low, it's critical to design experiments that can withstand experimental noise. The two main variables that have the most effects on self-discharge rates are the state of charge and temperature. High SOC and high temperature have the tendency to speed up cell discharge. If the battery is used in an environment where the battery temperature can vary noticeably and the dependence of the self-discharge rate on temperature is high, it may be necessary to frequently sample the temperature in order to perform a piecewise integration if an accurate self-discharge estimation is needed. In many cases a robust SOC estimator provides the necessary functional- ity to account for the effects of self-discharge.

Physics-Based Battery Models

Doyle-Fuller-Newman Model

A lithium-ion cell electrochemical model is the Doyle-Fuller-Newman model. The model covers lithium-ion battery activity while solving a set of linked partial differential equations. As contrast to modeling the approximation dynamics of an analogous circuit, the Doyle-Fuller-Newman model is a first-principles model that aims to capture the key features of the actual physics happening in the battery cell[7].

The lithium ion's route through the electrolyte and the radial trip of the ion into and out of the active material are both represented by one dimension of this model's generalized two-dimensional representation of the cell. The domain in which the model exists is two dimensional. The x-dimension extends from the anode current collector to the cathode current collector, passing through the separator, negative electrode active material, and positive electrode active material. The nominal particle radius, which varies between the two electrodes, is where the r-dimension starts and ends.

The ion diffusion, spatial concentration gradients, and potential gradients via the cell's anode, cathode, and separator are all described by the model. Six partial differential equations make up the whole DFN model. These PDEs simulate the linear diffusion of the lithium ions through the electrolyte between the two electrodes, the radial diffusion of the ions into the anode and cathode active material particles in a spherical coordinate system, and the kinetics of electrochemical reaction.

The DFN model has been proved to function well in a variety of lithium-ion batteries, although a thorough examination of it is beyond the purview of this publication. The whole DFN model is very complicated and a remote candidate to function in real time on the majority of battery management systems, despite the fact that it has been shown to properly represent a number of effects of lithium-ion batteries. The DFN model is based on a variety of physical parameters and quantities, however it is difficult to quantify these parameters in practice. The model itself has a huge number of parameters that must be solved for throughout the parameter identification phase. The idea of simpler electrochemical models for use in battery management systems is thus generated.

Individual Particle Model

The simplicity of representing both electrodes as a single sphere is adopted by the single particle model. The SPM assumes that the fluctuation in states over the thickness of the electrode material is insignificant. The state variables of the SPM are identical in nature to those of the DFN model, but the x dimension only spans the electrolyte.

Partial differential equations make up the differential equations that make up the SPM. Closed-form PDE solutions are very uncommon, and building a model of this kind that can run in real time still presents major difficulties. To provide a representation suited for BMS implementation, simplifications may be applied. The end output must show how battery current and terminal voltage are related. The authors suggest a multiple pole filter that uses a succession of linear circuit components to approximate this transfer function across a frequency range of 105 to 102 Hz.

Many of the physical constants used in physics-based models are temperature and SOC dependent, similar to analogous circuit models. In certain battery applications, the SOC range is constrained, making it possible to ignore SOC's impacts. Other simplifications include ignoring the concentration gradient in the electrolyte, assuming that radial diffusion in the particles is equal, and simplifying the reaction kinetics at one electrode, where they happen much more quickly. These streamlined models are often nonlinear, coupled PDE-based, and need approximation in order to be used in a battery management system.

Models of Batteries Represented in State-Space

When creating battery management systems, state-space representations of battery models are quite helpful. They may be found in both continuous and discrete time, in linear and nonlinear forms. They are simply implemented in digital control systems using a discrete time method, they can be directly utilized with software tools like MATLAB and Simulink, and they can be quickly expanded to mimic nonlinear battery performance. Equivalent circuit models as well as other sorts of models may use state-space representations.

The model's n internal states are represented by the vector x in the illustration above. The system's inputs are represented by the values of u, while its outputs are represented by the values of Y. Together with the input matrix B, the state matrix A specifies how the state variables evolve over time. While B describes the influence of the system's inputs on the change of state variables, A specifies the dependence of the rates of change of state variables on the values of the state variables themselves. As a function of the state variables and the inputs, the output matrix C and the feedthrough matrix D describe the system's outputs[8].

Identification of the Parameter

Explains the benefits of having a representative equivalent circuit model and many techniques for building these models. For the models to accurately represent a particular battery, a number of parameters often need to have exact values. This article will concentrate on potential methods for choosing a suitable model and generating values for the parameters to correctly depict battery cells.

Brute-Force Strategy

A brute-force approach might be used to estimate the battery model's parameters. One may ascertain which parts of the response belong to different model components by observing voltage/current correlations in the time or frequency domains. Consider, for example, a model with the voltage/current relationship shown below for a step change in current. The optimal SOC-OCV relationship, two RC components, and an ohmic resistance are all included in the model. The influence of the ohmic resistance and the quicker RC element may be disregarded as time goes on if it is assumed that one of the two RC elements has a time constant that is much slower than the other. On the other hand, it may be considered that the action only affects the ohmic resistance immediately after the application of the current pulse. The impacts of that part of the circuit may be removed from the voltage response curve after the model parameters for the individual parts have been established, and the remaining elements can then be calculated sequentially. This strategy is more likely to create modeling mistakes the closer the time constants are near one another.

Using brute force has a variety of disadvantages. Some viewers may not immediately recognize how the voltage output is divided into components that relate to model components. The separation concept is arbitrarily applied. The technique often makes use of unique current profiles that are used to streamline the response curves' form. Due to these factors, this approach is unsuitable for automation and cannot be relied upon to identify live or adaptable model parameters. This approach may not be appropriate for batteries that are anticipated to function with noticeable aging effects since the parameter values fluctuate depending on the battery's age and state of charge. More automated techniques are thus being investigated.

Parameter Identification Online

When a model parameter is identified live or adaptively, the voltage and current relationship is automatically observed to derive the model parameters. Although it is relatively uncommon to inject specialized current profiles to help with parameter identification, no special current profile is necessary. The parameters are automatically determined in almost real time after historical battery data analysis. Online parameter identification is useful because it enables a battery management system to adjust to variances in various batteries that may be brought on by variations in production and aging. Online parameter identification may sometimes be used to build a universal battery management system that works with a variety of battery types and chemistries.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, battery models are essential instruments for study, development, and application in the area of batteries. They are essential for the design and assessment of battery-based systems because they provide insightful information on battery behavior, allow for precise performance prediction and optimization. In battery research and engineering, empirical, equivalent circuit, and physics-based models are often employed, with each kind having particular benefits and drawbacks. While similar circuit models balance simplicity and accuracy, empirical models are fast and easy to use but may not be as accurate. Physics-based models provide a thorough depiction of battery activity, but they could need a lot of computing power. Data collection, parameter estimates, model validation, and model implementation are all necessary for the creation of battery models. For accurate battery models that may be utilized for performance prediction, optimization, and control, precise and dependable data collecting, parameter estimation, and model validation are essential. Battery models are used in a variety of contexts, including battery SOC and SOH estimates, thermal management, power management, and performance improvement. They are also crucial for the development of battery-based energy storage systems for the integration of renewable energy and grid stability, as well as for the design and assessment of BMS.

REFERENCES:

[1] W. Zhou, Y. Zheng, Z. Pan, and Q. Lu, "Review on the battery model and SOC estimation method," *Processes*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/pr9091685.

[2] N. Campagna *et al.*, "Battery models for battery powered applications: A comparative study," *Energies*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/en13164085.

[3] O. Tremblay and L. A. Dessaint, "Experimental validation of a battery dynamic model for EV applications," *World Electr. Veh. J.*, 2009, doi: 10.3390/wevj3020289.

[4] S. M. Mousavi G. and M. Nikdel, "Various battery models for various simulation studies and applications," *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*. 2014. doi: 10.1016/j.rser.2014.01.048.

[5] C. T. da Silva, B. M. de A. Dias, R. E. Araújo, E. L. Pellini, and A. A. M. Laganá, "Battery model identification approach for electric forklift application," *Energies*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/en14196221.

[6] Y. Zhang *et al.*, "Electric vehicle charging fault monitoring and warning method based on battery model," *World Electr. Veh. J.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/WEVJ12010014.

[7] H. Miniguano, A. Barrado, A. Lazaro, P. Zumel, and C. Fernandez, "General parameter identification procedure and comparative study of Li-Ion battery models," *IEEE Trans. Veh. Technol.*, 2020, doi: 10.1109/TVT.2019.2952970.

[8] V. H. Johnson, A. a Pesaran, and B. Court, "Temperature-Dependent Battery Models for High-Power Lithium-Ion Batteries," *Power*, 2000.

CHAPTER 11

A BRIEF DISCUSSION ON CHARACTERIZATION OF SOC

Ms. M Aruna, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- aruna.m@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

The characterization of state of charge (SOC) is a critical aspect of battery management systems (BMS) in various applications, including electric vehicles, portable electronics, and grid energy storage. SOC refers to the amount of energy stored in a battery at a given time, and accurate SOC estimation is essential for battery performance prediction, optimization, and safe operation. An overview of the characterization of SOC in batteries, including various techniques and methods used for SOC estimation. These techniques can be broadly categorized into two types: open-circuit voltage (OCV)-based methods and coulomb counting methods. OCV-based methods rely on the relationship between the battery's terminal voltage and SOC, while coulomb counting methods estimate SOC by integrating the charge and discharge currents over time. The accuracy of SOC estimation depends on several factors, including battery chemistry, temperature, aging, and measurement errors. Battery models, sensor technologies, and algorithms are used to mitigate these factors and improve SOC estimation accuracy. Various techniques, such as Kalman filters, extended Kalman filters, and adaptive filters, are used in combination with battery models and sensor measurements to achieve accurate SOC estimation in real-time.

KEYWORDS:

Battery, Cell, Charging, Discharging, Fault Detection, Health Monitoring.

INTRODUCTION

Measurement of the relationship between state of charge and terminal voltage, free of any overpotential, is necessary for many battery models utilizing comparable circuits. When the battery current is turned off, many overpotential will gradually go away, but others are hysterical in character and cannot be prevented. Consequently, a technique for roughly estimating the overpotential-free voltage is needed. To prevent entropic effects, characterizing the SOC/OCV connection should be done at a constant temperature. To reduce the excitation of cell dynamics and give the cells enough time to rest, modify the state of charge of the cells using a modest charge and discharge rate. To ascertain the anticipated maximum amount of relaxation time, a preliminary screening might be conducted. Temperature may have a significant impact on the necessary complete relaxation time. If the hysteresis band is of similar size in charge and discharge, it is possible to construct a neutral curve between these two after an OCV relationship for charge and discharge has been established. Equivalent circuit models need to enforce a monotonic connection between SOC and OCV in order to function properly.

DISCUSSION

Kalman Filtering

Model parameters may be estimated using a Kalman filter. The following section will explain using Kalman filters to estimate battery state of charge, although this technique may also be used to estimate battery model parameters. When measuring the values of hidden states in a state-space model with process and measurement noise, a Kalman filter may be employed as a state observer. The model parameters are the hidden states to be served while doing parameter identification. The projected voltage response will closely resemble the battery reaction if the model parameters are right. Due to the extremely nonlinear nature of the connection between the model performance and parameter values, the nonlinear extensions are almost always necessary for parameter update filters.

Least Squares with Recursion

The identification of parameters may also be done using a recursive nonlinear least squares technique. Take a look at the following data points from battery testing: v, t) These data points represent voltage measurements taken during a certain current profile. The values of V may be predicted using a battery model given the values of I. The size of the error between the projected voltage by the model and the actual voltage is a gauge of the model's accuracy. Finding a set of parameters that minimizes the difference between projected and observed system state values across all time points is desired.

Spectroscopy of Electrochemical Impedance

An established method for determining an electrochemical cell's complex impedance as a function of frequency, across a very broad frequency range, including very low frequencies, is electrochemical impedance spectroscopy. Low currents are often used for measuring EIS. Consider raising the charge and discharge rates for large-format systems with high discharge rates to acquire more relevant models and parameters. Complex equivalent circuits for battery cells may be developed using impedance representations from EIS data. The connection between the battery's real and imaginary impedance as a function of frequency is shown using EIS equipment. The impedance correlations may be used to infer an analogous circuit model by skilled observation or the use of specialized software. The higher frequencies are often dominated by ohmic resistances. In EIS plots, RC components produce semicircular traces; constant phase elements connected in series with resistors are readily distinguished by depressed semicircles. At low frequencies, Warburg elements often take the form of a straight line. Results from a typical EIS with a potential interpretation. Due to the unique load profile needed, EIS is only partially suitable for online operation. However, EIS techniques may be integrated with other parameter identification methods for initial parameter determination and online methods for parameter updates.

Limiting Methods

In the majority of large-format systems, the load device is built to respect the restrictions placed on it by the battery and to learn from the battery management system about the battery's capacity for charging and discharging. As a result, algorithms must be used by the battery management system to establish suitable restrictions in response to the battery status. These algorithms need to be precise; if they are too cautious, the battery will perform badly and need to be expanded, and if they are not cautious enough, the battery may be mistreated by the load that is operating. They have to react to dynamics that might develop at very different rates: cell polarization takes place in a matter of seconds, charge state changes take place in minutes, thermal impacts take place in hours, and aging takes place in years.

The power limit approach may be even more crucial in certain situations than the state of charge computation. An excellent example of this is a hybrid car. In a hybrid car, the battery is used less as a major energy storage device and more as a power source/sink. Due to the fact that there are several energy sources, the vehicle management system will try to utilize electrical energy wherever feasible instead of thermal energy and to regenerate electrical energy rather than releasing thermal energy via the friction brakes. The vehicle control system must have a highly good understanding of the battery's ability to give and receive power in real time since it is presumed that the performance of the vehicle must be independent of the battery's state. It is clearly desired to store as much of this energy as is feasible in the battery system, but not at the price of decelerating too slowly and risking an accident. When the brakes are engaged, a power order is being delivered. Therefore, it is crucial to have a real-time estimation of the battery's capacity to provide and take electricity[1], [2].

Goals

In order to balance system performance and battery safety, the limit algorithms will have a variety of objectives. It is common practice to choose the "goal" for a limit algorithm as keeping the terminal voltage of all cells within a certain range while it is operating. The term "all" is crucial because, despite the fact that the overall power produced will be based on the total voltage of the battery stack, the performance will be limited by the most extreme cell. Unlike calculating current limits, computing power limits requires forecasting the voltage of both the extreme cell and the whole pack. This is the issue with computing power limitations as compared to current constraints.

The majority of battery cells have a maximum and lowest terminal voltage that is acceptable. The battery terminal voltage is then projected by the limit algorithm to achieve these limitations at a given current or power. Other batteries could have compensating voltage restrictions that depend on applied current and temperature. The thermal capacity of the battery system is the longest-term performance constraint for many battery systems. Although they fluctuate the least slowly in response to battery conditions, thermal limits are nevertheless crucial to stay within.

Limitation Method

How the restrictions should be communicated to the load device must be decided upon early on in the construction of both the battery system and load device. The choice of whether to describe restrictions in terms of current or power is crucial at the application level. Using a current limit to determine the battery reaction makes more sense since it gives you greater control over the battery's response and lowers the risk of overshoot. The limit algorithm must estimate the current and voltage at which the limit condition is met in order to set a power limit, which is often more desired from the load viewpoint. The time-varying nature of the limitations is another significant feature worth mentioning. The whole picture of how the load should behave may not be captured by the instantaneous limit. Predicted changes to the limits are usefully conveyed to the load for a high-performance battery system that is running at or near the limitations.

Only the instantaneous value of current or power permitted in charge and discharge will be provided by a straightforward zero-order restriction. This will gain a rate of change from a first-order limit. This may be accomplished by expressing the rate of change or possibly by expressing both the value of the current limit and the value of the limit in the future. This would provide the load device additional information so it could forecast future current/power availability and prepare for changes in restrictions to avoid going over the battery's safe operating range. This method can lessen following errors and help the load make better use of the battery in systems with high charge and discharge rates at extremes of state of charge, particularly if there is a long lag between issuing limit commands and the load responding or the load current's slew rate is constrained. With diminishing returns, higher-order restrictions may be extended[3].

Limiting the battery limits' permitted slew rate, except for the most extreme occurrences, is a popular method for preventing oscillations between the battery limits and load current. Problems with exceeding the new limits will be resolved if the rate of change of the battery limitations is slower than the reaction time of the load and any related communications and delay loops. In general, this technique may avoid worries with load transient reaction to changes in available battery power, but careful study is required to guarantee that safety problems do not occur.

Choosing a Safe Operating Zone

A battery management system's limit function aims to prevent the battery from being used beyond of its safe working range. In general, a continuous set of battery conditions including cell voltage, current, temperature, and SOC should be established that is considered acceptable from the standpoints of safety, lifetime, and performance. However, defining the safe operating area is not necessarily a black-and-white determination as the degree of safety will vary continuously as battery parameters change. The application has to be clearly stated. In one application, a set of restrictions specified for a battery cell could be entirely safe and provide acceptable performance, but in another, it might result in an intolerably quick deterioration with cycling. To develop a general-purpose life model, extensive tests analyzing the crucial factors of operating and storage temperature, cycle and calendar life, charge and discharge rates, and minimum/maximum SOC operation window should be carried out. For model validation and to correlate internal physical effects with externally visible electrical and thermal macroscopic behavior, this may be supplemented by physics-based models of degradation processes and cell disassembly and inspection. The creators of battery systems and battery management systems will have a predictive tool that they can utilize for each new application with a technology like this. It is necessary to have access to the following data in order to create a limit algorithm that works.

What are the upper temperature restrictions for regular operation, which may vary for charging and discharging? What are the highest permitted charge and discharge rates in relation to temperature? What are the temperature thresholds when thermal runaway and other harmful consequences start to happen? At what operating temperatures will the necessary cycle and calendar life be possible? Lithium-ion cell producers may or might not have thorough responses to each of these queries, particularly for use cases that are peculiar to certain applications[4]

Temperature

No matter the kind of battery, whether lithium-ion or not, temperature will have a significant impact on its performance.The battery should not be used over the maximum operating temperatures that many manufacturers provide. The battery management system ought to lower the charge and discharge limitations to zero when battery temperatures get close to these ranges. In general, the temperature limitations for charging and discharging are different.

The battery management system must take action in response to the extreme levels of detected battery temperature if the cell manufacturer's instructions are to be rigorously followed. For instance, when the battery temperature is low, charging is often impeded. To make sure that no cells are operated beyond their recommended ratings, it is essential that the lowest detected temperature rather than an average temperature be utilized. Additionally, extra margins of safety must be incorporated if it's probable that the real temperature extremes might be beyond the range of observed values or if the measurement errors at the temperatures of interest are large. It is anticipated that the battery management system will calculate the least restrictive restrictions that ensure the battery's safety without needless power reductions since the constrained functioning of the battery system is undesirable.

By progressively lowering the limits as battery temperatures rise, it is possible to reduce the possibility of exceeding the top temperature limit as a result of battery self-heating. The maximum suggested temperature may be exceeded if the roll-off is too sudden or happens at a high enough temperature, especially if the battery is operating at a high current when already hot. Under no circumstances should operation be allowed at very high temperatures if there is a risk of thermal runaway or other forms of dam- age, or when the margin of safety is insufficient.

Internal impedance, polarization, and hysteresis properties of the battery are substantially influenced by temperature. Most lithium-ion batteries have a large increase in impedance at 0°C and may see an order of magnitude increase between room temperature and cold temperatures. The power that the load can use in this range without suffering excessive voltage excursions will be significantly diminished. Even while a closed-loop limit based on cell voltage would be able to respond to the higher impedance, limit performance is often improved by a straightforward feedforward limit employing a temperature-based lookup.

The thermal time constants between internal cell heating and temperature sensors may be taken into consideration using a thermal model. In most cases, a simple lumped parameter thermal model can correctly forecast temperature increases and account for delays and measurement mistakes. The heat capacity of each component and the thermal resistances separating them are often treated as single elements in the lumped thermal RC network that makes up the majority of thermal models. The batteries themselves as well as any externally provided heating will serve as heat sources, while any active cooling systems that may be present as well as the ambient environment will serve as heat sinks.

The following are examples of endogenous battery heat sources: Joule or ohmic heating that depends on current flow. A temperature rise test may be used to obtain an equivalent thermal resistance, which can then be used to compute joule heating using the I2R formula. The resistance utilized for electrochemical/equivalent circuit modeling may not always be the same as this resistance. If the thermal model is to continue to be correct, the ETR will depend on temperature, SOC, and age and must be watched dynamically. If there is a substantial voltage hysteresis between charge and discharge, thermal energy is lost in a proportionate manner to the length of the hysteresis loop. If there is a voltage offset V during cycling at constant current I, energy is wasted throughout the hysteresis loop at a rate equal to IV. Testing should be used to determine the quantity of heat lost during charge and discharge since it is not always equal. The magnitude of V may also be affected by the battery current in addition to the common parameter space of SOC, temperature, and age.

Entropic heating/cooling: The charge and discharge reactions often have a non-negligible reversible thermal component; charging may be exothermic while discharging may be endothermic. This can be tested by one of two methods: either by subtracting the ohmic heating effects from the thermal rise during testing, or by calculating the change in entropy analytically using thermodynamic relationships[5].

A number of temperature measurements are available for limit calculations. Normally the two extreme temperatures should provide a worst-case condition for temperature effects. For effects with high sensitivity such as inhibiting low temperature charging, operating close to temperature extremes, extra margins of safety, as well as the possible effects of measurement uncertainty should be included in the limit calculation to ensure that the cells are not abused.

SOC/DOD

The capability of a battery to provide and accept power varies with SOC/DOD at a given temperature. A useful test to determine the battery's power capability at various operating points can be performed using a constant voltage/constant current cell cycler capable of supplying enough current to drive the cell to the maximum recommended charge and discharge voltages across the full range of cell state of charge. The cell should be set to the desired test conditions and allowed to stabilize both thermally and electrochemically.The cycler should then be set to operate in "constant voltage" mode to push the cell to the limit voltage. A current limit should be in place to prevent the cell from exceeding the charge/discharge current ratings and temperature monitoring should also be in place.

The current will initially rise to a value limited by the ohmic resistance alone, and will fall gradually as the cell dynamic overpotentials are excited.The power at various times since starting the voltage command pulse can be calculated as voltage current, and therefore an estimate of power capability for pulses of various lengths can be established. The test should be repeated in charge and discharge and the cell should be returned to the target SOC and temperature before each pulse. Due to hys- teresis and polarization, the measured voltage on cells brought up to the target SOC from 0% SOC may differ significantly from cells discharged to the target from 100%. Accurate cycling equipment is important to achieve good results.

Repeating this test across the range of SOC and temperature expected during operation will provide a very useful estimation of battery capability in charge and discharge. This can be useful in establishing a predictive limit base- line for the recommended maximum current as a function of SOC; however, it will suffer from a number of drawbacks, including: If the SOC is inaccurate, there will be consequent errors in the predic- tive limits. As the cell's overpotential dynamics change as the battery ages, specifi- cally as the resistance increases, the limits will not be sufficiently conser- vative to protect the battery even if the SOC is accurately known. Therefore, limits as a function of SOC should be used as a feedfor- ward or predictive limit in conjunction with other information to maximize performance.

With SOC estimation schemes where the error bounds or confidence in- terval of SOC is known, the error bounds may be taken into consideration as well. Beyond the power availability, for many applications the SOC window of operations is reduced significantly from 0% to 100% to provide the necessary cycle life. Hybrid vehicles and other peak power applications are good examples of where this is needed. In these uses, even if it is safe to do so, battery operation must be limited outside this range of SOC. Therefore, an application-specific limit can be imposed to prevent excursions outside of this window. A simple linear taper of charge at high SOC and discharge at low SOC is adequate for most applications. Nor- mally this limit strategy is combined with algorithms in the load device which determine predictively how the battery should be used as a function of its re- ported SOC[6], [7].

Cell Voltage

Measured cell voltages provide the best opportunity to generate responsive limit information. An appropriate response to cell voltages approaching their lim- its is the most time-critical piece of battery management system functionality that will be exercised in normal system operation. As many cell chemistries approach their limits of full charge and discharge, the relationship between cell voltage and state of charge becomes very steep and voltage limits may be rap- idly exceeded if high rates of charge or discharge are sustained. A component of cell terminal voltages is also due to overpotentials caused by cell excitation, so cells that are exposed to excessive charge or discharge rates can cause excessive voltages to occur. Even if the cell state of charge remains in an acceptable range, overpotentials can cause cell degradation to occur; this limits the safe operat- ing area in both voltage and SOC, and leads to separate failure modes of both overcharge and overvoltage.

Safety can be achieved by disabling charge at high cell voltages and dis- charge at low cell voltages, but these types of rapid adjustments in battery cur- rent are not acceptable in most situations. An accurate battery model will give a good estimate of the maximum overpotential that will be produced as a function of current, combined with accurate SOC estimate will give a maximum steady-state current in both charge and discharge. Unlike for state of charge estimation, which needs to operate on the cells with the largest allowable charge and discharge capacities, the cell voltage limits model needs to operate on the cells with the highest and lowest terminal voltage. Accounting for measurement errors in both current and voltage will improve safety margins as well. A simple dynamic control loop can be used near the edge of the safe operating area. If the relationship among current, SOC, and total overpotential is known, along with the relationship between SOC and OCV, this information provides not only the maximum allowable current at the present operating point, but also the rate of change of this limit with respect to time. For systems operating at high power-to-energy ratios, this can allow for a very responsive control when operating near the limit.

As usual, the above quantities and relationships are dependent upon temperature as well, but the rate of change of battery temperature can generally be ignored in most short-term cases where operating near the battery limits. A common problem presents itself as the battery approaches the end of discharge and the discharge limit reduces, and the load, in turn, reduces the discharge current, causing cell voltage depression to relax leading, in the case of an inaccurate or simplified model, to recovery of the limits, allowing higher discharge currents. An oscillating condition can result, which can lead to an unstable performance. Adding some hysteresis, either discrete or continuous to cell-voltage based limits, can prevent oscillation between the battery and the load due to this effect[8].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the characterization of state of charge (SOC) is a crucial aspect of battery management systems (BMS) in various applications, as it directly impacts battery performance, safety, and lifespan. Accurate SOC estimation is essential for efficient battery utilization, preventing overcharging and over-discharging, and extending battery life. As battery technology continues to advance and the demand for high-performance and reliable batteries increases in various applications, further advancements in SOC characterization techniques are expected. This includes the development of more accurate and robust algorithms, sensor technologies, and battery models to improve SOC estimation accuracy in real-time. Accurate SOC characterization will continue to play a pivotal role in the design, optimization, and safe operation of battery-based systems for a wide range of applications, contributing to the advancement of battery technology and the development of sustainable energy solutions.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. S. Chen, X. Chen, S. Pan, and J. Zhang, "Some characterizations for SOC-monotone and SOC-convex functions," *J. Glob. Optim.*, 2009, doi: 10.1007/s10898-008-9373-z.

[2] S. Boulmrharj *et al.*, "Online battery state-of-charge estimation methods in micro-grid systems," *J. Energy Storage*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.est.2020.101518.

[3] J. Yang, A. Li, Y. Yang, G. Li, and F. Zhang, "Soil organic carbon stability under natural and anthropogenic-induced perturbations," *Earth-Science Reviews*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.earscirev.2020.103199.

[4] B. Pattipati, B. Balasingam, G. V. Avvari, K. R. Pattipati, and Y. Bar-Shalom, "Open circuit voltage characterization of lithium-ion batteries," *J. Power Sources*, 2014, doi: 10.1016/j.jpowsour.2014.06.152.

[5] L. Han, K. Sun, J. Jin, and B. Xing, "Some concepts of soil organic carbon characteristics and mineral interaction from a review of literature," *Soil Biology and Biochemistry*. 2016. doi: 10.1016/j.soilbio.2015.11.023.

[6] J. Chen, R. Wang, Y. Li, and M. Xu, "A simplified extension of physics-based single particle model for dynamic discharge current," *IEEE Access*, 2019, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2019.2961509.

[7] H. Popp, M. Koller, S. Keller, G. Glanz, R. Klambauer, and A. Bergmann, "State Estimation Approach of Lithium-Ion Batteries by Simplified Ultrasonic Time-of-Flight Measurement," *IEEE Access*, 2019, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2019.2955556.

[8] M. Longo, I. Piccoli, B. Minasny, and F. Morari, "Soil apparent electrical conductivity-directed sampling design for advancing soil characterization in agricultural fields," *Vadose Zo. J.*, 2020, doi: 10.1002/vzj2.20060.

CHAPTER 12

LIMIT VIOLATION DETECTION

Ms. Akshaya Ganorkar, Assistant Professor
Department of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Presidency University, Bangalore, India
Email Id- akshaya@presidencyuniversity.in

ABSTRACT:

Limit violation detection is a critical component of many control and management systems, including power grids, industrial processes, and transportation systems. It involves the identification of conditions where system parameters exceed predefined limits, indicating potential operational or safety risks. Limit violations can result from various factors, such as equipment malfunction, environmental changes, or operator errors, and detecting and responding to these violations in a timely manner is crucial to prevent further damage or disruptions. An overview of limit violation detection techniques, including statistical methods, machine learning algorithms, and rule-based approaches. These techniques involve the analysis of real-time data from sensors or other sources to detect anomalies or deviations from normal operating conditions that may indicate limit violations. Statistical methods, such as control charts, process capability indices, and hypothesis testing, rely on statistical metrics and assumptions to detect limit violations. Machine learning algorithms, such as classification, clustering, and anomaly detection, leverage historical data and patterns to identify abnormal behaviors. Rule-based approaches, such as expert systems or decision trees, use predefined rules or logic to detect limit violations based on specific conditions or thresholds.

KEYWORDS:

Boundary, Detection, Deviation, Exception, Fault.

INTRODUCTION

It is often preferable to decrease the battery charge and/or discharge rates in the case of non-critical battery failures or battery management system errors to increase safety yet provide some capped performance. Reduced rates, more constrained voltage and SOC windows, and increased temperature sensitivity may increase the system's safety in the event that sensors or measurement devices are compromised, cells are not balanced, or probable mistakes in SOC calculation are discovered.

If there is a considerable cell imbalance, limitations should be lowered. If a large-format battery system is drained when the lowest capacity cell hits 0% SOC, it may cause a forced over discharge that results in cell reversal. Voltage may drop fast, and a cell may undergo cell reversal without much notice. The detection will either be too sluggish, resulting in over discharge, or a cell voltage limit may activate, producing rapid changes in limits. This is why it could make sense to taper allowed limits as the battery approaches 0% and 100% SOC in applications where the battery is completely used.

First-Order Forecast Power Limit

Assume that the ideal battery is connected in series with a single internal ohmic resistance to represent the battery cell. For the cell, VLIM, MAX and VLIM, MIN represent the minimum and maximum allowable terminal voltages. In the event where VOC IRo VLIM, MAX, the limit condition is attained.

Polarization-Dependent Limit Solution

The total polarization caused by the RC components will be known if a battery model like the one that has been presented is working in real time. The limit algorithm may be improved using this knowledge. This may be especially helpful in situations where the battery must quickly switch between charging and discharging, when currents are high, and/or if the battery's overall energy capacity is limited. The battery model may be used in a predictive fashion for higher-order time-based limitations to calculate how long a particular current can be discharged or charged before a limit voltage is reached[1], [2].

DISCUSSION

In order to react to this potentially hazardous situation, the battery management system must be able to identify breaches of the published limitations. The majority of the time, however, the battery management system is only permitted to activate contactors and detach the battery from the load in order to "enforce" the restrictions by limiting battery current or power. Therefore, it is necessary to prevent a bothersome trip of this fault situation. Either a load device that is malfunctioning, in which case the issue might remain, or a sluggish reaction to a temporary circumstance that is likely to repair itself when the load reacts, can cause the limits to be exceeded. A straightforward detection method that immediately exposes controls whenever even the tiniest restriction violation occurs is likely to cause far more issues than it solves.

Limit breaches may be found using a "leaky bucket" integrator method. The current or power that exceeds the allowed limit is integrated by the battery management system. It is possible for this integrated mistake to degrade over time at a set rate or at a rate proportionate to its size. Battery disconnects when integrated error exceeds a certain threshold. This enables the system to react rapidly to significant failures while preventing the accumulation of tiny faults that may otherwise cause a trip. By integrating 2 instead of, the emphasis on reacting to larger limit violations may be attained; this more closely resembles the behavior of a thermal fuse when the limit is exceeded.

Limits for Parallel Strings with Multiple

The problem of computing limits for the parallel combination of these battery systems becomes more challenging in systems using multiple parallel strings, which may be online or offline depending on the status of the individual battery subsystems, may have varying states of charge, and possibly even differing temperatures and ages[3]. Each parallel string in a system using parallel strings is often only able to provide a small portion of the system's rated power. Not all strings may be available at once. It is challenging to simply sum all of the restrictions if the battery strings are linked in parallel since the strings may not share load current evenly based on their individual impedances and charge statuses. To comprehend the contribution of each battery string and establish an overall limit, it is crucial to have an accurate cell model.

Balanced Charging

In a large-format battery system, it is often required to use a charge balancing approach to take into account variations in cell performance in order to sustain battery performance throughout a long service life. An efficient cell balancing system keeps the battery performing at the required level for the duration of the battery with a sufficient safety margin, without adding too much weight, expense, or complexity. It is necessary to completely comprehend the batteries in order to develop proper cell balance. Lithium-ion batteries do not "self-balance" like many other kinds of batteries because of their great coulombic efficiency. Battery imbalance won't repair itself over time without careful maintenance. Grasp the cell balancing function requires a grasp of a variety of system and battery cell factors. It's crucial to comprehend the predicted variations in cell capacity. The capacity of the whole series-connected string will be capped at the capacity of the lowest capacity cell in the absence of charge-transfer balancing. If a charge-transfer capability is present, it may be utilized to transfer energy during discharge from high-capacity cells to low-capacity cells, hence increasing the battery's actual capacity[4].

Effective balancing also requires knowledge of the current differences in state of charge across cells. One of the main factors used to size the balancing circuit is self-discharge rates and variations in self-discharge rates across cells. In general, battery self-discharge is undesirable and should be reduced as much as feasible by the cell provider. Self-discharge rates will vary depending on if the manufacturing process is different or if there are cell faults. a graphic outlining the many kinds of variation that might take place. One or more of the following design goals will be achieved by the cell balancing system: Reduce the difference in charge between the most and least charged cells in order to maximize the effective capacity of the pack.

Maximize Battery Power: Because SOC affects cell impedance, cells at various SOCs have variable power capacities. Cells will restrict both the battery's power and energy capacity if they wander to high or low SOC. Increase the amount of energy in the battery as much as possible. If the capacity of the cells is not equal, the higher capacity cells will still have usable energy when the lower capacity cells are fully discharged, but because this energy cannot be extracted without overdischarging the "smaller" cells, it will be left stranded. This stranded energy can be recovered if charge can be transferred from the bigger cells to the smaller ones[5].

Balanced Approaches

The goal of the simplest cell balancing technique is to stop cells from gradually diverging in state of charge. In order to avoid divergence, cells having greater self-discharge rates need to receive more charge current to make up for it. This method will prevent the battery capacity from being significantly lowered below that of the lowest-capacity cell owing to severe battery pack imbalance, even if it does not maximize performance from the battery system due to stranded energy as a consequence of capacity imbalance. In order to prevent the SOC of all cells from diverging, which would further reduce the amount of capacity that is available, the state of charge of individual cells is adjusted through selective charging or discharging.

Two extremes are feasible if it is considered that not all cells have the same SOC and capacity. The discharge and charge capacities of the whole pack will always be equal to the lowest available capacity of the individual cells if a battery management system is unable to conduct any equalization. A high rate of active equalization on the other hand would allow the battery management system to use the whole energy capacity of each cell. Between these two extremes, there are a variety of possible cost-varying middle options. Theoretically, greater balancing currents do not provide any further benefits over the maximum usable balancing capacity. This happens after the predicted amount of time for a complete discharge has passed and all meaningful energy imbalance has been drained.

The development of SOC imbalance and capacity divergence is a gradual, time-dependent process. Extremely high rates of self-discharge are often an indication of a more significant internal short circuit and should be reason enough to halt battery use. As a result, it is simple to underestimate the need of balance abilities.

Combining and Optimization

Increasing the battery management system's balancing capabilities has the potential to increase the system's cost since the balancing circuits must be recreated for each cell. This is because there are many more components that are required. Therefore, it's crucial to size the balancing circuitry properly to sustain battery performance by minimizing divergence at minimal expense. To get usable results, like with any optimization, a relevant cost function must be specified. The cost of this imbalance is the cost of adding more battery capacity to make up for the lost available energy if the punishment for insufficient balancing is lower battery system available capacity. For instance, a system that suffers from a 2 Ah capacity penalty because of battery imbalance has to provide an extra 2 Ah of capacity to make up for it.

An essential trait is the choice of the balancing point. If the pack is completely balanced, all of the cells will be at the same SOC at the balancing point. When cells are fully balanced, for instance if the balance point is 100%, they will all attain 100% SOC simultaneously during charging but will diverge in SOC during discharge. The balancing point could be better placed close to 50% SOC if the battery's goal is to offer about equal capacity for charge and discharge. Another crucial factor is where in distributed systems to put the software logic for balancing decision-making. Placing the balancing algorithm in the master device is probably the best course of action as the condition of all cells is required to calculate the proper balancing activity for each cell and balancing decision-making requires knowledge of all individual cell SOCs.

To maintain the condition of balance, it is essential to decide how the cell balancing circuitry should function. How to balance the cells may be assigned almost continually if balancing choices are made continuously during the battery system's operation utilizing individual cell SOCs. However, it is often not cost-effective to use the computing resources necessary to execute a complete SOC estimate on a large number of individual cells. Thus, if the application allows, it might be more beneficial to hold off until a simpler way to gauge relative state of charge is available, such as when open-circuit voltages for each cell are available after a prolonged period during which the battery is in an open circuit and battery currents are zero.

Absolute or relative SOC information may be retrieved on a cell-by-cell basis during this relaxed state with substantially less computational work if the nonhysteretic overpotentials are believed to be relaxed and the hysteresis is nearly similar for all cells. Since quick reactions to transient circumstances are unnecessary, accuracy may be further increased in the presence of measurement noise by taking measurements at open circuit for a longer length of time. A straightforward first-order linear approximation may be utilized to estimate the relative SOCs and provide the balance assignments, supposing that the SOC discrepancies are minimal. It is necessary to convert the relative SOCs into the number of amp hours that will be discharged from each cell. The balancing current is supplied by VCELL/RBAL in the case of dissipative balancing with a fixed resistor. VCELL will fall when the cell is drained, reducing the balancing current.

The mistake introduced by the assumption of a constant balancing current is often minimal, and each cell's time to balance may be determined. Low-power balancing circuits may need to store these periods in nonvolatile memory across cycles since they might be quite lengthy, while also decrementing the counters when the cells are drained. In systems that do not have the chance to balance often, attaching a maximum time to balance is an efficient technique to minimize balancing problems by preventing "stale" data from being utilized for a lengthy period of time during which the status of balance has changed.

When control power is needed, further system requirements may be necessary, such as closed contactors to provide control power from the high-voltage battery stack itself. In many circumstances, the battery management system can only execute cell balancing in some type of active state; in these cases, control power may be required. In this case, there is a trade-off between totally precise cell balancing and reducing energy waste since balancing may result in battery energy loss. Consider changing the operating states and power architecture of the battery management system and battery pack if the implications of imbalance might be severe so that the battery system can be balanced with no negative effects on other system components and with the least amount of energy possible[6].

Balanced Charge Transfer

One way to move charge from one cell to another is by charge transfer balancing. Therefore, not all of the energy is wasted. The main benefit of this method is that, unlike a dissipative balancing system, which leaves all of the energy in all other cells stranded when the energy from the most drained cell hits zero, charge transfer balancing allows for the partial use of this energy. This may enhance the battery pack's total energy capacity up to the amount of energy imbalance between cells caused by differences in capacity and SOC. Charge transfer balance is desired because to its higher efficiency and potential to enhance available capacity, but it must be done with caution. Charge transfer balance often doesn't provide enough advantages to be included. In order to make this choice, the following information should be considered. Variance in cells' capacity and self-discharge rates: All contemporary battery manufacturers strive to minimize this variance. As a result, the variances between individual high-quality cells are often extremely slight. If the cells are close in capacity, the amount of energy that may be transferred will be very little since the greatest increase in available capacity from the battery is the total of the leftover energy in all cells after the most-discharged cell hits 0% SOC.

Expected length of charge and discharge cycles, as well as the overall duty cycle of the battery management system: If the battery is discharged quickly, the energy will need to be transferred more quickly to be used during a cycle, necessitating a much larger balancing circuit. To utilise all of the energy in the high-capacity cells, a 100-Ah battery pack with an anticipated 2% capacity imbalance and a predicted 1-hour discharge rate would need moving 2 Ah/h or 2A of charge transfer current. The balancing current will need to double in order to get the same outcome if the anticipated discharge duration is decreased by half to 30 minutes. Different methods may be used to accomplish charge transfer balance. It is feasible to execute charge transfer between individual cells using a variety of basic topologies. Determining whether charge may be transmitted just inside a single slave device in a master-slave battery management system architecture, or if the battery management system must be able to transfer change amongst all cells in the system, is crucial.

Methods of charge transfer balancing may need components with high-voltage switching and/or isolation ratings since the cells are all at very different potentials. Finding strategies to lessen the possible discrepancies for the balancing circuits is desired since doing so may significantly raise the cost of the battery management system.It is feasible to transmit balancing charge through the isolation barrier to an earth-ground referenced system in systems that have an isolated low-voltage system linked to the earth's surface. Energy may penetrate an isolation barrier while preserving the integrity of the barrier by using a flying capacitor or a transformer balancing circuit[7].

Airborne Capacitor

A capacitor with one or both of its terminals attached to several devices for charge transfer or measurement makes up a flying capacitor. If it can be made sure that the capacitor is not connected to both sides of the barrier at once, a flying capacitor circuit may be used to take measurements or transfer charge over an isolation barrier. An example flying capacitor circuit diagram.

Circuit with flying capacitors.

Switches S1 and S2 link the capacitor to voltage source V1 when they are closed. Resistor R1 will then cause capacitor C1 to charge up to voltage V1. The charged capacitor may then be connected to the load resistor RL by opening switches S1 and S2 and closing switches S3 and S4. The load resistor receives the energy from the capacitor and converts it. To link the capacitor to a wide range of sources or loads, more pairs of switches might be added. Two battery cells might be used in lieu of the voltage source and load resistor, and by shutting S1 and S2 alternately with S3 and S4, energy from the higher potential cell is transferred to the lower potential cell. A voltage measuring circuit might take the place of the load resistor. This enables the safe measurement of a number of voltages over an isolation barrier. It enables sharing of a single high-accuracy measuring circuit and analog-to-digital converter for many measurements. The employment of various voltage dividers between the switches and the voltage sources would enable the measurement of a wide range of voltages using a single circuit.

Due to its limitations, this circuit cannot be used to transfer charge from a lower potential to a higher potential; the load voltage must be lower than the source voltage. It may not be immediately apparent why this may be advantageous, but if cells have varied capacities, a cell with a larger capacity may actually have more energy accessible at a lower voltage. Additionally, as the amount of charge that can be moved is proportional to the voltage difference, fine-tuning the balance may be challenging since the movement of charge is hampered when the voltage of the source and sink approaches parity. A safety issue can exist if switches are closed in the incorrect sequence leading to two switches being closed at the same time, or in the case of solid-state switches, inadequate time allowed for the switches to fully open before closing the next one. Practically speaking, the switches can be implemented using electromechanical relays, optoisolator relays, or transistors. If isolation is required, then an isolated switch or isolated control line is required to ensure the reference po- tential of the control circuit is isolated from the voltage that is being connected across the capacitor.

A low-leakage capacitor should be selected for this application, as any self- discharge of the capacitor will reduce the effectiveness of the circuit. A flying capacitor balancing system offers a very low cost option for charge transfer balancing with the disadvantages that the system is much less effective at balancing when differences in voltage are small. Allowing for connection of the capacitor to any arbitrary cell requires that a switch capable of blocking the full pack voltage is used on both terminals of the capacitor and that a large matrix of switches, capable of connecting the capacitor to any cell in the pack, is created. The cost of this type of arrangement is extremely high and rises as the required isolation voltage increases[8].

Another arrangement is to allow charge shuttling only between adjacent cells. In this way each switch only needs to be capable of blocking the voltage of a single cell. A simple transistor will serve this purpose quite adequately, but now an individual capacitor is required between each cell. Some cell monitoring ICs, such as the Atmel ATA6870, support a flying- capacitor balancing circuit between each adjacent cell.

Inductive Charge Transfer Balancing

Storing energy in a capacitor requires a voltage differential to charge or dis- charge the capacitor. This presents a challenge when many cells have nearly the same voltage and the goal is to still move charge between cells at a meaningful rate. Using an inductor as the energy storage element can improve the system performance significantly.

Unidirectional charge transfers balancing circuit

This topology is only capable of moving energy from a more positive cell to a more negative cell, but the addition of a second inductor and transistor can create a circuit capable of bidirectional energy transfer. Energy transfer from cell n to cell n 1 is accomplished by first closing switch S2 and allowing current to flow in inductor L2. When the switch is opened, current flows through cell n 1 and diode D2, transferring energy to the more positive cell. This requires double the number of switches and inductors. The circuit complexity can be minimized by using the internal body diode of a MOS transistor for each switch.

Because this circuit is only capable of moving energy from one cell to its adjacent cells, if energy is transferred across a large number of cells, the efficiency of this transfer is significantly lower. In the case of large-format systems with hundreds of cells, even a 99% efficient transfer could leave very little energy if the transfer distance is long. This method would be most effective if the weaker and stronger cells are evenly distributed throughout the battery system and the transfer distances can be minimized.

Charge transfer balancing circuit

An effective control strategy for this type of balancing scheme must con- sider two important aspects; both the relative energy content of each cell, as well as the efficiency of the transfers between various pairs of cells. Moving energy from the most charged cells to the most discharged cells may not be the ideal choice if significant energy is lost in moving the energy across a long path; it may be more beneficial to select a balance strategy that maximizes the available energy considering the energy loss. A battery pack with n cells each with available energy E. An efficiency function for transferring energy from cell m to cell n is defined as η. The efficiency calculation in many topologies is not commutative. The maximum available energy is E for all n if it is possible to extract all the energy from every cell. However, the available energy without charge transfer is min n) . Energy availability is highest when the difference between min E and max E is minimized. Charge transfer balancing can improve energy availability by performing energy transfers to equalize cell energy. The inefficiency scales in a roughly linear fashion with the distance that the cells are separated from each other in the series chain[9].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, limit violation detection plays a crucial role in ensuring the safe and reliable operation of various systems, including power grids, industrial processes, and transportation systems. It involves the use of statistical methods, machine learning algorithms, rule-based approaches, or a combination thereof, to analyze real-time data and identify anomalies or deviations from normal operating conditions that may indicate limit violations. Accurate and timely limit violation detection enables proactive intervention, such as system shutdown, reconfiguration, or maintenance, to prevent further damage or disruptions. However, limit violation detection also presents challenges, such as false positives, false negatives, and the need for reliable sensor data. Overcoming these challenges requires careful selection and configuration of detection techniques, validation of detection system effectiveness, and continuous improvement through feedback and optimization. Furthermore, limit violation detection goes beyond risk mitigation, providing valuable insights into system behavior, performance, and vulnerabilities, which can inform proactive maintenance, fault diagnosis, and system optimization.

REFERENCES:

[1] S. A. Elsagheer Mohamed, M. T. Parvez, K. A. Alshalfan, M. Y. Alaidy, M. A. Al-Hagery, and M. T. Ben Othman, "Autonomous Real-Time Speed-Limit Violation Detection and Reporting Systems Based on the Internet of Vehicles (IoV)," *J. Adv. Transp.*, 2021, doi: 10.1155/2021/9888789.

[2] T. Kumar and D. S. Kushwaha, "Traffic surveillance and speed limit violation detection system," *Journal of Intelligent and Fuzzy Systems*. 2017. doi: 10.3233/JIFS-169308.

[3] P. P. Gosai and J. Joshi, "Automatic Speed Limit Violation Detection and Warning System Using GPS and GSM," *Int. J. Adv. Res. Electr. Electron. Instrum. Eng. An ISO*, 2016.

[4] I. Santin, C. Pedret, M. Meneses, and R. Vilanova, "Artificial Neural Network for nitrogen and ammonia effluent limit violations risk detection in Wastewater Treatment Plants," in *2015 19th International Conference on System Theory, Control and Computing, ICSTCC 2015 - Joint Conference SINTES 19, SACCS 15, SIMSIS 19*, 2015. doi: 10.1109/ICSTCC.2015.7321357.

[5] M. S. Naik and S. Patil, "A Review for Traffic Management System Using Different IOT Devices," *Int. J. Sci. Eng. Sci.*, 2019.

[6] U. Mareck, G. Fusshöller, H. Geyer, M. A. Huestis, A. B. Scheiff, and M. Thevis, "Preliminary data on the potential for unintentional antidoping rule violations by permitted cannabidiol (CBD) use," *Drug Test. Anal.*, 2021, doi: 10.1002/dta.2959.

[7] M. Markiewicz, D. Kaszlikowski, P. Kurzyński, and A. Wójcik, "From contextuality of a

single photon to realism of an electromagnetic wave," *npj Quantum Inf.*, 2019, doi: 10.1038/s41534-018-0117-8.

[8] M. I. Karmawijaya, I. Nashirul Haq, E. Leksono, and A. Widyotriatmo, "Development of Big Data Analytics Platform for Electric Vehicle Battery Management System," in *ICEVT 2019 - Proceeding: 6th International Conference on Electric Vehicular Technology 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/ICEVT48285.2019.8994013.

[9] D. L. Schultis, "Sparse measurement-based coordination of electric vehicle charging stations to manage congestions in low voltage grids," *Smart Cities*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/smartcities4010002.

CHAPTER 13

TRANSFORMER CHARGE BALANCING

Pradeep Kumar Verma, Assistant Professor
Department of Electrical Engineering, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email id- pradeep.k.verma002@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Transformer charge balancing is a technique used in power distribution systems to mitigate the effects of uneven loading and charging of transformer banks. It involves monitoring and adjusting the individual voltages and currents of multiple transformers within a bank to ensure that they share the load evenly, reducing the risk of overloading, overheating, and premature failure of transformers. It will highlight the various approaches and methods used for transformer charge balancing, including traditional techniques such as tap changer control, as well as more advanced methods such as coordinated voltage control, load tap changer (LTC) control, and distributed control algorithms. The abstract will also discuss the challenges associated with transformer charge balancing, such as limitations in tap changer operation, coordination issues, communication requirements, and the need for accurate and reliable monitoring and control of transformer parameters.

KEYWORDS:

Energy, Equalization, Lithium-ion, Monitoring, Overcharge, State of charge (SOC).

INTRODUCTION

A second winding may be added to the core of an inductor to create a transformer, which can be used to transport energy between individual cells and a module, the complete battery stack, or an auxiliary power source. This builds on the concept of employing an inductor as the energy storage element. Effectively, a dc-dc converter is developed that can move energy between a single cell and another energy source. The transformer may consist of a number of secondary windings and a single main winding that are powered by any of the sources mentioned above, or it may consist of a separate pair of windings for every cell. For successful transfer across the transformer's core, a switching circuit is needed to provide a time-varying current and magnetic flux.

Inefficient Balancing

Many battery management system designers choose to just use a resistive device to dissipate energy from cells that are found to have an excessively high SOC since it is a less expensive approach. Dissipative balancing systems provide a better degree of simplicity and a variety of additional benefits, even if this seems to be inefficient at its core.

Concept of balancing a transformer

Modern battery cells should be anticipated to have minimal self-discharge and be very identical in terms of their capacity, impedance, and self-discharge rate from high-quality manufacturers. Due to the strict control over cell quality, a battery pack no longer requires as much balancing power to maintain its claimed capacity[1], [2].The size and expense of the switch required to activate the balancing circuit are minimized in dissipative balancing systems by just requiring the switches to switch across a single cell voltage. Despite being many, the switches are tiny and each cell only requires a single switch and resistor, which makes them relatively affordable. Dissipative balancing may often be managed by several cell monitoring ICs. The IC is given balancing instructions, and it level-shifts a control signal to a voltage referenced to one of the terminals of the cell that has to be balanced. With the help of this control signal, a transistor may be driven, allowing current to flow through it and a balancing resistor. The balancing current may be directly controlled by an internal switch for very low currents, but this will reduce the feasible size of the battery pack that the IC can handle. Using a stack monitoring IC to balance transistors and resistors. An IC that enables the use of both an internal switch for low currents and enables the same signal to drive a secondary transistor in a Darlington-type configuration for bigger currents is a suitable compromise. This enables scaling of the same essential design without switching out components.

The heat produced by the balancing resistors has to be properly managed. When the balancing circuits are in use, PCB-mount resistors may very well end up being the hottest parts of the circuit board. Only the circuits connecting to cells that need to be discharged are powered, therefore the amount and distribution of heating may change while the system is operating. The circuit board design has to be carefully considered in addition to the component power ratings in order to guarantee that the hardware is resilient as a whole. If exposed to extreme heat gradients or fast temperature fluctuations, resistors and other components may shatter. An active circuit next to an inactive circuit might cause this to happen. Large surface mount packs, including 2512 components, are more vulnerable to breaking. The practical limitations of the surface mount package may be exceeded by high power dissipation levels for big systems or by substantial variance in self-discharge. It's also important to verify the route through which heat is transferred from the resistors to the environment.

Without external heat sinks or other heat transfer mechanisms, the PCB substrate and solder connections are typically where heat is transferred. The solder junction may be reflowed or damaged by high heat flux. The efficacy of almost any cooling system will be reduced by high ambient temperatures, hence testing and simulation should be done at the device's maximum projected functioning temperature. In general, sealed enclosures have weak convective transfer properties. Because of the mechanical strength of the cooling equipment, the usage of fans will decrease system dependability. Simple heat sinking to an earth-ground referenced chassis is not usually an option since balancing resistors function at cell stack potential. Electrically insulating specialty solid, gel, and foam materials may be utilized as a heat transfer medium, but owing to their expense, they must be carefully chosen and applied. The added complexity of removing the heat from the balancing resistors may actually make dissipative balancing systems more difficult than their charge-transfer equivalents in specialized applications like vacuum/space systems[3].

Larger internal tensions when heated or under mechanical strain make components in big packages a usually worse option for heat dissipation. If balance loads are heavy, take into account many smaller packages or larger-format TO263 type packages. It is important to carefully consider the dependability trade-offs associated with a dissipative balancing system. Increased temperature may cause a system that first seems to be simpler and more durable to fail more often because it affects the projected dependability of the nearby electronics.

Although the balancing function may be controlled by a single switch, there are failure scenarios connected to switch or control logic failure. Since a closed switch causes a cell to discharge, if the switch malfunctions while it is closed, the cell will continue to discharge uncontrolled. Depending on the circumstances, this might cause the cell to overdischarge and suffer irreparable damage. A cell cannot be balanced if the switch malfunctions in the open position. By adding switches in parallel or series, one of these failure scenarios will be less likely to occur while the other will be more likely. When choosing the right circuit design for dissipative balancing control, information on the relative frequency of different kinds of switch failures should be taken into consideration.

In order to make sure that the balancing function is working properly, it is often beneficial to include a self-test function. A battery's available capacity may eventually deteriorate slowly or it may self-discharge into an over-discharged condition as a result of a balancing failure. Any of these circumstances calls for at least a simple mechanism of error detection. It is simple to carry out cell balancing tasks while the battery management system is operational, the battery is linked to the load, and real-time monitoring is happening. This raises the issue that, if all balancing must be completed during the active period, which is only a few minutes or hours per day, then the balancing current during the active mode must be sufficient to ensure that the necessary number of amp-hours per day can be discharged. This makes the balancing mechanism more expensive and larger.

The balancing task can be spread out over a longer period of time with the help of a capability for sleep balancing, in which the individual cell monitoring ICs or slave devices are capable of allowing balancing current to flow during times when the battery management system is powered down or inactive. The balancing circuit may be directly powered by the cells, which allows for extremely minimal parasitic power usage in this situation. Smaller switches and resistors may be used, but it's important to take the necessary precautions to avoid overcharging the system. There must be a way to regulate how much battery is lost overall while balancing. This may be done by creating a "latching" circuit that needs an outside instruction to go from a balancing state to a non-balancing one. The balancing circuits may then be turned off by a master device that runs on a periodic wake-up cycle. A timer circuit that is instructed to keep the balancing circuit closed for a certain amount of time is another option. This takes a lot more parts, but it is applicable to the case when the master device never transmits the stop instruction. Sleep balancing may increase overall system efficiency in situations when having the battery management system engaged results in increased parasitic energy usage. Sleep balancing capability is anticipated to be included in next generations of stack monitoring ICs.

DISCUSSION

Balancing Faults

The four main categories of balance mistakes are excessive discharge, insufficient balancing, improper balancing, and no balancing. An excessive discharge of a cell could increase imbalance or eventually result in an over-discharge condition if a balancing switch fails to open, there is another short circuit in the balancing circuit, or there is a bug in the software or communication path that is determining the state of the balancing switches.

It is important to note that when overvoltage or undervoltage conditions are detected, balancing should be disabled as necessary and the total pack current should be decreased. Even if the contactors are open, it can still be feasible to overload a cell with charge transfer balance. If the battery management system can no longer accurately assess cell voltages, the same rule has to be used[4].

Inadequate balance will eventually result in less energy availability in general. A variety of factors may contribute to inadequate balance. The error is fundamentally a battery fault and not a battery management system failure if the balancing system is no longer able to account for the battery's intrinsic variability in self-discharge and capacity. Defects in the battery management system may occur when the balancing hardware is unable to function and when the software is unable to choose and implement a successful balancing plan.

Inaccurate decision-making, which might be the consequence of a software bug or inaccurate inputs, leads to incorrect balance. Comprehensive testing and good design practices like confirming the plausibility of the input and output of software functions, guided by an appropriate analytical approach like failure modes effects analysis, are crucial. These practices take into account impacts such: Readings of low or high cell voltage can result in poor balance choices: Inaccurate measurements may be detected and prevented from being utilized to provide balancing information if a redundant measuring approach is employed or substring measurements are available.

Over time, a condition of equilibrium will inevitably deteriorate due to high rates of self-discharge. Many battery management systems cannot handle the intricacy of tracking the self-discharge rate for individual cells. To stop self-discharge from jeopardizing the balancing method, regular reevaluation of the balance condition should be enforced. Consider a battery system where all but two of the cells have the same SOC, capacity, and self-discharge rate. The self-discharge rate of one cell is greater than normal, whereas the self-discharge rate of the other cell is lower than usual. Initially, the first cell will need the most discharge, but after a prolonged period of standby, the second cell will have the greatest SOC.

Along with software plausibility checks, a secondary hardware cutoff at a specified low-cell voltage offers reliable defense against this kind of failure scenario. When employing ASICs, the extra cost may be negligible compared to realizing this circuit using discrete components, which might add significantly to the cost per voltage measuring channel[5].

Algorithms for State-of-Charge Estimation

Calculating a battery's state of charge gives the load device a fuel gauge that shows how much of the battery's total charge can presently be discharged in comparison to the battery's total charge in its fully charged condition. Knowing the state of charge helps the load device provide feedback to the user, but it is also important for the battery management system and the battery system itself since many other battery metrics rely on the SOC.

Challenges

The estimation of SOC is more challenging with large-format lithium-ion batteries than with other battery types due to a variety of factors. High coulombic efficiencies and the absence of self-balancing may cause divergence in individual cells during the course of a battery system. Nonlinear relationships between SOC and OCV, which can be relatively flat in the case of chemistries like lithium-ion phosphate, are also prevalent. Strong dependence on temperature, SOC, and age often occurs along with significant overpotentials that may have lengthy time constants or even be hysteretic in nature. Most importantly, compared to most consumer electronics applications, the new generation of battery power applications made possible by the enormous energy and power capacities of lithium-ion batteries need improved SOC estimate accuracy. For applications like electric automobiles, accuracy requirements of 3% to 5% are not unusual. For aerospace or military applications, more accuracy may be necessary. In terms of SOC calculations, lithium-ion batteries have a few benefits over other battery types. As opposed to lead-acid batteries, for instance, the capacity-rate dependency is significantly more constrained, making SOC estimation with a greatly fluctuating battery current much more practical. Low self-discharge rates make estimating SOC easier.

It is essential to understand that SOC does not represent the percentage of battery energy that is accessible. The lower terminal voltage for batteries with a steep voltage profile shows that the first amp-hour extracted from the battery has substantially more energy than the last. Calculating the status of the energy may be useful in this situation. Because of the battery's internal resistance and the direct relationship between it and the rate of discharge, it is difficult to determine SOE. Assume, however, that for a certain discharge rate Id, there is a terminal voltage function Vt that expresses the terminal voltage as a function of SOC. Therefore, SOC • C • V dSOC is the energy function E. It may be necessary for the battery to estimate SOE in addition to SOC, depending on the application. In most cases, SOE as a function of SOC may be calculated using a lookup table.

Various rates of discharge

In order to avoid misunderstanding, the definition of the battery's SOC, which might differ from organization to organization, should be made explicit and accepted throughout the design cycle. The most basic definition makes the distinction between completely charged and entirely discharged. The batteries are secure, stable, and not prone to high rates of deterioration or damage whether they are completely charged or entirely depleted. The battery's capacity is measured in amp-hours, which may be used to drain the battery from completely charged to totally discharge or vice versa[6].

The following qualities would characterize ideal batteries:

The battery would have 100% coulombic efficiency if its discharge capacity and charge capacity were identical. Each amp-hour used to charge or discharge the battery includes the same amount of energy in watt-hours since the terminal voltage of the battery remains constant. No of the temperature or discharge rate, the amount of amp-hours required to move from charged to discharge is the same. There is no route dependence between the fully charged and totally drained states. These presumptions are false in reality, yet some of them could be helpful in specific situations. Here is a review of them:

Variable Terminal Voltage: Internal resistance causes OCV to fluctuate with changes in SOC, and polarization and hysteresis effects are also present in the terminal voltage. Because terminal voltages for various chemistries may vary dramatically with depth of drain, SOC is not always a reliable estimate of the battery's useable energy capacity. Calculating the energy that is available could be a different need for certain applications.

Constant Capacity with Temperature: Particularly when considering greater working temperature ranges, this is a bad assumption. With increasing temperature, available capacity decreases nonlinearly.

Lithium-ion batteries often perform better in this area than other kinds of batteries (capacity constant with pace). The Peukert effect, which characterizes the power law connection between current and capacity as follows:

The majority of lithium-ion battery systems can ignore this impact without sacrificing accuracy. It's crucial to recognize the difference between an earlier voltage cutoff at high current and a change in the capacity. Ohmic resistance, polarization, and hysteresis all contribute to a bigger voltage drop at higher discharge rates. The increased apparent capacity will be reduced at higher discharge rates since the current is generating extra voltage depression if the cell is drained at constant current until the terminal voltage hits a specified minimum value. However, it can frequently be shown that the remaining capacity may be released from these cells once relaxation has place, producing about comparable capacities at varied speeds. It may be crucial to take into consideration capacity dependency on rate at very high dis- charge rates or with certain cell chemistries[7].

Completely charged and completely depleted state rely on the path: Depending on the circumstances, this assumption may or may not be true. The findings will be incorrect if the completely charged and discharged states are merely stated as values of the instantaneous terminal voltage due to the effects of ohmic resistance, polarization, and hysteresis. The completely charged and discharged states are often defined as the outcomes of a constant current/constant voltage charge or discharge, which should take place at constant temperature.

Counting Coulombs

Coulomb counting, also known as amp-hour integration, is the most straightforward method of computing the state of charge. Simply expressed, the rate of change in SOC is equal to the battery current divided by the battery capacity. This method has some drawbacks. First, for the approach to correctly monitor SOC, a proper beginning point is necessary. In certain circumstances, a completely relaxed OCV or a known, readily observable voltage event, often the end of charge or end of discharge, may be used to periodically get this beginning point. The end of discharge or charge may not always be achieved in certain applications, making it difficult or impossible to get a relaxed OCV measurement, and these circumstances may not arise often. A technique of SOC estimation that is resistant to errors in the first calculated SOC is often preferred.

This approach requires precise current monitoring, particularly if it is to be used during cycles with a considerable duration. The findings of coulomb counting might be significantly enhanced by the multiple-range current sensor technology that has been explored. Think about a battery for an electric car that gets charged for eight hours and then depleted for forty minutes. 1.5C is the discharge rate whereas 0.125C is the charge rate. Assume that the maximum discharge rate will be off by 0.015C, or 1%.

In contrast to just 1% during the discharge cycle, a 12% SOC fault might build up during the charge cycle. In contrast to the 12% mistake, the 1% SOC error would often be regarded as acceptable in most applications. The amp-hour integration error will be significantly decreased if it can be brought down to 1% of the actual measured value as compared to the highest recorded value[8].

The greatest increase in the SOC error, as determined by amp-hour integration, is given by sit/ for a battery with capacity C in amp-hours if the maximum error in current is represented by si during a period of time t seconds in length. The SOC error's time-dependent nature, However, there are some advantages to coulomb counting. Measurement noise has a little impact on the result because to long integration times. Since error is inversely related to integration time and current error, amp-hour integration may provide accurate findings throughout brief periods with high currents and SOC fluctuations because the current measurement's signal is robust in comparison to current sense errors. Amp-hour integration may be efficient if the battery is routinely completely charged and drained at a high pace. Examples of such applications are battery electric vehicles and uninterruptible power supplies, which provide higher chances for using coulomb-counting methods than hybrid cars and peak-shaving energy storage. Coulomb counting, which is often a component of the SOC calculating process for a modern battery management system, always offers helpful information regarding variations in SOC. However, the problem of long-term drift will rapidly become a limiting factor with any integration-based computation like this, and the battery management system would need to depend on other approaches to increase the state of charge estimator's long-term accuracy[9].

Corrections SOC

It should be obvious by now that amp-hour integration alone is inadequate to provide contemporary battery management systems acceptable SOC performance. The simplest way to make improvements is to correct the state of charge (SOC) during certain events or times when cell voltage measurements may be utilized to accurately determine the state of charge. for situations where 100% SOC is often obtained and the charge profile is quite mild. At the conclusion of the charge, a SOC adjustment may be made. The target voltage or a comparable technique may be used to achieve 100% SOC with a restricted charge current without worrying about experiencing overvoltage or overcharge. The SOC may be reset to 100% after the current entirely tapers. This straightforward approach paired with coulomb counting may be sufficient for certain applications if the batteries are completely charged after every cycle and the length of each cycle is kept short to avoid buildup of integration mistakes. In the event that SOC mistakes have accumulated during the discharge cycle, a similar correction may be made towards the conclusion of discharge, raising the possibility that SOC discontinuities may be produced. Many applications could find this unacceptable, in which case a more complex SOC estimate technique would be needed.

OCV Measurements

If a completely relaxed open-circuit voltage can be measured, it may be utilized to estimate SOC directly, supposing that there is a time-invariant, distinct link between OCV and SOC. There is a range of potential SOC values for a given OCV, hence this approach won't provide correct results for battery cells that show voltage hysteresis unless the hysteresis voltage is known.

Depending on the cell, total relaxation might take anywhere from hours to days. Not all applications will permit the routine use of completely relaxed OCV measurements. For cells with very flat OCV-SOC profiles, a variation of only 10–20 mV might correspond to a 30%–60% shift in SOC. In order to attain a SOC error performance that is acceptable, total relaxation may be required.

OCV-based estimate of SOC will be of very limited benefit if hysteresis effects are present and cannot be adequately described. Given the relaxation time and voltage data, it may be able to determine the SOC's maximum and lowest values. The greatest difference between terminal voltage and OCV may be calculated if the maximum total polarization is known as a function of relaxation time. This will provide a limited estimate of the OCV when relaxation is complete. Since the discharge profile is nearly flat across a wide range of SOC, even a small hysteresis and measurement error will produce a very wide range of possible SOCs, this can then create an upper bound on the error in SOC, but for many battery chemistries, this approach may not provide much improvement.

If the polarization dynamics of the target cell are difficult to precisely define, the battery management system is unable to analyze a dynamic polarization model rapidly enough, or the complexity of a more complicated model is not necessary, then such a strategy could be justified.

Temperature Adjustment

Temperature has an impact on a battery's usable capacity. In general, capacity is decreased at low temperatures. Upon returning to warmer temperatures, this capacity loss may be reversed. Understanding the amount of charge and energy available given the battery's present temperature is crucial for a variety of applications. As a result, the battery temperature must be taken into account when calculating capacity and state of charge information. A lookup table may be used to simulate available capacity as a function of temperature. The difference in real available capacity and rising impedance interact in a significant way. Less capacity is available at a given rate before the minimum permissible voltage is reached due to the higher impedance, although this energy may still be recoverable at slower discharge rates[10].

CONCLUSION

In order to maintain an equitable distribution of load and charging across several transformers within a bank, transformer charge balancing is a crucial method used in power distribution networks. As a result, the performance, reliability, and longevity of the transformers are enhanced since it helps avoid overloading, overheating, and early failure of the transformers. For transformer charge balancing, a number of strategies and techniques may be used, from conventional tap changer control to more sophisticated coordinated voltage control, LTC control, and distributed control algorithms. However, for implementation to be successful, concerns such tap changer operation restrictions, coordination problems, and communication has to be solved. Improved transformer performance, lower maintenance costs, and better power quality are advantages of transformer charge balancing. As part of a broader smart grid or micro grid system, including transformer charge balancing may also improve load management, energy efficiency, and the incorporation of renewable energy sources.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Tavakoli, S. Ali Khajehoddin, and J. Salmon, “Control and Analysis of a Modular Bridge for Battery Cell Voltage Balancing,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, 2018, doi: 10.1109/TPEL.2018.2798636.

[2] M. Vasiladiotis and A. Rufer, "A Modular Multiport Power Electronic Transformer With Integrated Split Battery Energy Storage for Versatile Ultrafast EV Charging Stations," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, 2015, doi: 10.1109/TIE.2014.2367237.

[3] K. M. Lee, S. W. Lee, Y. G. Choi, and B. Kang, "Active Balancing of Li-Ion Battery Cells Using Transformer as Energy Carrier," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, 2017, doi: 10.1109/TIE.2016.2611481.

[4] S. Shao, M. Jiang, J. Zhang, and X. Wu, "A Capacitor Voltage Balancing Method for a Modular Multilevel DC Transformer for DC Distribution System," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, 2018, doi: 10.1109/TPEL.2017.2703902.

[5] M. Al-Gabalawy, R. M. Hossam, S. A. Hussien, and N. S. Hosny, "Switched capacitor based multi-level boost inverter for smart grid applications," *Int. J. Electr. Comput. Eng.*, 2021, doi: 10.11591/ijece.v11i5.pp3772-3781.

[6] K. Pannickottu Nivya and K. Deepa, "Active cell balancing for a 2s Lithium ion battery pack using flyback converter and push-pull converter," *IOP Conf. Ser. Mater. Sci. Eng.*, 2021, doi: 10.1088/1757-899x/1070/1/012097.

[7] P. Ramesh, A. Patra, and D. Kastha, "A transformer coupled modular multi-active half bridge charge balancing architecture in a lithium-ion battery pack for electric vehicles," in *9th IEEE International Conference on Power Electronics, Drives and Energy Systems, PEDES 2020*, 2020. doi: 10.1109/PEDES49360.2020.9379807.

[8] L. A. Perişoară, I. C. Guran, and D. C. Costache, "A Passive Battery Management System for Fast Balancing of Four LiFePO4 Cells," in *2018 IEEE 24th International Symposium for Design and Technology in Electronic Packaging, SIITME 2018 - Proceedings*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/SIITME.2018.8599258.

[9] H. Nazi and E. Babaei, "A Modularized Bidirectional Charge Equalizer for Series-Connected Cell Strings," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, 2021, doi: 10.1109/TIE.2020.3003661.

[10] A. Tavakoli, S. A. Khajehoddin, and J. Salmon, "A Modular Battery Voltage-Balancing System Using a Series-Connected Topology," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, 2020, doi: 10.1109/TPEL.2019.2950409.

CHAPTER 14
KALMAN FILTERING TECHNIQUES

Umesh Kumar Singh, Assistant Professor
Department of Electrical Engineering, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email id- umeshsingh11feb@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Kalman filtering is a widely used state estimation technique that has found applications in various fields, including signal processing, control systems, navigation, robotics, and finance. It is a recursive algorithm that combines measurements and system dynamics to estimate the state of a dynamic system, while minimizing the effects of measurement noise and uncertainties. The abstract will highlight the key principles of Kalman filtering, including the prediction and update steps, as well as the use of a state estimate and a covariance matrix to represent the estimated state and its uncertainty. The abstract will also discuss the advantages of Kalman filtering, such as its ability to handle noisy measurements, adapt to changing system dynamics, and provide optimal estimates with minimum mean squared error.

KEYWORDS:

Algorithm, Bayesian, Estimation, Filter, Kalman, Linear.

INTRODUCTION

A mathematical method for predicting the state of a system called Kalman filtering was created in the early 1960s. Its goal is to obtain the best possible estimate of the system's state from a collection of noisy input data. Guidance and navigation systems mainly depend on Kalman filters to extract the best predictions of location, speed, and acceleration from noisy data. Kalman filters are used in many engineering applications, including trajectory and position estimation. Think of a battery management system that can monitor the current and voltage across a number of battery cells. The battery SOC and the state variables of the model components are constructed as hidden state variables in a state space model. These might be the polarization voltages for certain RC components and the hysteresis voltage in the context of an analogous circuit model.

Since it is known that the SOC can be continually estimated by integrating the battery current, in a hypothetically ideal environment, one single observation of the SOC would be sufficient to achieve excellent SOC performance. The open-circuit voltage and hence the state of charge may be easily extracted from the voltage model if the state-space model is accurate and the voltage measurements are precise. However, in practice, none of these requirements is simple to satisfy. If amp-hour counting is employed only for state of charge measurement, even little inaccuracies in current and capacity cause fast divergence. The battery behavior is modeled using RC circuits and hysteresis models, which are simply approximations of the actual electrochemical effects. The voltage and current measurements are also not precise. Consequently, even though both of these measuring and computation methods have advantages for determining battery state of charge, they are also susceptible to inaccuracy.These two approaches may be complementary to one another, according to a heuristic perspective on them. If the starting point is precise, amp-hour integration mistakes will be minimal over the near term and might yield a considerably more consistent estimate of the state of charge. The voltage-based computation, however, will eventually be more precise and might be used to update or adjust the SOC. It is also obvious that if the slope of the SOC-OCV connection is relatively flat, voltage inaccuracies may result in bigger SOC errors, and thus voltage measurements may be more helpful for SOC prediction at certain locations on the discharge curve.

An effective comparison is to navigating on a sailboat. By continuously mapping its route with each change in speed and direction, a vessel that set out from a known point and is now sailing at a specified course and speed may establish its present location. This method of navigation gives a decent estimate of the vessel's location if the period since the last known precise position is brief and the estimations of speed and direction are relatively correct, as well as other mistakes are minor. Integration mistakes build up over time, and the vessel's genuine location may differ much from the anticipated position. A navigation fix, which provides the vessel's real location based on a different sort of observation, such as star positions, GPS, or the sighting of a landmark, is often used to update dead reckoning on a regular basis. From this new precise location, dead reckoning continues, ensuring that the ship always has a reliable estimate of its present position.

The dead reckoning is comparable to amp-hour counting in the context of a battery system, and the periodic repairs might be voltage-based measurements. Although it is obvious that combining these two measuring techniques may make up for each one's deficiencies, how should the data from each be combined? Numerous heuristic or rule-of-thumb strategies have been put forward, but the Kalman filter offers the best solution by calculating the right weights to be assigned to the two methods. An underlying dynamic model of the system under observation is necessary for a Kalman filter. The state-space representations developed in this book may be used to a battery system. The key aspects of this difference will be covered later. Strictly speaking, a Kalman filter requires that the underlying system be a linear time-invariant system, which battery systems are not. Since only the discrete-time version of the mathematics will be shown, Kalman filters may also be used to approximate continuous-time systems.

The Kalman filter makes the assumption that noise exists in both the system model and the observation. The system's state development is influenced by the process noise, which also takes into account input mistakes and the dynamics of the system as it really is. The new state of the system at the new time instant may be anticipated on the assumption that the dynamic system model is correct and the measurements of inputs. The new model's input for a battery system is the battery current, and its output is the terminal voltage. If the battery model is accurate, it stands to reason that the state of charge, the terminal voltage, and the voltage of each polarization and hysteresis element at the end of the time step can all be anticipated.

The vector, referred to as the measurement residual, comparing the expected measurements with the actual measurements will be 0 if the model and measurements are both perfectly correct. This vector's magnitude will fluctuate in an imperfect system based on how inaccurate the measurement and forecast were. At each time step, the Kalman filter calculates the Kalman gain Kk, which is the blending factor used to optimally weight the predicted state of the system based on the model dynamics and system inputs, as well as the corrected state based on the measured system outputs. This produces an estimate of the system state that is as accurate as possible. The process and observation noise for the real Kalman filter are assumed to be zero-mean, Gaussian, and white, with a known covariance of Rk. It can be shown that the Kalman filter performs well even in settings where these noise assumptions are not precisely true. The ideality of the weighting determined by the filter cannot be shown, however.

Q and R are the corresponding covariance matrices for the process noise and measurement noise. The variances in the process and measurement variables are represented by the diagonal values of Q and R, while the covariance between state variables is represented by the off-diagonal components. The precision of the data and the model both have a role in how Q and R degrade with time. Testing and the presumption that measurements are zero-mean and Gaussian are two methods for determining the measurement accuracy for quantities like voltage and current. The measurement covariances will often also be zero, which means, for example, that there won't be any connection between noise in voltage and current measurements. It will be more difficult to measure process errors.

With each Kalman filter iteration, the matrix P the a posteriori state error covariance matrix—is updated. The level of uncertainty connected to each of the state variables is specified in this matrix. The level of confidence in the derived state of charge estimation may be explicitly determined using the P matrix. How much the initial state variables are trusted depends on the starting values chosen for P. Consider that the starting state in the context of a battery management system may be the charge level and the over-potentials loaded from nonvolatile memory at system startup. This information may come from a recent operation cycle that correctly measured the SOC, or it may come from a long-past operating cycle in which overpotentials had eased and the SOC had been depleted by self-discharge. The worst-case scenario is when the battery system is switched up for the first time and the battery management system is turned on without any previous knowledge of the battery status. Depending on the level of confidence in the initial state variables, the covariance matrix should be initialized with a suitable value.

Depending on the level of confidence in the prior state of charge estimation, the initial covariance estimate may be changed. It may make sense to set the covariance estimate large if there isn't a lot of useful information available about the battery's SOC or small depending on the expected level of self-discharge, the length of time the battery system hasn't been monitored by the battery management system, or for brand-new battery cells in an unknown condition.

Determining the process noise covariance matrix Q is similarly difficult. The mistakes are not absolutely random since, in most cases, the model being used is an approximation of the actual battery dynamics. The implemented model's deviations are deterministic, but depending on the context, they may have pseudo-random consequences. Consider an analogous circuit model where a capacitor is used in lieu of a constant phase element; in many circumstances, this is a fair approximation and greatly simplifies the battery model. The voltage across the element is the state variable related to the capacitor. The capacitor responds differently than a constant phase element. It is difficult to state that the error component produced by this approximation is Gaussian since the size and phase of the error depend on the frequency of the excitation.

Under a wide range of circumstances, it has been demonstrated that this method produces robust and reliable SOC estimation that is immune to errors in initial estimation, resistant to integration error as well as model inaccuracies and measurement noise. This is true despite the differences between actual battery systems and Kalman filter theory. There are many of instances of this method in academia and business. The extended Kalman filter is a modification of the Kalman filter for nonlinear systems. Nonlinear functions are used in lieu of the state transition and observation matrices.

The nonlinear link between SOC and OCV may be properly captured using nonlinear functions. The slope of the SOC-OCV curve, which is the partial derivative of OCV with respect to SOC, enables an EKF-based SOC estimator to automatically take into account the shifting correlation between voltage measurement error and SOC error as a function of SOC. Different ohmic resistances in charge and discharge, nonexponential modeling of hysteresis, and more sophisticated representations of comparable circuit components like the CPE and Warburg impedance are a few other nonlinearities that may be recorded.

Calculating the Jacobian, a matrix of partial derivatives, is necessary for the EKF. It may be quite costly to compute this online, numerically, or analytically. The partial derivatives may be generated and kept with the lookup table values, however, since many of the nonlinear functions depicted employ them and remain constant during battery operation. Both the derivative of the SOC vs OCV relationship and the derivative of the model parameters with regard to SOC are necessary. Lookup tables can handle them rather well. More crucially, since the linearization allows the system's uncertainty to be transmitted, the propagation of the process and measurement noise might result in additional mistakes depending on the system's level of uncertainty.

The unscented Kalman filter is another derivative method that does not compute the Jacobian. In order to get a more accurate estimate of the new distribution, the UKF uses error propagation by choosing a number of locations around the current state estimate and changing those using nonlinear functions. The Kalman filter's ability to predict SOC and battery status only needs the values of the state variables from the previous time step, which is a significant advantage. As a result, the memory requirements for a real-time embedded system are kept to a minimum[1].

A Different Observer Method

High-gain observers and sliding mode watchers are only two of the several additional techniques for viewing the states of a nonlinear system that have been suggested for SOC estimation. Other initiatives have focused on using artificial neural networks or fuzzy logic to estimate SOC. As SOC estimate strategies continue to be researched, these unique methods could become more useful.

DISCUSSION

The idea of a battery's state of health is an abstract one that aims to distill the many events that interact to cause battery degradation into a straightforward measure that shows how far along the battery is from beginning to end of life. In general, a battery system needs servicing or replacement when it can no longer provide the minimum amount of power, energy, and standby time required for the application. The definition of end of life differs for different applications and may have multiple possible definitions. Capacity fading, impedance expansion, and increasing self-discharge are three significant externally visible impacts that are caused by a variety of internal processes and contribute to a deterioration in battery health. The amount of charge/discharge cycles and overall service time, or "calendar life," both affect how long a battery may last.

Capacity fade is a gradual decline in the battery's ability to store and release energy. One of two internal root reasons, either the inability of lithium ions or electrons to access active material sites, results in capacity loss. These issues may result from a variety of additional factors, such as microscopic or macroscopic degradation to the electrode structure. 80% of original capacity is a standard industry standard for end-of-life capacity, however this number may be much more or less than what is needed for a given application.

Impedance increase causes the battery's rate capacity to decrease. Many of the same factors that lead to capacity fading and impedance development also do so. The soild-electrolyte interphase develops in most lithium-ion batteries with carbon anodes, increasing the resistance as the battery ages. Because there is less active material, there is less surface area for reactions, which leads to increased impedance. Impedance increases are also caused by electrolyte deterioration and an increase in contact resistance. The permitted charge and discharge rates that will result in attaining this limit voltage will decrease in line with the assumption that the limit voltage remains constant over time. More applications can tolerate a loss in available power of up to 50% than can tolerate a reduction in capacity.

As lithium-ion batteries become older, self-discharge rates could rise. The battery's possible standby duration decreases as the self-discharge rate rises. Assuming the battery management system is scaled for a nominal beginning-of-life self-discharge profile, growing and diverging cell-to-cell self-discharge rates will diminish the battery management system's capacity to adjust and ultimately impair battery performance. An idealized SOH value is often stated as a percentage and ranges from 1 to 0. The SOH should be 100% when the battery is brand-new. The SOH is often defined as zero after the battery approaches the point where it can just just deliver the power, capacity, and standby time required for the application. The SOH should decrease linearly with increasing cycle count assuming the battery is cycled according to the same charge/discharge profile and ambient conditions. The reported SOH will not diminish equally under various kinds of cycles, and operating at more severe speeds, temperatures, and states of charge will, in general, cause the battery's health to decline quicker than under moderate settings.

Therefore, a precise characterization of the beginning-of-life and end-of-life limitations for the cell's capacity, impedance, and self-discharge rates is necessary for an accurate SOH estimate method. An ideal battery management system should be able to dynamically estimate all three parameters throughout battery system operation while utilizing just the same inputs of voltage, temperature, and current. To assess the capacity and impedance of the batteries during testing in the lab, a reference performance test is run alongside cycle and calendar life testing. A performance test on the battery cells may be allowed in certain applications, but in most cases, the battery management system will need to assess data acquired from regular battery operation to calculate SOH. An accurate evaluation of the battery's remaining usable life is produced using a mix of predictive variables, such as total amp-hour throughput and time in service measurements, and reactive elements, such as online capacity and impedance estimates.

The fact that capacity, impedance, and self-discharge are influenced by temperature and other cyclical elements further complicates the estimate of SOH. The stated SOH should not be affected by them; it should only decrease with battery consumption. Despite the fact that the immediate battery capability will vary greatly, the SOH estimator is required to calculate the battery's capacity compared to a fresh battery at some nominal state. SOH calculations should take into account the relatively gradual degradation of battery performance over hundreds or thousands of cycles while yet being responsive enough to allow for the early identification of a damaged battery. Nonexact, nonlinear, nonstationary models with non-Gaussian noise are a good fit for the SOH and remaining usable life estimate issue[2].

Systems that Cause Failure

The final impacts of several complex interactions taking place within the battery are manifested outwardly as capacity loss and impedance rise. In order to create battery management systems for these kinds of battery systems, it is important to have a fundamental grasp of how a lithium-ion battery loses capacity. Lithium atoms intercalated in the active cathode material must de-intercalate and become oxidized during charging, losing one electron in the process. In order to reach the current collector and the positive terminal of the battery, the electron must first travel from the active material site via the positive electrode. To get to the anode, the lithium ion must first pass through the active material site, the electrode material, the electrolyte, and the separator. Through the negative current collector and terminal, the ion must travel to a particle of active anode material, recombine with an electron that has already arrived there, and then reintercalate into the negative electrode material. When discharge occurs, the process goes backwards. Capacity fade and impedance development may be seen as failures or impediments in one of the phases of the aforementioned process when one takes into account the processes involved.

Capacity decreases when active cyclable lithium ions are lost. Many different things might lead to this. Lithium ions react with the electrolyte to form the solid-electrolyte interphase, which forms the passivating film on the anode layer. Lithium is burned during the production of the SEI layer, which happens dramatically during the first few formation cycles of the battery but continues at a reduced pace after that. The specific processes and products are poorly understood. The electrolyte's solvents being reduced to create compounds containing lithium is the effect that is most often described. The majority of the SEI growth processes are often seen to take place during charging. The majority of the capacity loss during the first few months of the battery's life is caused by the SEI's formation. Although this is not a typical source of capacity loss in a well-maintained battery, lithium ions may also be lost owing to plating of metallic lithium due to the anode voltage dropping to zero with respect to Li/Li+, which is often the consequence of charging too rapidly at low temperature. Other, less important side reactions like electrolyte breakdown eating the lithium salt may also cause lithium to be lost[3].

Loss of active material is another potential for capacity reduction; charge transfer is impossible without intercalation sites. Through accidental interactions with the electrolyte, the active substance may be broken down. The most typical explanation is that the active material is segregated from either the electrolyte, preventing access by lithium ions, or from the current collector, preventing access by electrons. Either of them diminishes the battery's capacity and eliminates intercalation sites. Research on the prevention and underlying causes of these effects is still ongoing; it is well acknowledged that the volume change of electrode materials during charge and discharge is a key factor in breakdown. Lithium ions are lost along with the active substance if it is lost in the lithiated state.

Resistance to the movement of electrons and ions in the different battery components results in impedance increase. It is anticipated that the ohmic resistance of the metal current collectors, tabs, and terminals will be rather stable and not be a substantial cause of resistance fluctuations.

The development of the SEI layer increases the anode's ability to block the entry and exit of lithium ions. The ultimate charge and discharge limits that are chosen, together with temperature and current more particularly, charging rate are all important factors in the aforementioned processes. To take into consideration how each of these inputs affects the rate of deterioration, models have been developed.

Models for Predictive SOH

Extensive testing of battery cells under controlled circumstances may be used to understand the anticipated rates of capacity decrease and capacity fading. With varied degrees of success, several scholars have made an effort to develop first principles models of the degradation processes described in the preceding section. These models often cannot work in real time due to their computing complexity, and they frequently do not accurately and completely replicate all observed effects. Models built from real observations of cell behavior during cycling and calendar life testing are often used to replace first-principles models[4], [5].

These models make an effort to relate the following independent factors to the capacity and impedance of the battery: Exposure to temperature, calendar life, depth of discharge, cycle life or amp-hour throughput, and battery current. The cycle profile, which includes the discharge and charge currents, the depth of discharge for each cycle, and the temperature, may be rather constant in certain applications. In these circumstances, it is practical to consider the capacity fade function to be just a function of the number of cycles. To describe this capacity decline, an approximation function is often utilized. The correct use of analytical and experimental approaches is necessary for the adoption of an acceptable approximation function[6], [7].Because the pace of different deterioration processes varies throughout the course of the battery's life, it is necessary to know the beginning capacity and total duration in service terms. Since the SEI growth function, for instance, tends to slow down with time, the capacity loss caused by this impact between cycles 10 and 11 would be greater than it would be, say, between cycles 100 and 101.

Through careful experiment design to isolate the impact of each condition on life, the influence of these factors should be ascertained. In most situations, it will be established that a number of the parameters do not need to be represented in the online model that will be used in the battery management system based on the cell performance and the characteristics of the application. For instance, in a hybrid-electric car, the operational SOC window will be quite tiny, and it's unlikely that the deterioration rate in the batteries highest charged and most discharged states would very much. The impact of altering the discharge current may be virtually insignificant compared to the charge currents in cells where the SEI layer expansion is the dominant influence driving capacity loss. The predictive component does not necessarily need to account for all secondary effects since, in the majority of circumstances, a corrective element to the SOH model will be created.

The size of the parameter space for a degradation model may be chosen by simulating models of different complexity and testing the efficacy of each. The curve should be developed to suit the experimentally acquired data after the pertinent factors that affect cycle life have been identified. Look-up tables or the usage of suitable basis functions may be used to accomplish this. With varied degrees of effectiveness, polynomials, power-series, and exponential basis functions have been tried to fit deterioration data. These basis functions are used to forecast the battery performance curve's course as a function of SOH-influencing factors. Battery testing can accurately estimate the coefficients of these functions and narrow the parameter set to those that truly effect the SOH via well planned tests and comprehensive study of the core reasons of deterioration[8].

CONCLUSION

In summary, Kalman filtering is a flexible and popular state estimate method that has shown promise in a variety of applications. It is a useful tool for a variety of disciplines, including signal processing, control systems, navigation, robotics, and finance. These disciplines benefit from its recursive structure, capacity to tolerate noisy data, and flexibility to changing system dynamics. The necessity for precise sensor readings, starting state estimations, and system models, as well as the computational complexity for high-dimensional systems, are still issues with Kalman filtering. These problems are continually being addressed by ongoing research and development projects, which enhance algorithms and applications across several disciplines. Despite its drawbacks, Kalman filtering is nevertheless a popular and useful technology for state estimate in a variety of practical applications. It is a key tool in sectors where precise state estimation is important since it may deliver the best estimates by fusing measurements and system dynamics. Kalman filtering is anticipated to remain a crucial approach in the area of state estimation as technology develops, with continuous research efforts targeted at enhancing its performance and extending its applicability in a variety of fields.

REFERENCES:

[1] S. P. Ram, J. Nair, S. V. Suryanarayana, and S. Ganesan, "Application of Kalman filtering technique for evaluation of neutron cross section data of 100Mo (n, 2n) 99Mo reaction," *Nucl. Instruments Methods Phys. Res. Sect. A Accel. Spectrometers, Detect. Assoc. Equip.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.nima.2021.165850.

[2] S. Munoz, J. Ros, P. Urda, and J. L. Escalona, "Estimation of Lateral Track Irregularity through Kalman Filtering Techniques," *IEEE Access*, 2021, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2021.3073606.

[3] L. D. Hostetler and R. D. Andreas, "Nonlinear Kalman Filtering Techniques for Terrain-Aided Navigation," *IEEE Trans. Automat. Contr.*, 1983, doi: 10.1109/TAC.1983.1103232.

[4] T. M. N. Bui, M. F. Niri, D. Worwood, T. Q. Dinh, and J. Marco, "An Advanced Hardware-in-the-Loop Battery Simulation Platform for the Experimental Testing of Battery Management System," in *2019 23rd International Conference on Mechatronics Technology, ICMT 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/ICMECT.2019.8932115.

[5] M. Li, Y. Liu, X. Wang, and J. Zhang, "Modeling and optimization of an enhanced battery thermal management system in electric vehicles," *Front. Mech. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s11465-018-0520-z.

[6] W. Wu, S. Wang, W. Wu, K. Chen, S. Hong, and Y. Lai, "A critical review of battery thermal performance and liquid based battery thermal management," *Energy Conversion and Management*. 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.enconman.2018.12.051.

[7] J. Gou and W. Liu, “Feasibility study on a novel 3D vapor chamber used for Li-ion battery thermal management system of electric vehicle,” *Appl. Therm. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.applthermaleng.2019.02.034.

[8] S. Wen, H. Qi, Y. Li, Y. T. Ren, and L. M. Ruan, “An on-line extended Kalman filtering technique for reconstructing the transient heat flux and temperature field in two-dimensional participating media,” *Int. J. Therm. Sci.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.ijthermalsci.2019.106069.

CHAPTER 15

A STUDY OF IMPEDANCE DETECTION

Garima Goswami, Associate Professor
Department of Electrical Engineering, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email id- grmsinha@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Impedance detection is a technique used to characterize and monitor the electrical impedance of a system or component. It involves measuring the opposition that a circuit or device offers to the flow of alternating current (AC) and is commonly used in a wide range of applications, including in electrical engineering, electronics, bioelectronics, and medical devices. It will further explore the applications of impedance detection, such as in bio impedance measurements for monitoring physiological processes, in electrochemical impedance spectroscopy for characterizing electrochemical systems, in impedance-based fault detection in electrical circuits, and in impedance-based sensing for various sensing applications.

KEYWORDS:

Bio-impedance, Circuit, Detection, Electrical, Electrochemical, Electrode, Frequency.

INTRODUCTION

As one of the main signs of lithium-ion battery deterioration is impedance increase, measuring battery impedance is a crucial foundational skill. The two main categories of battery impedance measuring techniques are active methods, which involve injecting current into the battery just for impedance measurements, and passive methods, which rely solely on observations of the current required by the load.

Passive Techniques

The voltage profile that results from the application of a step function in current is displayed. When current is first applied, there is an immediate shift in voltage that is proportional to the cell's ohmic resistance, followed by the accumulation of overpotential caused by diffusion and reaction kinetics. A linear least-squares fit to a number of voltage and current ordered pairs may provide a fairly accurate calculation of the dc ohmic impedance. The impedance determines the slope of the regression line, while the IR-free voltage is the line's intercept. This technique can withstand some voltage and current measurement noise. When the current profile has about similar amounts of charge and discharge in terms of total amp-hours and peak size, it is more accurate. Additionally, it performs better with shorter pulses because polarization has less time to form.

The discrete technique measures the instantaneous change in voltage that corresponds to plausible estimates of step increases in current. This technique makes the assumption that step changes in current happen often and under a variety of operational circumstances. For certain load devices, this may not be the case. This approach is more accurate when there are significant current changes, thus it is possible to choose a minimum step size or a weighting formula that gives significant changes more weight. Like with other impedance measurement techniques, timing the voltage and current measurements is essential to adequately capture the ohmic effects and ignore extraneous voltage variations.

Voltage and current variations may also be calculated continuously. The outcome of this becomes absurd in the situation of constant current flow while voltage fluctuates as the cell polymerizes. Therefore, it is necessary to disregard this unique instance. Since the computation may be done more often than with the discrete technique, there may be a greater accuracy; but, it is more challenging to ignore the effects of cell polarization?

DISCUSSION

Active Methods

By adding regulated current profiles, the aforementioned techniques may be improved. It would be conceivable to inject current profiles, either ac or dc, of known magnitude into systems that are regularly linked to a battery charger or to an appropriate load device, take voltage measurements simultaneously, and extract more precise impedance data. The ohmic resistance is a function of SOC and temperature for a certain cell at a specific stage of its aging cycle. Because of this, it is impossible to simply average a large number of measurements to get a realistic picture of the ohmic resistance. It could be preferable to once again utilize an opportunity computation and just take impedance measurements occasionally. Another method is to continually calculate impedance when state of charge and temperature are known, then utilize the SOC and temperature data to update a specific value of the impedance function at those SOC and temperature values[1].

Impedance variations occur gradually for a given SOC and temperature. Impedance could rise at a usual rate of 0.1% to 0.1% every cycle. It is consequently desirable to include long-term lowpass filtering into the impedance estimate due to the inadequacies in all of the computation techniques. The nonlinear least squares approach and the outer Kalman method will give impedance estimate if online model parameter estimation is applied. All of the aforementioned techniques may be extended to calculate the charge and discharge resistances independently for batteries with significant variations in ohmic resistance between charge and discharge.

Busbars and interconnects of various sizes and geometries are often used in battery systems to link various cell groups. Accordingly, these busbars could have various impedances. As a result, the various busbar impedances may create the impression of a significant impedance difference. Using bus bar impedance values that are either measured or computed to offer the best approximation of the battery cell solely, it is usual practice to correct for the impacts of busbar impedance dependent on the location in the cell stack. To mitigate the impact of busbars on SOC calculation and other higher-level activities, this positional correction should be applied to battery model operation as well. In order to prevent the battery management system from measuring any potential drop across any potentially high impedance components, care should be taken when laying out the battery pack and the interconnect between it and the battery management system.

Busbar effects are shown on a typical impedance map

Battery impedance and busbar impedance will also vary depending on the temperature. While battery impedance typically exhibits a negative temperature dependence, impedance for metals increases as temperature rises. Battery impedance is then measured at a certain temperature since busbar compensation values may need to be temperature-dependent. Similar to the capacity-temperature relationship, the impedance-temperature-SOC relationship must be constructed over the entire operating range using imperfect data gleaned from observing typical battery cycling because no general relationship exists to explain how an increase in impedance at one temperature is related to an increase in impedance measured at a different temperature.

Knowing how to utilize reliable cell impedance measurements to forecast a patient's state of health is crucial once they are accessible. A minimally acceptable battery's power capabilities in charge and discharge should be defined first. A precise charge and discharge power capacity, across a defined SOC window, temperature range, and timeframe should be specified. This marginal battery cell's consequent dc impedance may be calculated using a model of the cell's polarization and hysteresis. In essence, this establishes a set of 0% SOH criteria[2], [3].

The increase in impedance in battery cells often does not increase linearly with the number of cycles or duration in operation. A variety of reasons have been put up as the cause of increased impedance, including the SEI layer growing, the electrodes deteriorating at various scales, the electrolyte and electrodes experiencing side reactions, and others. A behavior that is proportional to the square root of the time in service is specified by several models of impedance increase. As a result, the battery exhibits a faster rate of impedance increase early on than later. If this nonlinearity is considerable, the SOH may fall quickly in the first cycles, which might provide the user false information. In order to determine how many cycles are left until the impedance maximum is achieved, it may be advantageous to linearize the SOH using a generalized impedance growth curve.

Estimating the Capacity

The battery's capacity varies throughout the course of the system's lifespan in addition to momentary variations brought on by temperature. The typical battery service life is long enough for the capacity to deteriorate yet for the total battery system to continue to be functional. The aforementioned reasons for capacity loss have been covered. If the battery operating parameter space is quite broad and the degradation curve is anticipated to take a different form depending on the application, it may be beneficial to segregate specific sources of capacity loss.

Dynamic measurement of the capacity is required for two reasons: first, to provide the user valuable input on the amount of energy still present in the battery system, and second, to assist the system and user in determining when the capacity has deteriorated to the point at which the battery cells need to be replaced. The capacity estimator must accurately predict the long-term loss in capacity without being misled by transient fluctuations in capacity owing to temperature and discharge rate. Capacity estimate is the most simple in systems that often go through complete discharge and charge cycles. A lowpass filter may be used to smooth out variations in capacity measurement together with a real capacitance measurement at the beginning of each cycle. This technique works best if the battery runs at a temperature that is close to constant or if an efficient temperature compensation relationship can be established since temperature has an impact on capacity. This kind of duty cycle is fortunately available for certain applications, although often the charge and discharge levels change from cycle to cycle.

The capacity estimate procedure using an online battery model operates conceptually as follows:

The battery status is estimated using a predictor-corrector method during individual discharge cycles. The model makes predictions about the battery condition in the future, and if the anticipated battery values differ from measurements, the model is improved using corrections. Normally, this is accomplished by predicting the change in state of charge using the integral of the current, then producing adjustments by measuring the voltage. The various approaches are described[4].

There shouldn't be any long-term bias in the sense of the correction if the variations from the expected values are purely the result of random noise in the model and the observations. However, if a significant bias is found across a number of cycles, there is a greater likelihood that the capacity value mistake is to blame for this recurring inaccuracy. For instance, if the projected battery voltage during discharge continually falls below what is expected, it is probable that the capacity parameter is off and the battery is simply more depleted than expected. The battery's capacity may be updated using these long-term bias estimations. Due to the gradual change in battery capacity over hundreds or thousands of cycles, it is typical to expect that a lowpass filter with a very long time constant must be applied to this data. The influence of random noise will be significantly reduced by long-term filtering, and it will be prevented that inaccurate data would cause abrupt changes in battery capacity.

Due to the fact that accessible battery capacity depends on temperature, it is very difficult to estimate capacity accurately. It is possible to build a capacity function that expresses the capacity as a function of temperature, often as a percentage of the capacity as at some reference temperature. In a lab context, it is feasible to maintain the cell at the reference temperature in order to calculate the capacity function and to restore the reference capacity as a cell matures. In many applications, it is not feasible to carry out this kind of assessment in-service. As a result, data obtained at temperatures different than the reference temperature may need to be included in capacity calculations. Additionally, this range of historical temperatures could not completely include the battery's operating temperature range, which means the battery might one day be subjected to a brand-new temperature extreme for which no capacity estimation has ever been done. Last but not least, there won't be a uniform distribution of temperature exposure, therefore the majority of data will come from a small range around the mean temperature and there won't be many observations made at really high temperatures. Despite all of these challenges, a battery management system must provide a useful capacitance estimate.

If a reliable capacity degradation model is available, it may be included into the battery management system as a feedforward capacity decline prediction. In this method, a battery capacity estimate may be produced using a state-observer system, such as a Kalman filter. By employing a tested laboratory aging model as a baseline degradation trajectory, this will aid in reducing the impacts of noisy measurements of capacity. It is necessary to determine the battery's minimally acceptable effective capacity, at which point the SOH should be regarded as zero percent. An SOH of 100% would be present in a brand-new battery with rated capacity or greater. A temporal linearization may be done to guarantee that the SOH drops linearly with time and not with battery capacity because the rate of capacity reduction is often not linear[5].

Detection of Self-Discharge

Excessive increases in self-discharge rate are the last element impacting condition of balance. Capability loss from cell divergence often happens quickly if the battery is unable to maintain charge to fulfill standby needs or if individual cell self-discharge is greater than the capability of the battery management system to rectify the imbalance.

Cell flaws that break the separator and enable current to pass from the positive to the negative electrode within the cell may cause self-discharge to grow. The cells should stay in balance and the responsibility of the balancing should be less than 100% if adequate balancing procedures are in place and the rate of self-discharge is less than the permitted balancing current. Greater self-discharge differences will result in longer balancing duty cycles.

Estimating Parameters

The changing values of the parameters may be utilized as an accurate indicator of battery SOH if the same processes for calculating battery model parameters are executed in real time inside the battery management system software and the battery model parameters are updated during the life of the battery system.

Dual-Loop Method

A battery model tries to predict the battery's state of charge and other internal state variables by assuming that the battery's characteristics remain constant throughout battery operation. A similar predictor-corrector loop may be used on the model parameters themselves, much as how a battery model tries to predict the voltage of the battery cells under a certain current profile, which is then updated by a measurement of the actual voltage. For this method to be effective, it is required to assume that the battery model parameters change necessarily much more slowly than the internal states; capacity and impedance are anticipated to be nearly unchanging during a given cycle.

Such a system utilizes a Kalman filter as an example for parameter and SOC estimation. The internal states of a battery model used to forecast SOC are updated by the SOC estimator using measurements of voltage, current, and temperature. The parameter estimator utilizes the same data at the same time to determine new parameter values. Simple in principle, it is feasible that the battery's capacity has diminished.

Estimation of the Remaining Useful Life

The amount of time the system is anticipated to continue performing its intended purpose is known as the system's remaining useful life. Remaining usable life forecast must also make certain assumptions about the present and future rates of degradation, while SOH computation simply considers the amount of degradation that has already happened in relation to the maximum permissible deterioration for a system that is regarded partially functional.

Filters for particles

A type of filters known as particle filters are used to observe state-space systems with extremely nonlinear dynamics. When the system noise is non-Gaussian, they perform well. They have been used to capacity fading and impedance growth models, which face difficulties from measurements that are very noisy and from extremely nonlinear behavior. A particle filter is helpful for doing regression analysis to fit observed capacity and/or resistance data to an anticipated deterioration curve, similar to other state observers. The SOH variables at cycle k must be predicted, as is the case with most SOH techniques, given the values at cycle k 1. A technique for calculating the SOH at each cycle is also necessary. It must be anticipated that this procedure will provide estimates of the SOH that include mistakes and that have some kind of probability distribution function around the actual SOH. Randomly created particles, or potential estimations of the real capacity, are produced. The Bayes theorem may be used to determine the likelihood that each of the particles is accurate given the observed capacity given these theoretical capabilities, the measured capacity, and the probability distribution.

Using the predictive function, the particles are then changed to a new anticipated SOH at a new cycle. The update function is used to create a new capacity Cik + 1 for the ith particle estimating capacity Ci at cycle k. Then, only the particles that have a lowest likelihood of having the genuine capacity are chosen from the collection of particles after being resampled. This results in the sequential significance resampling, another term for the paragraph filter. The distribution of the capacity estimates is represented by a collection of particles and their associated probabilities rather than a closed-form function for the probability distribution. The particle filter method calculates the accuracy of the estimate as well as the condition of health. For SOH prediction, particle filters have shown strong resistance to nonlinearities and very noisy computations of capacity and impedance. To get excellent performance, a meaningful degradation model is still crucial.

Fault Detection

In order to prevent a damaged battery that may become dangerous with continued usage from being used, the battery management system must be able to identify flaws in both the battery cells and the rest of the plant. These detection techniques must be precise while also being resistant to annoyance mistakes that lower battery availability and dependability. To maintain safety, responses to battery failures must be prompt, appropriate, and coordinated between the battery management system and the load devices.

Lithium-ion cell failure rates are influenced by how well-developed the manufacturing procedures are for that specific cell. The 18650 cylindrical batteries are produced in astronomically large quantities, and most respectable manufacturers are able to achieve failure rates of less than one internal flaw per million cells. The failure rates at the system level might, however, reappear if these cells are utilized in big arrays. Other cell technologies can be a lot less developed and considerably more likely to have cell flaws.

Error Detection

Overcharge/Overvoltage

To prevent the many dangerous repercussions that overcharge or overdischarge generate, detection of these circumstances is essential. Accurate and comprehensive measurements of cell voltage serve as the first line of defense. If overcharging or overdischarging is taking place, faults should be placed near the edge of the normal operating range, and the system should react quickly by lowering limits and disconnecting the battery[6].

By monitoring the rate of change of voltage, a second layer of security may be added. The voltages of most cells start to climb or decrease significantly more quickly than during normal operation when they get close to overcharge or overdischarge. The maximum anticipated rate of voltage change with regard to cell current may be constrained. The pace at which voltage changes in relation to the rate at which state of charge changes is represented by the slope of the OCV curve.

The battery can be going through one of the following risky situations.The cell is undergoing overcharge or overdischarge and exceeds the acceptable voltage range, however due to a voltage offset measuring mistake, the cell measurement seems to be within the safe range.The cell is getting close to the limit of the safe functioning zone. This method may be utilized to enable greater charge and discharge rates without danger of overcharge, overdischarge, or cell reversal in systems with high power-to-energy ratios that run over broad SOC windows. This can be the result of inaccurate SOC estimate. Calculating the total cumulative charge added or taken from the battery utilizing backup procedures might offer an extra degree of security. For instance, a 50-Ah battery should, in theory, not be able to receive more than 50 Ah without overcharging. The overcharge may be kept to 20% if the charge process is stopped after adding 60 Ah. Simple coulomb counting may not provide correct SOC performance, but in the event that other forms of security fail, it could be able to stop or restrict overcharging.

Overcharging may occur extremely fast for battery systems that are charged at high rates to high levels of charge. Once a lithium-ion battery reaches 100% SOC, the majority of them will exhibit a sudden rise in voltage. If the battery charger has a volt-age limit, enforcing a pack voltage limit that is only marginally higher than the measured pack voltage is an efficient way to prevent sudden overcharging. This limit is updated continuously, "floating" just above the measured pack voltage. The charger will run into the limit voltage and cease charging if a single cell's voltage increases quickly. Many risks may be easily avoided by maintaining a full pack voltage limit at all times, and a dynamic pack limit will provide further security. The load device during discharge might use the same approach.

Reading a cell voltage that is 0 or almost zero is an intriguing instance. Since almost all lithium-ion batteries overdischarge at these low voltages, the overdischarge condition is present even if the cell voltage is genuinely zero. The identical measurement might, however, be caused by an interconnect lead that is damaged or unplugged. In certain circumstances, there are techniques that are effective at separating these two occurrences, and in the instance of a damaged connection lead, it could be able to preserve some battery functioning.

It is simple to determine whether a zero-voltage reading is merely the consequence of a broken connection if the battery management system permits the measurement of the high-voltage stack at various degrees of granularity. if measurements of individual modules, groups of cells, or even the complete pack can be made accurately enough. To check for mistakes, the sum of individual cells may continuously be compared to the voltage of the whole sub-string. In addition to producing one or more 0-V readings, a damaged connection will simultaneously cause a discrepancy between the voltage of individual cells and the voltage of the whole module. Special detection for this failure type may save a battery shutdown and loss of functionality since the broken-wire situation is less severe than a short-circuited or totally depleted cell[7].

If the main and secondary measurement circuits are housed in the same electronic module and linked by the same faulty connection in the case of a lost connection with redundant measuring devices, both measurements will be lost. In this situation, it is difficult to guarantee that the disconnected cells do not have an overcharge or overdischarge state via the monitoring circuit.

However, there are a few simple techniques that may be used to increase system performance while retaining a high level of safety. Operating the battery in a discharge-only mode helps avoid overcharging in situations like electric automobiles where regenerative braking can be deactivated. If the measured cells' SOC is noticeably lower than the others and a sufficient margin of safety is not maintained between stopping the discharge and entering overdischarge, over discharging still poses a danger. Even though the voltage of the most discharged cell is unknown, if the aggregate state of charge error and overall pack imbalance are limited to a total of 5% SOC, even unknown cells won't be at danger of self-discharge. Safety may be raised even further by lowering discharge restrictions and adding a suitable margin of safety. The hazards of using a complimentary method at high SOC, when it is not viable to halt charging while keeping the battery functioning, are higher since overcharging poses a greater risk than over discharging. Although this tactic is useful for sustaining limited or limp-home operation, safety must always come first.

It is crucial to remember that a shorted cell will immediately approach 0V. This is undoubtedly a serious risk;thus, any use of these approaches must be accompanied by the proper analysis to make sure that the battery management system does not overlook a short of one or more cells. In the case of a short circuit, the maximum anticipated dV/dt should be known. Voltage variations that occur more often than this rate is probably caused by shoddy connections to the monitoring circuit. Two adjacent voltage readings of 0 or almost zero will result from the loss of an interconnect lead for the majority of cells. The most plausible diagnosis is a potential lost connection if this situation spontaneously manifests together with a voltage mismatch.

Over-Temperature

The heat capacity and anticipated heat generation will provide a restriction on how quickly temperatures may vary in a large-format battery system, similar to how voltage change rates are constrained. But in the case of a thermal event, there will be considerably more energy available, which will cause temperatures to increase quickly. It is reasonable to dismiss as measurement mistakes any sudden drops in temperature that surpass the physical constraints of the cooling system. Avoiding annoyance trips of over-temperature failures is crucial as they often result in the battery system being shut down due to over-temperature circumstances. In order to increase system dependability, a plausibility check on high-temperature occurrences may be required. The risk of delaying battery shutdown in the case of an over-temperature occurrence must be evaluated against this[8].

Overcurrent

The identification of excessive current that is over the permitted limits. A passive overcurrent protection device that doesn't need input from the battery management system should be used to stop very high currents. A blown fuse may be found by monitoring high voltage on both sides of the fuse, which is often a key characteristic. Fuses normally respond quite rapidly. However, all fuses clear more slowly and with lower current, and bigger fuses, which can handle more current and more energy, open more slowly. Other battery system components may be exposed to possible overcurrent if the fuse is oversized. In this situation, the system may depend on the battery management system to stop mild overcurrents that are long enough to be dangerous but short enough to not blow the fuse.

To measure the appropriate range of overcurrents, the current sensor's measurement range must be sufficient. The present measurement's accuracy and precision will be reduced during routine operation due to the expanded measurement range. The measuring system must also take into account the chance that sensor saturation results from a bad sensor. All cells will experience a large voltage depression when excessive discharge currents occur, which may be used to test the plausibility of the high current. To stop high currents, the battery management system might instruct contactors to open. Contactors must be rated to interrupt the anticipated currents if they are to be opened under high current.

CONCLUSION

The electrical impedance of systems and components in diverse applications may be characterised and monitored using the flexible and useful technology of impedance detection. It is an effective tool for electrical engineering, electronics, bioelectronics, and medical device industries because it sheds light on the electrical behavior of a system or component. Impedance detection has several benefits, but it also has drawbacks, including the necessity for precise calibration, susceptibility to environmental factors, and difficulty in evaluating impedance data. These problems are continually being addressed by ongoing research and development activities, which has improved measuring methods, signal processing methods, and hardware implementations. Impedance detection is a discipline that is continually developing new methods and applications. The capabilities of impedance detection are anticipated to be significantly expanded by multidisciplinary research and technological advancements, opening up new areas and applications for its utilization.

REFERENCES:

[1] Z. Xiangchen, Z. Guohui, and Z. Jinbin, “Impedance Detection Based on Ripple Analysis and Current Sharing Control in DC Microgrid,” *IEEE Access*, 2020, doi: 10.1109/ACCESS.2020.2976757.

[2] R. Esfandyarpour, M. Javanmard, Z. Koochak, J. S. Harris, and R. W. Davis, “Nanoelectronic impedance detection of target cells,” *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 2014, doi: 10.1002/bit.25171.

[3] X. Zhang, T. Wang, P. Wang, and N. Hu, “High-throughput assessment of drug cardiac safety using a high-speed impedance detection technology-based heart-on-a-chip,” *Micromachines*, 2016, doi: 10.3390/mi7070122.

[4] R. Wang, Y. Xu, H. Liu, J. Peng, J. Irudayaraj, and F. Cui, “An integrated microsystem with dielectrophoresis enrichment and impedance detection for detection of Escherichia coli,” *Biomed. Microdevices*, 2017, doi: 10.1007/s10544-017-0167-2.

[5] K. F. Lei, “Review on impedance detection of cellular responses in micro/nano environment,” *Micromachines*. 2014. doi: 10.3390/mi5010001.

[6] S. Kousai, K. Onizuka, J. Wadatsumi, T. Yamaguchi, Y. Kuriyama, and M. Nagaoka, “Polar antenna impedance detection and tuning for efficiency improvement in a 3G/4G CMOS power amplifier,” *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, 2014, doi: 10.1109/JSSC.2014.2361322.

[7] Z. Mei, Z. Liu, and Z. Zhou, “A compact and low cost microfluidic cell impedance detection system,” *AIMS Biophys.*, 2016, doi: 10.3934/biophy.2016.4.596.

[8] A. L. Furst and M. B. Francis, “Impedance-Based Detection of Bacteria,” *Chemical Reviews*. 2019. doi: 10.1021/acs.chemrev.8b00381.

CHAPTER 16

BATTERY IMBALANCE/EXCESSIVE SELF-DISCHARGE

Shubhendra Pratap Singh, Assistant Professor
Department of Electrical Engineering, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email id- shub.pratap16@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Excessive self-discharge is a phenomenon in which a battery or energy storage device loses its charge rapidly even when not in use, leading to reduced energy storage capacity and shorter operational lifespan. This abstract will focus on the causes, consequences, and mitigation strategies for excessive self-discharge in batteries and energy storage devices. It will discuss the various factors that can contribute to excessive self-discharge, including internal chemical reactions, high temperature, elevated humidity, and manufacturing defects. It will highlight the consequences of excessive self-discharge, such as reduced energy storage capacity, shorter shelf life, and decreased overall performance of the battery or energy storage device.

KEYWORDS:

Battery, Capacity, Chemical reaction, Deterioration, Discharge, Electrochemical.

INTRODUCTION

If the disparities in self-discharge cannot be balanced by the cell balancing mechanism, the battery balance will become adversely impacted if the battery cells start to suffer an excessive rate of self-discharge. Section 14.5 talks with battery management system balance circuitry failures. Due to a flaw, excessive self-discharge often only affects a few cells. Determining imbalance and self-discharge is a very simple operation if the SOC and capacity for each individual cell are estimated. Other techniques may be used to identify imbalance in the more typical case, when the SOC and capacity statistics are derived on an aggregate basis. The SOC for each individual cell for a given aggregate SOC should be anticipated to lie within a small range of SOCa - s and SOCa + s. Since the slope of the SOC-OCV relationship is known over the whole SOC range, it is possible to calculate the maximum predicted voltage difference across cells using this information. During battery operation, this method may be used with caution, but it becomes more reliable if the voltage measurements can be taken when the battery current is zero and has remained that way for a long.

Even if the individual SOC of each cell is not precisely known, self-discharge may still be checked rather easily using the relative rates of voltage reduction. If cells are near together in SOC, then equivalent losses of charge should lead to about comparable voltage drops. The rate of voltage decline may be easily computed even with only one sample per day if the battery system has extended periods of inactivity when these can be observed. The internal dynamics should relax at the same pace in all cells since they have all experienced the same current excitation. If voltage measurements are accurate, the voltage drop should be visible after a few days of sampling if a particular cell has an excessively high rate of self-discharge. Appropriate lowpass filtering is required, but this method avoids the complexity of calculating all individual cell SOCs and requires little sampling.

Detection of Internal Short Circuits

This is an area of ongoing study that is difficult. Numerous techniques concentrate on detecting changes in the length or form of the charging taper or noisy voltage signals that appear as the cell gets closer to 100% SOC at low current[1].

DISCUSSION

Detection of Lithium Plating

In academic literature, this recently developed idea has been debated. Due to the lower anode voltage produced by the lithium anode when metallic lithium is formed in a lithium-ion battery as a result of abuse, the OCV/SOC relationship will shift on discharge with a higher-voltage plateau appearing at the beginning of a discharge cycle. The balancing circuit's potential low discharge currents will result in greater cell voltages than cells without lithium plating. Although further work is required to guarantee this notion is sound, it is desired to be able to identify this state, and it is possible that in the future many large-format battery management systems will have this capability.

Detection of Venting

Recently, sensors that can find volatile organic molecules in electrolyte have been accessible. Volatile organic compounds are often linked to cell venting in battery systems, and their presence might serve as an early warning sign of this dangerous occurrence. In the case of cell venting, these sensors can better protect users by detecting it regardless of the reason. Because they are still developing, these technologies shouldn't be used as your main form of defense.

Significant Capacity Loss

There should be a clear separation between typical capacity loss caused by natural events and excessive, fast capacity loss caused by a battery malfunction. To assess whether the battery is degrading more fast than normal, an efficient capacity detection system may be combined with an anticipated worst-case capacity trajectory. Frequently, uncontrollable self-discharge in one or more cells will result in capacity loss. A significant internal fault caused by internal shorts, cell damage, or lithium plating may be indicated by an unexpectedly large capacity loss[2].

Reaction Techniques

When a problem arises, the battery management system must restore the battery as soon as feasible while preserving a suitable degree of capability. All of these responses have definitions that are unique to the characteristics of the battery system and the particular kind of fault circumstance being handled. If main protection strategies, such as limit algorithms, are unable to keep the battery safe from dangerous situations, fault techniques should always play a secondary role in protection. The different systems of the battery management system should be built such that fault or error circumstances won't happen if the load abides by the battery's declared limitations and the battery SOH is acceptable. System issues, unusual battery behavior, battery degeneration, and unexpected load conditions should all be linked to faults.

Allowing restricted operation for a predetermined amount of time, but forbidding restarts or connections of the battery system after this time has gone, is a popular method for critical failures that do not necessitate the instant disconnection of the battery but need a quick reaction.

This may provide the load device with enough energy to carry out a controlled shutdown. The battery may simply be removed from the load in cases of approaching overcharge or over-discharge if the load has not complied with instructions to lower battery current to zero in order to stop future changes in battery SOC. Although this will stop future charging or discharging, it might harm the parts of the battery system. Fire suppression systems that might be actuated by the battery management system are often included in stationary energy storage systems. Any last-resort safety system should have the proper safeguards in place, including at the very least a requirement that no single point of failure in the hardware or software would result in accidental activation.

Implementation of Hardware

En-closures are often included in the final battery management system components to provide protection. Although enclosures help electronics withstand electromagnetic interference, heat, humidity, pollution, and other deteriorating conditions, they also increase the cost, mass, size, and complexity of the device. Depending on the application, several strategies are used by battery management system devices. The following factors may assist in choosing a packaging that is suitable for the selected design.

When installing positive locking connections with several terminals, significant mating pressures may be needed. Circuit boards may get distorted as a result of them, and clearance distances may momentarily break down. Due to their transient nature, these effects are often insignificant in electronic systems; nevertheless, since the battery stack is always active, this might provide an arcing danger when the connections are mated. Make sure that mating loads are taken into account and that connections are properly supported.

Electronic equipment may operate better in environmental conditions if liquid encapsulants are used. The use of these materials greatly affects how they perform. If encapsulants are depended upon for important applications like battery management systems, think about automated application and inspection. Many polymers are prone to significant water absorption, which might lower their dielectric performance. To notify users of dangerous voltages, battery management system devices may often need the proper warning labels.

Selection of the Battery Management System IC

At least a dozen specialized integrated circuits have been developed in the last several years with the goal of serving as the foundation for large-format lithium-ion battery management systems. Although it would seem that these devices are all equivalent and the best way to implement the fundamentals of cell voltage monitoring, they are not all created equal, and using them needs the same level of caution as an implementation made from discrete components[3]. A crucial choice in the installation of the battery management system is the choice of a monitoring IC. Many semiconductor manufacturers were selling first-generation goods as at the time of this writing, and a few companies had only just started selling second- and third-generation products. Because there is little standardization in these devices and proprietary methods are used for communication between devices and from devices to host processors, switching to another manufacturer's IC will not be a straightforward matter of swapping one part for another late in the design process if a particular device is shown to not meet the requirements during the process of development and validation. These parts don't all have the same measuring topology, degree of accuracy, sample rate, or safety features, nor do they all count the same number of cells or use the same channels for communication with other devices. In order to prevent last-minute design modifications, choosing a chipset must be done with extreme care. To offer an architecture with a high degree of functional safety, several cell measurement ICs have been enhanced with the availability of auxiliary measuring devices for carrying out redundant measurements. Although there are some significant variations between the devices, many of their characteristics are equivalent.

The high-voltage semiconductor process is nearly always necessary for these devices. Due to the specialized nature and recent development of these processes, suppliers should be assessed according to their degree of expertise and knowledge with the chosen method. With many factors to take into account, the measuring topology employed in cell measurement ICs differs significantly. The most important characteristic is whether a single ADC is multiplexed over numerous cells or utilized individually with each cell. ICs may be daisy-chained together and linked to the series stack of cells using a level-shifted or current-source communications bus, which is used by the majority of these devices. The lowest IC in the chain is linked to a host CPU, and each IC interacts across this bus with the next higher voltage and lower voltage IC. An illustration of what these gadgets might. It is important to take into account the potential failure mechanisms of monitoring ICs. Customers may request a failure mechanisms and consequences study from a variety of manufacturers. Additionally, producers must be ready to describe the degree of testing and calibration that goes into the devices since dependability statistics are required to fulfill certain safety criteria. For crucial parameters, many applications and customers need 100% testing[4]. The next step is to conduct a survey of a few of the available gadgets.

Corporate Linear Technologies

Devices from the LTC680X family, including the LTC6801, LTC6802, LTC6803, and LTC6804, are available from Linear Technologies. The second-generation LTC6803, which offered a number of further functions, swiftly replaced the LTC6802, one of the first devices made for this purpose. A recent invention that provides a private isolated SPI bus is the LTC6804. A secondary measuring tool that does single threshold overvoltage and undervoltage detection is the LTC6801. 12 cells can be measured by all instruments. The required capacitor must be placed between each cell and the negative terminal of the linked lowest potential cell, which adds significantly to the device's cost and necessitates using capacitors with 60V or 100V ratings. The LTC6804 is a third-generation component that offers adjustable noise filtering, extremely high precision, and quick synchronization between all measurements. In order to enhance noise performance, sampling rates might be decreased. The tools enable the use of the cell stack or an independent voltage source as a power source and provide passive cell balancing.

Digital Devices

The comparable AD8280 hardware-only monitor device and the AD7280A lithium-ion battery measuring IC are both made available by Analog Devices. A single 12-bit SAR-type ADC is used by each AD7280A device to measure six cells utilizing a multiplexed architecture. The device claims 1.6-mV precision for cell measurement and delivers 1-s per channel conversion time, while the worst-case values vary from 9 to 14.5 mV depending on the operational temperature range. A level-shifted SPI bus serves as the communication architecture. The usage of this level-shifted SPI across PCBs or modules in a battery system is expressly discouraged by Analog Devices. The measurement range for each individual channel is between 1 and 5 volts, which is a larger minimum voltage than comparable devices on the market. A larger number of temperature channels per voltage channel than most devices provide is provided by each AD7280A, which has six general-purpose ADC channels that may be utilized for temperature measurement.

Each of the six cells of the AD7280A features a cell-balancing output that may be used to operate the gate of an external FET in order to balance the cells[5].

All of the power for the AD7280A and AD8280 comes from the high-voltage battery stack. There are several options for lowering power usage. After operating, the AD7280A devices normally draw between 5.1 and 6.9 mA from the battery stack, and after turning off the software, they draw between 2.5 and 3.8 mA. Ratings at the maximum are 30% higher. The differences between the devices are not specified. These gadgets draw no more than 5 A when completely powered down. The AD7280 alone will double or treble the ap- parent rate of self-discharge if the devices run constantly for a typical 100-Ah lithium-ion battery pack with a self-discharge rate of 2.5% per month. The AD8280 increases the stack consumption by 2.0 mA in the worst case for active mode and by 1.0 A for shutdown mode.

With as little as 0.23 mm separating each pin, the 48-pin LQFP package has a 0.5-mm lead pitch. The VDD and VSS inputs are suspiciously placed very next to one another, despite the fact that the individual cell measurement inputs are appropriately separated to reduce possible discrepancy between neighboring pins. The clearance space between these two pins, which may be up to 30V apart, is quite small. The use of a coated circuit board is advised by Analog Devices, although caution should be used to verify that the clearance and creepage requirements of the application are satisfied.

Texas Instruments

With a high-precision 14-bit ADC and a 1-mV accuracy claim for cell measurement, TI's bq76PL536A IC delivers high-accuracy measurement of three to six cells per IC. A second-generation device that offers enhancements over the first is the bq76PL536A. This is a suitable option for lithium iron phosphate systems that need precise cell measurement since it performs noticeably better than other devices currently on the market. The integrated successive-approximation register ADC completes the A/D conversion in 6 s for each channel and features an inbuilt bandgap voltage reference. The instrument has two temperature measurement channels, detects the voltage of the six-cell substring, and has one general-purpose analog input for reliable broken-wire detection. Internal secondary protection for overvoltage, undervoltage, and overtemperature is included in the bq76PL536A. It is not necessary to include a host microcontroller in order to react to these occurrences since a pair of hardware outputs are employed to notify the existence of these faults. In on-chip ECC flash, which is resistant to data corruption but not immune to it, are the thresholds and delay periods for the undervoltage, overvoltage, and over-temperature circumstances. With the use of an external resistor and FET, passive cell balancing is possible on each cell's sole control line. In order to account for measurement imperfections on all inputs, each device is factory-trimmed. If applying the firmware instructions does not result in the appropriate amount of synchrony, the TI IC provides a hardware input that may be utilized to synchronize measurements. The level-shifting interface transports the conversion trigger signal to the next higher device. The "ground capacitor" design, which calls for high-voltage capacitors, is not specified; instead, the device just needs a single 1-k resistor and 1-F capacitor on each cell voltage input. To ensure accuracy, these devices need be high precision and high quality, although the additional components needed are less expensive than those used with ICs from other manufacturers. The communications interface is level-shifted SPI once again, and the conversion is initiated by a digital signal[6].

The TI device can handle constant voltages of 5V per cell with a tolerance for peaks of 6V per cell thanks to its 36-V peak stack voltage rating. Each cell measurement may be completed by the gadget in less than 6 s. Every cell is measured under the worst-case scenario of 42 s due to the comparatively low number of channels per device. The device's secondary protective mechanisms are deactivated if it enters thermal shutdown, which may be a drawback. The crucial calibration parameters for the secondary protection device are likewise stored on the device using one-time-programmable EPROM, which means they cannot be changed by software reflash after it has been installed in the field. OTP programming requires either more on-board circuitry or a way to program the devices before attaching them to the board and risking component damage. Although the main and secondary measurement circuits employ different references, the device does not support an external voltage reference. No external components may be driven by the internal reference voltage. Although popular, the external 10-k thermistor type used for the hardware over-temperature protection may not be appropriate for situations needing temperature cut-through protection. Any kind of thermistor may be used if the over-temperature feature is not being utilized. The sleep current is greater than that of comparable devices at 12 to 22 A. Activation of the secondary protection circuit draws 46–60 A, and conversion draws 10–15 mA. When one or more signals in the level-shifted interface are asserted, more current is pulled.

For every six cells, the device needs a TQFP-64 package, which takes up more space than an AD device. Although high potentials between neighboring pins are reduced, the lead pitch is still 0.5 mm. The cost and complexity of implementing primary and secondary monitoring on a single device are reduced, but there is an increased danger of a similar failure mechanism damaging both circuits. The ATA 8670 IC is now available from Atmel. In contrast to other devices that utilize higher-voltage processes, each IC only employs a 30-V CMOS process and is capable of monitoring six cells. With a maximum string rating of 30V, each cell can only receive 5V. Each device also has two channels for measuring temperature, however only one temperature may be monitored at a time during each measurement cycle. The device can do simultaneous voltage measurements, which is a unique feature that is unusual in the market, thanks to the independent ADCs per measurement channel. The gadget has the capacity to balance dissipative cells utilizing a discharge resistor and external transistor.

The Atmel product differs from other devices in that it does not depend on a level-shifting analog multiplexer and instead employs a single ADC for each cell monitoring channel. ADCs have 12 bits each. A 20 mV maximum inaccuracy is allowed. The MAX 11068, MAX17830, MAX11080, and MAX11081 products are available from Maxim. The MAX 17830 is the second-generation suggested replacement for the MAX11068, which is no longer advised for new designs. However, information about the new component is still not readily accessible to the general public. Each of the MAX11068 and the successor MAX17830 can monitor up to 12 cells with a voltage range of 0 to 5 volts per cell. 80-V semiconductor technology is used to construct the devices.

In contrast to most other devices, which utilize the SPI protocol, the interface between the devices employs the level-shifted I2C protocol. The 11068 devices use 75 A in standby mode and only 1 A while shutting down. In contrast to many other devices, including the MAX17830, which is recommended as a replacement, the MAX11068 has integrated cell balancing switches with a switching capacity of up to 200 mA. For secondary protection, over- and under-voltage detection is provided by the MAX11080 and MAX11081. With an external capacitor, the devices' fixed hysteresis of 300 mV or 37.5 mV and fault wait period are programmable. The normal precision for overvoltage detection is 5 mV, the typical accuracy for undervoltage detection is 100 mV, however the latter is more constrained.

Lithium-ion battery stack monitoring is a hot area of research for numerous semiconductor manufacturers for high-volume OEM applications. Due to worries about intellectual property, there are a number of gadgets that, as of the time of this writing, have not been made available to the general public apart from end customers who may show a strong desire. Extensive stack monitor consultation It is suggested for IC suppliers to comprehend the most recent goods, some of which could still be in the development stage. To prevent mistakes made during the introduction of other competing gadgets, manufacturers that are supplying first-generation items should be given more inspection.

Selection of Components Microprocessor

When choosing a microprocessor for a battery management system application, the same safety-critical control electronics requirements apply. A variety of devices from several vendors may be utilized to create an efficient battery management system. Here are a few crucial points to remember. Safety-critical systems should be resistant to sporadic microcontroller software corruption. In a conventional SRAM, there is a chance of 2,000 failures every 109 operational hours owing to random interactions between the microcontroller and the environment changing a single memory bit. These sorts of occurrences will have a less impact if an MCU with ECC memory is used.

In the past, a lot of functional safety-rated designs depended on the usage of numerous MCUs to provide the necessary safety standards for functions with high danger ratings. Several suppliers were providing all-in-one designs at the time of writing that, in their opinion, were qualified for use in these applications. Numerous microprocessors provide safety-rated MCUs for safety-critical applications like battery management systems and contain sophisticated features for functional safety, such as multiple cores, lock-step operation, and error-correcting internal memory.

Other Elements

Especially vulnerable to high voltage breakdowns are connectors. The voltage ratings that many connectors can accept are constrained, and they often don't have separate chambers in both parts of the connection system for distinct terminals. If the connections are not installed carefully, connectors lacking this characteristic are very vulnerable to pin-to-pin shorting. This is especially true with D-subminiature computer components, which should never be utilized in high-voltage applications owing to the risk of short-circuit and subsequent damage. It could make sense to employ a connection with wider pin-to-pin spacings for high-voltage inputs and a more common connector for low-voltage control and power signals in order to fulfill creepage and clearance distance requirements.

Consider the possibility of connecting these connectors incorrectly and applying unexpectedly large or negative voltages across cell sense connections when numerous connectors are used in a minimally distributed design to bring cell voltage sense connections to a battery management system module. The danger of an erroneous connection is increased even if using more connections may lessen hazards related to the maximum voltage contained in any one connector or bundle. For all high-voltage connections, connector keying should be employed. It is available with numerous series of connectors up to a few configurations. Small surface mount resistors' voltage values are seldom thought about and may be rather low in comparison to the voltages found within battery management systems. Achieving the specified power may really be difficult without going above the voltage rating since the voltage rating often has nothing to do with the resistors' power rating and resistance value[7], [8].

Circuit Design The fact that the connections to the high-voltage battery stack are constantly active is a crucial factor to take into account. For months or years of operation, these connections will be subjected to constant high voltages with little to no power outages. If short circuits occur, large-format systems are capable of providing enough current to start fires in electronic components. Such operating requirements are not common for electronic circuits. This is also true for many control voltage inputs, but since the battery stack involves larger voltages, the dangers are considerably greater. The implications of any component failure that could result in a "soft" short across the high voltage battery stack, between individual cells, or between groups of cells should be taken into account. A short circuit failure of filter capacitors or TVS diodes might result in a fire.

CONCLUSION

The performance and longevity of batteries and energy storage devices may be greatly impacted by excessive self-discharge, which is a serious problem. It may result in lower energy storage capacity, a shorter shelf life, and worse overall performance. It is brought on by a number of variables, including internal chemical interactions, ambient conditions, and manufacturing flaws. Optimizing battery chemistry and design, managing environmental conditions during storage, putting in place correct storage and maintenance procedures, and deploying cutting-edge battery management systems and charging/discharging algorithms are all steps taken to reduce excessive self-discharge. The precise detection and quantification of self-discharge, as well as the implementation of efficient mitigation techniques in various applications and situations, continue to present hurdles. In order to ensure the dependable and effective functioning of batteries and energy storage systems, it is essential to comprehend the causes, effects, and mitigation techniques for excessive self-discharge. The advancement of more effective, long-lasting, and environmentally friendly battery technology for a variety of applications will be facilitated by further study and innovation in this field.

REFERENCES:

[1] E. Alevronta *et al.*, “Dose-response relationships of intestinal organs and excessive mucus discharge after gynaecological radiotherapy,” *PLoS One*, 2021, doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0250004.

[2] F. Tong, X. Chen, S. Wei, J. Malmström, J. Vella, and W. Gao, “Microstructure and battery performance of Mg-Zn-Sn alloys as anodes for magnesium-air battery,” *J. Magnes. Alloy.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.jma.2021.08.022.

[3] W. Madej and A. Wojciechowski, “Analysis of the charging and discharging process of

LiFePO4 battery pack," *Energies*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/en14134055.

[4] A. Bubakar and M. Amiruddin, "Clinical Aspects Fluor Albus of Female and Treatment," *Indones. J. …*, 2012.

[5] H. Zhao *et al.*, "Chain-Elongated Ionic Liquid Electrolytes for Low Self-Discharge All-Solid-State Supercapacitors at High Temperature," *ChemSusChem*, 2021, doi: 10.1002/cssc.202101294.

[6] K. Sakane, Y. Kanzaki, T. Ito, and M. Hoshiga, "Motivational interviewing as a new approach to improve outcome through self-care behavioural changes in advanced heart failure patient: A case report," *Eur. Hear. J. - Case Reports*, 2021, doi: 10.1093/ehjcr/ytab395.

[7] T. Dilmi, A. Dakhouche, M. Benaicha, and H. Latelli, "Mechanism of action of tin on the semi-conductive properties of PbO layer in lead acid battery," *Mater. Tech.*, 2021, doi: 10.1051/mattech/2021019.

[8] J. Lai, Q. Lu, Y. Xu, and S. Hu, "Severe water intoxication and secondary depressive syndrome in relation to delusional infestation," *Neuropsychiatr. Dis. Treat.*, 2016, doi: 10.2147/NDT.S102993.

CHAPTER 17

COMMON TECHNIQUES TO AVOID HAZARD OF BATTERY

Shashank Mishra, Assistant Professor
Department of Electrical Engineering, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email id- shashank.09305161@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

The hazard of battery failure can be mitigated through various common techniques. This abstract provides an overview of techniques used to avoid hazards associated with batteries. Firstly, proper battery selection and sizing is crucial in avoiding hazards. Selecting batteries that are appropriate for the intended application and ensuring they are sized correctly based on the power requirements can prevent overloading, overheating, and other hazards. Secondly, implementing appropriate charging and discharging practices is essential in avoiding battery hazards. Following manufacturer's recommendations for charging and discharging rates, avoiding overcharging or over discharging, and using appropriate charging equipment can prevent hazards such as thermal runaway, excessive self-discharge, and overvoltage. Thirdly, monitoring battery parameters is crucial in avoiding hazards. Utilizing battery management systems (BMS) or other monitoring techniques to continuously monitor battery parameters such as state of charge, temperature, and voltage can provide early warning of potential hazards and allow for timely intervention.

KEYWORDS:

Chemical Reaction, Discharge, Electrochemical, Electrode, Energy.

INTRODUCTION

Upgrading certain components to provide a larger buffer between the operating voltage and the maximum rating in order to lower the danger of a short circuit. The use of many capacitors connected in series to prevent a short circuit from occurring across a large potential in the event that a single device experiences a short circuit. Since mechanical failures often result in shorted capacitors, it is a good idea to position the capacitors at right angles to one another to prevent the devices from being exposed to the same mechanical stresses that may theoretically result in the same kind of failure. A crowbar circuit may be used to stop a bad thing from happening, but it typically renders the device useless. Between the high-voltage source and the component that might fail due to a short circuit, a fuse is put that will blow in the case of a short circuit.

It is often crucial that a battery management system can connect to battery cells even when the control power is turned off. This might put certain semiconductor devices at risk of CMOS latch-up. A CMOS device may experience an internal short if a voltage is supplied to its inputs or outputs prior to the presence of a power source, which typically results in the device's destruction. A architecture that precludes CMOS latch-up is necessary since the cells always display a voltage upon connection. For these circumstances, a comprehensive test strategy is also necessary. Directly linked ICs to cells should be built utilizing silicon-on-insulator or latch-up-resistant trench technology, or they should be suitably safeguarded using external devices that prevent CMOS devices from latching up. The usage of PCB traces as fusible connections has several dangers. The PCB manufacturing method does not guarantee the perfect control of the conductor's cross-section or thermal resistance to the environment, which are required for a fuse's constant clearing current. A trace's capacity to fuse May also fire the PCB substrate or splatter copper onto adjacent components, creating additional potential issues. Instead, cheap surface-mount fuses might be used for this purpose.

Problems developing during the installation of a battery management system if all battery cells are not connected to the measurement circuit simultaneously are another significant consequence of the aforementioned issue. In the majority of circumstances, the connection order cannot be guaranteed using conventional wiring methods and connections. Although many ICs have created inbuilt protective circuitry to deal with these two problems, this failure mode still has to be properly confirmed via analysis and testing. This failure scenario might reappear at the module level if multiple kinds of ICs for primary and secondary monitoring are combined. To make sure that the voltage present at the inputs never exceeds the device power rail voltages, external clamping diodes might be employed.

In many situations, the high-voltage cells themselves are used to power the battery management system components. In this situation, it is crucial to take into account the voltage range that the devices will encounter across the whole SOC range in which the cells will function, both during normal and pathological operations. Connected components may be driven above their maximum permissible ratings if a cell self-discharges, is misused, or is overcharged, causing it to drop to an extremely low voltage. While it may be acceptable that precise voltage measurements are no longer attainable during severe overcharge or overdischarge, care must be taken to ensure that circuit components do not overheat or provide incorrect results when subjected to excessive cell voltages. A detailed component-level failure mode analysis should be carried out for circuits that potentially result in high-voltage short circuits, possible isolation faults, or ground faults[1].

DISCUSSION

Layout

As was previously said, layout operations should make sure that the PCB assembly maintains the necessary creepage and clearance distances. To avoid the possibility of a layer-to-layer failure, keep the high-voltage circuits on the PCB separated and outline all isolation barriers clearly across all layers. A breakdown between components and mounting features or enclosures is more likely when high-voltage components are placed close to the edge of the PCB.

EMC

To achieve electromagnetic compatibility for battery management system products, switching power electronics, large currents and power levels, and sensitive analog measurements provide a considerable difficulty. The susceptibility and emissions of the device to dc and low-frequency magnetic fields are two aspects of EMC design and testing that are often disregarded in the creation of battery management systems. Along with the batteries themselves, dc flowing through busbars, cables, and other interconnects also contributes to the creation of the dc magnetic fields. Most large-format systems have extremely high battery currents, which produce powerful fields. Many electronic systems are not subjected to dc magnetic fields of this strength. Furthermore, battery management systems may employ or include Hall Effect or Magneto-strictive current sensors, both of which are susceptible to the effects of static fields.

The high-current channel of the battery pack is often coupled to switching power electronics, which might result in conducted emissions at or above the electronics' switching frequency as a result of harmonics. Strong ac fields with a dc offset in the 12-200 kHz region might result from this, possibly interfering with control electronics. It is challenging to reproduce the various voltage inputs for the battery cell stack attached to the battery management system during EMC testing with any kind of power source. Use battery systems or smaller-format battery cells as an option.

The high-precision, high-accuracy character of battery management system components must be taken into account during EMC testing. Many EMC tests primarily check for blatant mistakes and failures. A battery management system may malfunction if it reports the battery's capacity incorrectly due to inaccurate voltage readings. The battery management system software should be able to do a plausibility analysis on fast changes in voltage and current and take necessary responses. While under severe disruptions it may be acceptable to encounter mistakes in voltage and current measurement. It is OK for the battery to ride through a brief disruption if it is performing close to its normal specifications. System shutdown could be the only method to guarantee safe operation during extended interruptions or when battery systems are working near to their limitations.

For an accurate reading in a strong field, the high-current path's routing as well as the location and orientation of the sensor are crucial. Current injection makes voltage measurement inputs that are intended to have high impedance susceptible to current-mode noise. Large voltage errors may be caused by even little currents. The interaction between low-voltage and high-voltage systems when the two are segregated is a crucial area in which there are few EMC/EMI regulations. The risks connected to Y capacitance have previously been covered. Precision measurements in isolated systems are also connected with a severe system performance problem. There are several variations from the ideal scenario in which the two systems are totally separated from one another.

A very low current may travel across the isolator during system operation, and isolators that are almost usually included in the battery management system introduce a very high resistance between the two sides of the isolator. Additionally, there is capacitive connectivity between the two sides in the form of both Y-capacitors that were inserted on purpose and parasitic capacitances. A measuring resistance might be inserted between the high-voltage stack and the earth ground during routine ground fault measurements. These three factors may combine to provide performance issues for different kinds of measurements. The presence of Y-capacitances might affect the accuracy of a ground fault measurement when it comes to the charging of the RC circuit created by the Y-capacitances and the measurement circuit.

Electrical Architectures

Hardware will be needed to enable a transition out of the sleep mode if a sleep mode is created that shuts down the CPU to minimize power consumption to a very low level. A directive to connect the battery to the load, which is often sent by a digital input signal or a network command, is the most frequent need for this.

The hardware wakeup of a battery management system may be caused by certain network signals, however only certain instructions may cause the battery management system to become an active node and start broadcasting. Digital signal transitions or states coming from the load device asking the battery to do something. In unique circumstances, such as bench testing where the battery management system is not linked to a battery system, digital input pins may be utilized to wake the battery management system. Connection to an external charger. Periodic checks of the battery's status that are prompted by an internal real-time clock or timer circuit.

Manufacturing

Because battery management system components are safety-critical, it is imperative that any manufacturing flaws do not negate the care taken in their design. Manufacturers of battery management systems often provide warranties that reflect the finest levels of craftsmanship. An applicable standard for acceptable workmanship for printed circuit board assemblies intended for battery management system application is IPC Standard 610, Class 3. Accuracy of trace spacing and trace widths, which might jeopardize creepage and clearance lengths owing to layer misalignment, need to be given special attention. Before the panels are filled with components, they should undergo a thorough electrical inspection to make sure there are no shorts or openings. Unacceptable panels should not be reworked or "X-out" whole procedure a coordinated team that is well-versed in the effects of numerous process failure modes on the eventual overall battery system in the proposed application should perform the FMEA[2].

Tin whiskering is an issue that has surfaced since several electronic component manufacturers recently switched to lead-free soldering techniques. Tin whiskers may form on PCB surfaces, which can result in component shorting at high relative voltages and heat events within the battery management system or the battery system. It is important to assess the success rates of lead-free manufacturing procedures in preventing tin whiskering. High temperatures and high humidity encourage the formation of tin whiskers, and the extent to which this risk has been avoided may be determined using a suitable test strategy. The finished printed circuit board is just the beginning of the amount of attention. The use of enclosures might be dangerous. Enclosures with dents or irregular shapes may come into contact with dangerous voltages or limit creepage and clearance distances. A major short-circuit danger within a module is caused by loose fasteners or damaged components. Especially with liquid-applied sealing solutions, sealing might be compromised by missing or improperly placed seals, enclosure damage, or process variation. To prevent the introduction of metallic debris during the installation of these fasteners, it is important to carefully analyze the use of thread-cutting or thread-forming screws to enhance manufacturability.

Software Development

Modern battery management systems need software to make intricate assessments of internal battery characteristics using cutting-edge models and algorithms, as well as to respond swiftly and effectively to any safety threats. If battery systems are to function successfully, the expectation that the software should make these choices appropriately and promptly must be realized. Software may be broadly defined as a system that converts a collection of inputs into a set of desired outputs. This processing must not only take place accurately each time in a real-time system, but also within a certain amount of time. In certain situations, responding too late might be just as ineffectual as doing nothing at all. Modern battery management systems must correctly handle time-critical events like automated battery disconnect during a battery-powered vehicle crash, disconnecting the battery in the event that an interlock is opened, and reducing power limits as the battery gets closer to the edge of the safe operating area.

A crucial element of real-time, safety-critical systems is determinism. Regular fault checking should take place. If an issue is found, it should be ensured through design analysis that the response will happen in a set maximum time, independent of the circumstances the battery management system encounters. If the developer is unfamiliar with real-time systems, there are a number of factors that might cause the software's responsiveness to decline that may go unnoticed. The predictable execution of software programs may be hampered by the usage of interruptions. Although they are necessary for the implementation of contemporary systems, they must be utilized carefully to avoid issues. Exercise considerable care while using hardware-triggered interrupts. Hardware interruptions provide external circuits the ability to alter the control flow timing in a manner that the software may not be able to correct. If this kind of hardware interrupt cannot be avoided, appropriate hardware filtering or glitch elimination must always be utilized. Another potential cause of erratic execution time is nested interruptions with priority levels.

Keep interrupt service routines brief, limited in number, and decision-free as a general rule. The basic rule is that an interrupt service routine should be run in response to the receipt of a piece of information; this information should be collected to make way for the next one and put someplace to be handled later as part of the usual deterministic program execution[3]. Software performance issues are often caused by crowded or overloaded communications buses. "Safety valves" are components that interrupt-driven message retrieval procedures should include to guard against overly high execution rates. Although the loss of messages can prevent the system from functioning properly, this is typically preferable than the loss of time-critical performance or the potential for the program to be prevented from responding in real time. Testing under the worst possible normal and overload conditions is advantageous and may show how well the system can recover.

Safety-Requirement Software

The choice of programming language used in the creation of the battery management system software will depend on the degree of safety necessary. The C language has a variety of drawbacks for safety-critical applications, despite being the de facto standard for many sectors and applications. Access to low-level memory, dynamic allocation, and weak typing may result in hidden software flaws that do not surface during standard testing but may nevertheless have unexpected outcomes. For automotive and other safety-critical applications, the Motor Industry Software Research Association suggests using a subset of the C programming language. Numerous procedures and builds that have been deemed harmful are prevented by MISRA C. These activities may impair the determinism of the program, may have unanticipated side effects that are unlikely to be discovered, or may result in problems like memory leaks that result in erratic software failures.

For instance, it's best to stay away from using dynamic memory allocation, which is often used when creating software for desktop PC programs, in safety-critical embedded systems. Although vast arrays of data with varying sizes must be maintained, this sort of data is not often found in embedded controllers, therefore dynamic allocation is beneficial in such applications. Memory management mistakes like memory leaks, overwriting of important data, or memory exhaustion may result in disastrous software failures and cause applications to crash or memory violations that destroy data needed to make choices that are safety-critical. Advanced approaches should not be used because they carry high risks. Examples include the use of dynamic allocation, extensive indirec- tion, self-modifying code, and functions with numerous entry and exit points.

Software for battery management systems have to be regarded as safety-critical. If dangerous battery conditions arise, safety relies on quick responses from the battery management system. The program might be divided between parts that are safety-critical and those that are not. Software elements in charge of fault detection and response, voltage and temperature measurement, current measurement, and isolation detection are likely to be crucial for system safety in this kind of system. Applications will determine whether certain operations, such as SOC and limit calculation, are regarded as safety-critical[4].

Design Goals

The ALARP concept for risk is often used as a design guideline for creating safety-related systems. This suggests that hazards should be minimized to the absolute minimum. That being said, hazards cannot be entirely minimized. It also does not imply that the technological approach with the lowest risk is picked. It indicates that the severity of the risks' related hazards must be balanced against the expense of preventing them. Risks should be avoided unless the costs are excessively high compared to the advantages of doing so. It is critical for battery management system designers to demonstrate that due diligence was exercised and that the product design and execution represent a suitable degree of safety for the application.

Software Safety-Critical Analysis

Software analysis may be done using a variety of methods and tools, and it is recommended that it be done for any programs that are deemed to be safety-critical. The most fundamental kind of study or examination is peer review. All embedded control systems should promote software peer review, at the very least for the most important parts of the code. Teams creating software for battery management systems should have a rigorous process for code review. Code may be examined by static analysis tools like LISP or QA/C for a variety of possible problems. These tools may be used to find potentially risky constructions with undesirable side effects or that may run in a manner that was not intended by the coder, as well as to assure compliance with coding standards like MISRA. Both internal specifications of numerous OEMs in different markets and standards like ISO 26262 strongly advise the usage of static analysis tools.

Protection and Validation

Battery management system validation should adhere to a strict process that ensures that validation cases exist for every requirement, especially those connected with safety-critical functions. It is impossible to simulate a modern embedded system with a full array of test vectors that cover every scenario that may be encountered. A reliable virtual battery pack environment is essential to thoroughly evaluate the battery management system since many of the test conditions call for reproducing circumstances that are dangerous to do so with real batteries. The voltage, temperature, and current signals, as well as any message networks and other inputs and outputs necessary to duplicate the environment in which the battery management system functions, must all be replicated by a surrogate test system. Battery management systems have very few possibilities for a consistent testing platform, and the equipment needed is sometimes quite specialized. The optimal testing environment has the gear required to: Accurately reproduce battery cell voltages. Since the majority of battery management systems have an accuracy of 1–

10 mV, test equipment should be able to provide cell voltage signals with an error range of 0.25–2.5 mV. The outputs of these cell voltage signals must be sufficiently isolated from the test system ground in order to allow them to be connected in series to form a high-voltage stack, much as they would in a real battery pack. In addition, these channels must function as a source and perhaps a sink of current since the battery management system will also handle cell balance. The battery management system's capacity for cell balancing currents must be matched to these current ratings. The voltages have to be individually addressable with an update rate that is at least twice as fast as the sample rate used for measurement by the battery management system. A voltage source that can source and sink current as well as give precise output voltage and current measurement is referred to as an SMU.

Also provide realistic current and temperature simulations. Thermistors may be simulated using a voltage source or a variable resistance device; the latter is often less costly but might not be able to simulate short-circuit and open-circuit states. Properly reproduce dynamic battery conditions. A model that replicates the behavior of the plant being modeled must be used to drive the measurements of voltage, current, and temperature. If the ability to do real-time impedance detection, SOC estimates, and SOH calculations are to be represented, then these values need to update synchronously in real time as they would in a real battery system. The battery management system's model must work with the same level of realism as the test model, or preferably greater[5], [6].

Simulate fault conditions like ground/isolation faults, broken wires, contactors that don't open or close, short and open circuits in sensor connections, exceeding battery limits, off-scale high and low readings, improbable input combinations, as well as battery failures like extreme capacity and state of charge imbalance, self-discharge, excessive impedance, and rapid capacity loss. To ensure that the reaction time is acceptable, carry out high-speed detection of battery management system responds to critical fault circumstances. Simulate overload circumstances such increased communication message frequency and volume, over- or undercharging, and the absence of slave devices.

Since high voltages will also be present in the battery management system test fixture, suitable safety, guarding, emergency stop, and insulation/isolation precautions must be included. Although there aren't many suppliers or tools that are standardized for testing battery management systems, a number of devices have emerged to meet the need for automated battery management system validation[7], [8]. A variety of battery simulators with PXI form factors are available from Pickering Instruments. These devices can imitate the voltages of battery cells. The devices enable 300 mA discharge/100 mA charge per channel to facilitate cell balance and are suited for battery stack voltages up to 750 VDC. A partial simulation of battery cells may be created by connecting each device's six independent channels in series.

CONCLUSION

To sum up, reducing the risks connected to batteries necessitates the use of standard techniques like proper battery selection and sizing, appropriate charging and discharging practices, battery parameter monitoring, proper storage and transportation practices, and routine maintenance and inspection. These methods work together to reduce the risk of things like fire, leakage, thermal runaway, overcharging, over discharging, excessive self-discharge, and overcharging. The safe and dependable functioning of batteries in a variety of applications depends on adhering to best practices in battery management and keeping up with safety norms and laws. Prioritizing safety procedures is essential while working with batteries to reduce hazards and safeguard people, property, and the environment.

REFERENCES:

[1] Mauger, Julien, Paolella, Armand, and Zaghib, "Building Better Batteries in the Solid State: A Review," *Materials (Basel).*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/ma12233892.

[2] A. Mauger, C. M. Julien, A. Paolella, M. Armand, and K. Zaghib, "Building better batteries in the solid state: A review," *Materials*. 2019. doi: 10.3390/ma122333892.

[3] W. Pan, Y. Wang, H. Y. H. Kwok, and D. Y. C. Leung, "Aluminum-air battery with cotton substrate: Controlling the discharge capacity by electrolyte pre-deposition," *Green Energy Environ.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.gee.2021.05.003.

[4] C. Moran, J. M. Bennett, and P. Prabhakharan, "The relationship between cognitive function and hazard perception in younger drivers," *Transp. Res. Part F Traffic Psychol. Behav.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.trf.2020.08.008.

[5] M. Li, Y. Liu, X. Wang, and J. Zhang, "Modeling and optimization of an enhanced battery thermal management system in electric vehicles," *Front. Mech. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s11465-018-0520-z.

[6] T. M. N. Bui, M. F. Niri, D. Worwood, T. Q. Dinh, and J. Marco, "An Advanced Hardware-in-the-Loop Battery Simulation Platform for the Experimental Testing of Battery Management System," in *2019 23rd International Conference on Mechatronics Technology, ICMT 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/ICMECT.2019.8932115.

[7] M. Shen, Q. Gao, Y. Wang, and T. S. Zhang, "Design and analysis of battery thermal management system for electric vehicle," *Zhejiang Daxue Xuebao (Gongxue Ban)/Journal Zhejiang Univ. (Engineering Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.3785/j.issn.1008-973X.2019.07.020.

[8] C. Wei, M. Benosman, and T. Kim, "Online Parameter Identification for State of Power Prediction of Lithium-ion Batteries in Electric Vehicles Using Extremum Seeking," *Int. J. Control. Autom. Syst.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s12555-018-0506-y.

CHAPTER 18

MODEL IMPLEMENTATION FOR BATTERY

Mayur Agarwal, Assistant Professor
Department of Electrical Engineering, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email id- mayurag1@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Model implementation plays a vital role in the design and analysis of battery systems, ranging from electric vehicles to grid energy storage. This abstract provides an overview of the key aspects of model implementation in the context of battery applications. By emphasizing the significance of battery models in predicting and optimizing battery performance. Battery models are essential tools for estimating state of charge, state of health, and predicting battery behavior under various operating conditions. Discusses the key steps involved in model implementation for batteries, including model selection, parameter estimation, and model validation. Proper model selection is critical, as it determines the accuracy and reliability of the predictions. Parameter estimation involves identifying and estimating the model parameters based on measured or simulated data, while model validation ensures that the model performs well against real-world data.

KEYWORDS:

Circuit, Electrochemical, Equivalent Circuit, Implementation, Lithium-ion, Model.

INTRODUCTION

When a reliable battery model is created, it has to be integrated into the battery management system's embedded controller to provide real-time battery status estimation. There are many techniques to do this, including automatic software code creation from a model-based development environment like MATLAB/Simulink. It is necessary to determine the model's operational scope. The model should ideally be able to produce the SOC, SOH, and power restrictions for each cell that the battery management system monitors. The findings of each individual cell may then be cascaded to provide outcomes at the pack level. The individual cell capacities, SOC, and system balancing abilities will all affect the pack-level SOC. Assume that cell n has the capacity Cn and state of charge SOCn that are common to all cells. The differences between cell capacity and SOC are often negligible, allowing for simplifications. If the capacity discrepancies are insignificant, then the condition of balance is the sole factor affecting the capacity that is accessible. The difference in state of charge between the most charged and least charged cells, multiplied by the nominal cell capacity, lowers the effective pack capacity.

For certain applications, particularly those involving huge numbers of cells, the processing power necessary to execute the whole model on all of them may be prohibitively expensive. In this case, a complexity reduction is necessary to get respectable performance with a decreased computational cost. Many situations are conceivable. Running the model on an average cell voltage or pack voltage is the least time-consuming option. This just calls for running one instance of the model at a time but comes with a number of drawbacks, especially if the cells are not evenly matched. The capacity and amp-hour mismatch between the various cells has an impact on the overall available capacity, as was previously mentioned in the context of the entire model implementation. These imbalances' effects won't be properly captured by an average-voltage model. Furthermore, if an average voltage is applied to a pack that is unbalanced, the SOC-OCV curve's form will be altered. Another strategy would be to utilize the median cell, which is the cell that best depicts the pack's typical state and excludes the information-distorting consequences of collecting data from outlying cells.

With further information, it is theoretically feasible to calculate the entire pack state of charge from only two cells' SOCs: the cell with the fewest available amp-hours for charging and the cell with the fewest available for discharging. The cells with the lowest and highest voltages do not necessarily reflect the two crucial cells for calculating total pack SOC since, as was previously said, these elements are the combined influence of both cell SOC and capacity. The fact that these two crucial cells are often not the same cells throughout the course of the battery system's life—since capacities and state of balance are ephemeral measurements that fluctuate over time—adds to the problem's complexity. The fact that these values often move very slowly and need the collecting of large amounts of data further complicates the situation.

DISCUSSION

Balancing

Cell balancing processes alter each cell's available energy. The current that flows as a result of cell balancing differs for each cell, unlike the battery's total current, and is often not monitored by current sensors. A battery model may automatically correct for the impacts of cell balancing if the balancing current is minimal relative to the battery's capacity since many battery models are designed to be forgiving of tiny mistakes in process and measurement. An active compensating approach should be used if the balancing current is greater since mistakes in SOC and other estimated values may continue to exist. The balancing current must be computed based on the kind of balancing circuit employed and the cell voltage, assuming that individual current sensors are not available for each cell. One may combine and subtract this current from the amp-hour capacity of the cells being discharged. Because energy may be transferred between cells in active balancing circuits, this computation may become more difficult.

Effect of Temperature on State of Charge Prediction

It has been explored how temperature affects the capacity that is accessible. Even if it is assumed that all cells have a known temperature and that an exact capacity value can be calculated for each cell as a function of temperature, this is not sufficient to estimate run-time accurately, particularly when batteries are being thermally managed. The entire available capacity for that charge cycle will be determined by the temperature at the conclusion of the discharge if it is anticipated that the temperature will fluctuate while the battery is in use. To accurately estimate available capacity, the temperature at the end of the discharge must be estimated if the temperature is not being tightly regulated by a thermal management system.

The three main sources of heat transmission into the battery cells are internal heat production from battery self-heating, passive heat transfer between the battery cells and their surroundings, and forced heat transfer via active thermal management. Based on the discharge current profile and ohmic resistance of the battery cells, internal heat production may be predicted. A lumped parameter model that specifies the heat capacities of different components and the thermal resistance of the interface between each may be used to predict passive heat transfer between the cells and the environment.

In many circumstances, the thermal management system's control strategy will be understood, and the commanded heat flow will depend on the battery's temperature. Since the total amount of heat movement that is still available throughout the remaining discharge period is reduced, the closer the battery is to the conclusion of the discharge, the more accurately the present temperature can predict the ultimate temperature.

In order to determine the entire expected remaining run time and self-heating, assumptions regarding the future rate of discharge must be made in order to provide a reasonable forecast of the end-of-discharge temperature. This is simple for certain applications when the current profile is known in advance, but more challenging for others[1].

Safety

Effective Safety

IEC 61508 and ISO 26262 are two standards that establish the idea of functional safety. These standards provide a collection of specifications and recommended procedures needed to specify, design, develop, test, and deploy systems that perform safety-critical functions. Functional safety is described as "the part of the overall safety of a system or piece of equipment that depends on the system or equipment operating correctly, in response to its inputs." To guarantee battery safety, a 1A battery management system must accurately react to inputs. Due to the risky nature of many battery circumstances, large-format lithium-ion battery systems often indicate that the battery management system must be created in accordance with an adequate functional safety standard.

Hazard Evaluation

Hazard analysis, as it relates to the battery management system, is the process of identifying potential risks that could arise if the system is unable to carry out one or more of its duties properly. Failure to prevent overcharge, over discharge, overcurrent, failure to prevent operation at extreme temperatures, failure to respond to a disconnect command, failure to interpret an open interlock signal, and failure to detect and address a ground fault are standard hazards that should almost always be taken into account. Without a fail-safe option, mission-critical battery systems may also be vulnerable to risks like overestimating the battery's state of charge, overestimating its health, underestimating its capacity, and failing to disconnect the battery if its operating limits are exceeded. A degree of risk is ascribed to each danger. The three elements of risk are severity, incidence, and controllability, according to ISO 26262 and IEC 61508.

The term "severity" refers to the highest degree of risk, harm, or injury that might be brought about by the occurrence of the hazard. It is crucial to realize that the degree of danger relies on the battery system as a whole, the application, and maybe even a single action or mode of operation. It also depends on how the battery management system is used. For instance, a battery-powered aircraft losing power while taxiing presents quite different circumstances from one losing power when in flight. Whether an aircraft is human or unmanned affects the severity in a different way. Consider the possibility that the battery cell and battery management system used in all of the aforementioned applications might be the same[2].

When discussing battery management systems, the hazard description has to be extremely detailed in order to address any possible issues with the battery management system alone, as opposed to the whole battery system or application. As an example, battery overdischarge, albeit undesirable, may happen when a device is disconnected for an extended length of time owing to self-discharge without any fault whatsoever in the battery management system. The related battery management system function can be to recognize overcharging and stop an overdischarged battery from operating. As a result, the danger is really "failure to prevent operation of an overdischarged battery."

Again, there is no battery management system failure associated with this risky scenario when the battery system is exposed to external heat sources that cause it to heat up to a point where thermal runaway occurs. While a battery system should always take into account the proper levels of protection against external heating and fire, it is not reasonable to depend on the battery management system to stop overheating and thermal runaway in severe circumstances. However, it is logical to presume that a working battery management system is necessary to reliably gauge battery temperature and to cut off the battery from the load or to reduce current flow in any other case if the battery starts to overheat. A battery management system risk would result from failing to do so. It is often assumed that the battery management system would react to safety signals or interlock circuits that show that the system has been put into a hazardous condition. An electric shock danger might arise from the activation of a battery system during repair or maintenance as a consequence of improper interpretation of these signals.

The word "occurrence" refers to the frequency or likelihood of the circumstances in which the danger could manifest. For instance, only when the battery is linked to an energy source can charging, and thus overcharging, take place. The batteries in the aforementioned scenario are unlikely to ever face very cold temperatures if they are put in a climate-controlled structure in a temperate location. In this case, the word "occurrence" refers to the occurrence of the circumstances that must exist before a risk may exist; it does not refer to the risk itself, which is often considerably smaller. For instance, overcharging might happen whenever the battery is charged; charging is often a circumstance that occurs rather frequently, but overcharging should be quite uncommon. In contrast, battery system maintenance happens significantly less often, therefore a risk that may harm maintenance staff could have a lower incidence rating.

The degree to which the maximum danger level indicated by the severity rating may potentially be averted is referred to as controllability. Think of a medical gadget that might be external or implanted. However, there is a considerably larger likelihood that this serious outcome may be averted with the external device than there is with the internal one. The greatest amount of human harm connected with a battery fire might be the same in both situations.

Numerous battery management system risks have been discovered to have the potential to result in battery fires, explosions, or other thermal events. Unless a limit on the total energy released can be determined, it is sometimes extremely difficult to establish an upper bound on the severity of fire dangers. If there are other sources of fuel, the overall amount of energy released in a fire may be more than the thermal release potential of the batteries themselves. Small systems may be able to demonstrate that the greatest amount of harm or destruction is quite constrained, yet flames often spread and result in substantial harm and destruction. It also alters how often certain battery management system dangers that might cause fire occur. Only when the battery system is charged are "failure to prevent overcharge" risks feasible, however many grid storage systems and electric cars with regenerative braking include systems that might be charged at any moment during normal battery operation. Another frequent source of thermal events is overcurrent, however passive overcurrent devices are often used to stop overcurrents. Operation at high temperatures or failing to activate thermal management or fire suppression are further potential causes.

Electric shock is another potentially harmful outcome in many risky situations. The energy level of the electrical source affects the maximum possible intensity of an electric shock. Receiving a shock often requires that the battery be damaged in some way, that the battery is being serviced, and that protective coverings or devices have been taken off. This should be reflected in the exposure estimates for shock risks. Shock dangers may be better controlled by using appropriate grounding systems, touch-safe components like connectors, numerous layers of insulation, and minimizing Y-capacitances. A battery management system that is unable to recognize an open interlock circuit may result in a dangerous situation that might result in a shock hazard[3].

For many systems, the ability to detect ground or isolation problems is essential. The greatest severity of a ground fault that goes unnoticed depends on the system architecture. If more problems arise or accidentally during repair contact is established between battery components and earth ground, ground faults may result in shock dangers or battery short circuits. Failure of the battery management system to identify the ground fault is not sufficient for the emergence of a dangerous condition; the ground fault itself must also exist.

Based on these three evaluations, the danger is given a risk rating. High danger ratings will make the design process too hard, thus it is crucial that they be allocated correctly. It is necessary to understand both the load application and the whole battery system when rating the battery hazards. It may be useful to separate risks related with individual cells from those associated with all cells or a significant number of cells when dealing with large-format lithium-ion systems. For instance, it can be helpful to think of the following as three distinct dangers, each with a different severity and controllability rating: Failure to stop a single cell from being overcharged, an entire module from being overcharged, or the complete battery pack from being overcharged.

To increase the specificity of the danger description, it is vital to comprehend the behavior of battery cells. For instance, if a margin of safety of 10% was successfully established during overcharge testing, an appropriate overcharge hazard may be "failure to prevent overcharge by 10% or more of a single cell." Overcharges of less than 10% may be classified as a separate hazard with a lower rating, or they may not be classified at all[4].

It has been mentioned that not all risks related to large-format lithium-ion battery systems are solely tied with battery management systems. This does not suggest that great caution, a high degree of competence, or testing are not necessary. This debate aims to make sure that the proper safety analysis is done on every component of the whole battery system. To handle dangers with high ratings for severity, incidence, and controllability, significant resources, complexity, and attention are needed. Hazard ratings will be accurate and won't add unnecessary expense to the design of the battery management system if there is a solid knowledge of the battery system and application.

Goals for Safety

There is a safety objective specified for each risk. The objective of safety is to control or avoid the occurrence of the risk. Each safety objective in functional safety frameworks is given a safety integrity level, which specifies the degree of caution and care that must be used to prevent the danger from happening.

According to ISO 26262, there are four Automotive Safety Integrity Levels for automotive systems, ranging from ASIL A to ASIL D. The utmost degree of caution and rigor must be used to avoid ASIL D hazards from arising since they nearly always result in fatalities or severe injuries. Similar Safety Integrity Levels, numbered SIL 1 through SIL 3, are defined by IEC 60518.

The relevant functional safety standard defines the actions that must be taken to comply with the standard for a certain safety integrity level. While some of the activities are associated with the engineering process, others are associated with the actual product. While some activities have more obscure measurements to assess whether the criterion is satisfied, others have well-defined criteria. The following are some examples of criteria for high-level safety goals: Show that there is a very low chance that a control system failure at random would result in a safety objective violation. Analyze formal deductive and inductive failures to find any ways that safety objectives could be broken. To avoid error-free source code being translated erroneously into assembly code that has a vulnerability, exclusively use qualified tools while developing software. Traceability across system, subsystem, and component requirements and validation scenarios should be shown. Utilize software language subsets like MISRA that are designed to lower the likelihood of certain faults.

Safety Ideas and Techniques

Safety concepts are discussed in ISO 26262 and IEC 61508. The approach used to achieve the safety objective and stop dangers from happening is known as the safety concept. In many control systems, including battery management systems, redundant measurement and control is an efficient way to meet safety objectives. It should always be expected that latent faults may exist in current embedded systems owing to the complexity of the hardware and software, hence there are an unknowable number of failure modes with a nonzero probability of occurring. By reproducing numerous versions of the vulnerable system, of either the same or different design, a redundant system seeks to lower the risks connected with these sorts of failures. Many of the stack monitoring chipset solutions on the market today allow these sorts of redundant designs, which may result in a more affordable implementation than one employing a solitary measurement and control channel while still providing the very high dependability required to eliminate high-level battery dangers[5].

Safety Reference Design

A strategy to include safety into the implementation of hardware, software, and mechanical design has been debated often, along with the necessity for integrated system safety, particular criteria for satisfying standards, and other related topics. This section will describe a potential answer to many of the problems that a contemporary, large-format battery management system has to solve. The usage of a redundant design achieves the high integrity to avoid hazardous failure modes and safety objective violation. Critical failure cases, such as overcharging or a flaw in the battery management system that stops contactors from opening, are avoided by the system by using a backup signal and control line.

It is decided to use main and secondary monitoring ICs in a redundant stack monitoring design. Only a few digital outputs are offered by the secondary monitor IC in the case of an overvoltage, undervoltage, or overtemperature malfunction. The internal level-shifting interface of the IC is used to transmit these signals from north to south. In a dispersed design, each slave module converts this signal to a chassis-referenced signal; in a monolithic design, just one isolation barrier is required at the lowest potential device. To help the master device distinguish between a disconnected signal and a genuine battery issue, this signal employs current-mode signaling or a PWM output.

Secondary monitoring capability is provided by a second, cheaper, lower-power microcontroller. This microcontroller's firmware is made as minimal as possible since it just controls safety. I2C or SPI are the two options for connecting the main CPU and the safety microcontroller. Conducted transients from one process- sor not impacting the other through the I2C/SPI link is prevented by a minimum of resistive separation. The power supplies for the two microprocessors have different designs, and in a perfect world, the safety protection micro-controller would have a more basic power supply architecture that could be less efficient but is more resilient to transients. To check that each microcontroller is operating properly, the two exchange a seed and key over the I2C/SPI interface. The two microcontrollers each have the ability to force a reset in the other.

A standard high-side drive switch with integrated short circuit protection and current sensing is used by the system contactors. A single low-side driver with integrated short circuit and overload protection controls each individual contactor. The safety microcontroller controls the high-side driver, while the main microcontroller controls each individual low-side driver. Both the high-side and low-side drivers must be activated for this architecture's high-side and low-side drivers to work properly. A single power supply transient cannot cause a failure when all contactor drive circuits are active because to the split power supply design and independent CPUs.

Continual Data Collection

The environment that the batteries have been exposed to throughout the course of their lifespan is often information that battery management systems are required to collect and retain. Storage of this kind of data should be anticipated to be part of the battery management system requirements since battery cell, system, and battery management system suppliers are all concerned about the dependence of battery life and performance on the operating history. To estimate battery utilization, simple scalar accumulators like total time in service, amp-hour throughput, and watt-hour throughput are often utilized. Counting cycles is another popular approach, however since many applications encounter partial cycles with varied depths of discharge and charge, the concept of what makes up a single cycle may often change from application to application. Maximum and lowest current as well as SOC may be helpful in specific situations.

Understanding the past of temperature extremes is also crucial. Maximum and lowest temperature data are helpful, but they only provide a general idea of the potential reason of a system issue brought on by exposure to severe temperatures. Integration of temperature with respect to time also falls short of accurately describing the thermal environment the battery has encountered since many temperature effects are nonlinear[6]. Discretizing the temperature space into a limited number of temperature ranges and the operating period into time packets is a simple but effective method. Following that, a more exact description of the operation history is given, including the duration of time spent at high and low temperatures.

This method may be expanded to produce a temperature and SOC two-dimensional matrix. The total amp-hour throughput in charge and discharge might be recorded at each condition in addition to running time. The third driving component for deterioration rates, the battery current, may be included by extending the two-dimensional matrix into a third dimension. A record of the total time spent at each state for a particular range of rate, temperature, and SOC provides a clear picture of the battery's overall operating history, which may be used to assess the effects of each of these variables on battery life.

A data record may also be necessary in response to certain noteworthy occurrences. Many applications need that, in the case of a battery malfunction, the system status be recorded. The diagnosis of the fault situation benefits from a snapshot of the battery voltages, currents, temperatures, and state of charge as well as the status of other inputs and outputs. In order to preserve system safety, contactors can typically only open a certain number of times when under load. If this is a problem, the battery management system need to keep track of these occurrences and flag the need for a new contactor[7], [8]. According to the application, large-format lithium ion battery systems often have service lifetimes of 5 to 20 years, therefore the capacity to capture and retain data should allow data collection over such a long period. The specifications for nonvolatile devices, which usually have a maximum number of write/erase cycles, will be driven by this.

Depending on the application, the process for obtaining recorded data from the battery management system will vary significantly. Failure codes are often linked to a "snapshot" of the system data taken at the moment of the failure in automotive applications. Numerous methods for sending data to an external device via CAN are described in detail by Unified Diagnostic Services, which is established in ISO 14229. In the field, this technique is often used to retrieve data from automobiles in the automotive repair and support industry. Other grid-tied apps will probably have access to the Internet, allowing for real-time data transmission. A direct USB connection to a PC could be possible with server-type hardware like a UPS battery system. When the host/control power and battery system unexpectedly disconnect, the data re- cording system should be resistant to data loss. The dependability of data storage is increased by small onboard energy storage, such as a battery or a capacitor.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, model implementation is a critical component of the design and analysis of battery systems. For forecasting and improving battery performance, calculating state of charge and state of health, and examining battery behavior under varied operating situations, accurate and trustworthy battery models are crucial. The essential phases in the model implementation process are model selection, parameter estimate, and model validation, and specialist software tools and programming languages may help with effective and precise implementation. To assure the accuracy and dependability of battery models, problems and constraints such data accessibility, battery complexity, and model updates must be addressed. Overall, efficient battery system design and analysis depend on the adoption of the right models, and new developments and research in this field will continue to promote battery technology and their applications.

REFERENCES:

[1] Y. Gao, C. Zhu, X. Zhang, and B. Guo, "Implementation and evaluation of a practical electrochemical- thermal model of lithium-ion batteries for EV battery management system," *Energy*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.energy.2020.119688.

[2] S. B. Lee and S. Onori, "A Robust and Sleek Electrochemical Battery Model Implementation: A MATLAB® Framework," *J. Electrochem. Soc.*, 2021, doi: 10.1149/1945-7111/ac22c8.

[3] S. Barsali and M. Ceraolo, "Dynamical models of lead-acid batteries: Implementation issues," *IEEE Trans. Energy Convers.*, 2002, doi: 10.1109/60.986432.

[4] L. Xia, E. Najafi, Z. Li, H. J. Bergveld, and M. C. F. Donkers, "A computationally efficient implementation of a full and reduced-order electrochemistry-based model for Li-ion batteries," *Appl. Energy*, 2017, doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2017.09.025.

[5] T. Feng, L. Yang, X. Zhao, H. Zhang, and J. Qiang, "Online identification of lithium-ion battery parameters based on an improved equivalent-circuit model and its implementation on battery state-of-power prediction," *J. Power Sources*, 2015, doi: 10.1016/j.jpowsour.2015.01.154.

[6] C. Wei, M. Benosman, and T. Kim, "Online Parameter Identification for State of Power Prediction of Lithium-ion Batteries in Electric Vehicles Using Extremum Seeking," *Int. J. Control. Autom. Syst.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s12555-018-0506-y.

[7] M. Nizam, H. Maghfiroh, R. A. Rosadi, and K. D. U. Kusumaputri, "Design of Battery Management System (BMS) for Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Battery," in *ICEVT 2019 - Proceeding: 6th International Conference on Electric Vehicular Technology 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/ICEVT48285.2019.8994002.

[8] S. Zhang, X. Guo, and X. Zhang, "Modeling of back-propagation neural network based state-of-charge estimation for lithium- ion batteries with consideration of capacity attenuation," *Adv. Electr. Comput. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.4316/AECE.2019.03001.

CHAPTER 19

ROBUSTNESS AND RELIABILITY FOR BATTERY

Dr. G. Ezhilarasan, Professor, Department of Electrical and Electronics Engineering,
Faculty of Engineering and Technology, JAIN (Deemed-to-be University), Bangalore, India,
Email Id-g.ezhilarasan@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Battery robustness and reliability are critical factors for ensuring the safe and efficient operation of battery systems. With the increasing demand for battery-powered applications in various industries, such as electric vehicles, renewable energy storage, and portable electronics, the need for batteries that are durable, dependable, and resilient to harsh operating conditions has become paramount. We explore the concept of robustness and reliability in the context of batteries. We discuss the challenges and potential hazards that batteries may encounter during their lifecycle, including mechanical stress, thermal stress, electrical stress, and environmental factors. We also highlight the importance of designing battery systems with robustness and reliability in mind to prevent performance degradation, premature failure, and safety risks.

KEYWORDS:

Battery, Degradation, Failure, Lithium-ion, Model, Reliability, Robustness.

INTRODUCTION

Basic design calculations should demonstrate the robustness of a battery management system, particularly for a safety-critical application, and the worst-case performance may be studied for various circuits based on extremes of the predicted values of the components. Software may be developed using best practices and then examined using tools to demonstrate that it is free of certain kinds of flaws. Numerous systems may be tested under a variety of operational circumstances. Any modern embedded control system, however, runs the risk of developing a fault and failing to carry out some or all of its functions due to misuse, component failure outside of the published limits, environmental exposure, aging, or other difficult to foresee factors. It is hard to forecast all of these potential failure scenarios due to the complexity of these systems. Deploying large-format battery systems successfully depends on designing battery management systems for dependability and resilience.

In the context of engineering, robustness refers to a system's insensitivity to different sorts of noise, which are external elements that may affect the system's performance but are beyond the designer's control. Operating temperature, electromagnetic fields, age, duty cycle, manufacturing and component variances are some examples of engineering system noise that is found in most electronic systems. These may translate into the following categories of consequences in the context of battery systems: Variability in the initial capacity, impedance, and self-discharge of battery cells, packs, and modules: Worst-case estimations of these parameters should be used to evaluate algorithms and ensure that sufficient performance is obtained. Voltage, current, and temperature measurement bias: Due to component variation, there will be some random fluctuation from unit to unit. Worst-case scenarios should be examined to show that important component tolerances are accurately defined and that sufficient testing is conducted to assure that inaccurate components won't result in subpar performance. When compared to pricey, high-precision components, individual units may function better when they are calibrated or trimmed.

Duty cycle and intended application: The duty cycles imposed by every user of a certain battery system design might vary significantly. In addition to its effects on the battery cells themselves, the load profile may have an impact on the accuracy of the state of charge and condition of health, the ability to balance, and other essential battery management system operations. The battery management system must exhibit acceptable performance under all conceivable usage profiles, even if they could hasten battery deterioration. The variety in use cases and the effect of this variability on performance must be understood. Make an effort to design test cases that correlate to uncommon operating settings that might result in certain sorts of failures[1].

DISCUSSION

Failure Mode Analysis

In many fields, failure mode analysis is a crucial technique for enhancing the reliability and security of designed systems. Any large-format lithium-ion battery system, including the battery management system, should undergo a thorough failure mode analysis. The FMEA activities for battery management systems and battery systems must complement and relate to one another. The failure mode analysis for the pack and the battery management system should ideally incorporate a cross-functional group that is engaged with the mechanical, thermal, hardware, and software designs at both the cell and pack levels. Each probable failure mode must have severity, incidence, and detection ratings according to an FMEA. The assignment of these ratings is governed by a variety of standards, including SAE J1739. Here, a variety of probable failure scenarios and various mitigation techniques are discussed:

Measurement of the cell voltage incorrectly The battery system may become inoperable due to incorrect cell voltage measurement. It may also result in undetected overcharge or overdischarge circumstances, erroneous state of charge and status of health calculations, and calculations that restrict battery operation outside of the safe operating range. The use of redundant measuring circuits and secondary measurement techniques with a lower level of precision may assist avoid overcharge and over discharge, but they might not be able to offer enough information to guarantee the correctness of more intricate computations. Errors introduced to one voltage reference device that serves as a reference for numerous cells may affect all of these cells. Voltage references may be compared to a different voltage source, perhaps one with lesser precision, to guard against significant measurement mistakes. As was previously mentioned, the method of comparing the pack and/or module voltage to the total of the cell voltages may be used to guard against serious inaccuracies in voltage measurement that might prevent the ability to identify dangerous circumstances.

There are significant differences between defects effecting a single cell, a single parallel group of many cells, and all cells that should be acknowledged as appropriate. If the pack is robust against propagation from a single cell thermal event, the severity of these events may be very different; however, if a single cell experiencing thermal runaway can lead to a larger number of cells also experiencing thermal events, both events may be equally severe. For instance, overcharging a single cell is likely to be less severe than overcharging all of the cells, but the differences depend on the specifics of the pack design. The incidence ratings for these various situations might vary depending on the underlying factors. This is only one illustration of how the analysis and design of the management system are impacted by the design of the battery system as a whole.

Inaccurate Temperature Measurement: An open or short circuit failure in either the thermistor or the interconnects is the cause of the two most frequent failures in a thermistor measuring circuit. Measurement circuits should be created to prevent shorts and openings from being mistaken with genuine plausible temperatures and appearing as implausible offscale high and low values.

Inaccurate Current Measurement: If the current sensor has failed, using a solid-state current sensor with a dead band at either end of the measurement range may help. Furthermore, the zero-point measurement may be verified since it is known that the current must be zero when contactors are open.

Hall Effect current sensors' output polarity is orientation dependent. The battery charge current will show as discharge current if the sensor is placed wrongly. This will result in the detection of negative impedance, which demands that a mistake be acknowledged. In many situations, a supplementary sanity check may be carried out by contrasting the current as measured by the load device and the battery. Both measurement mistakes and sensor failures may be recorded in this way. To avoid synchronization issues from leading to inaccurate fault detection, it is advised to assess the difference in measured amp-hours by both devices across a moving window and use a leaky-bucket method due to probable discrepancies in sampling rates and measurement precision. These include reversed Hall Effect current sensors that reverse charge and discharge currents, excessive noise, sensor errors, and sensor failures[2].

The battery cell voltage readings itself might be used for a last check. When applying current, the battery voltage should change depending on the battery type. A battery with erratic voltage fluctuations without current is probably fitted with a faulty current sensor. Scaling errors in the current sensor may be the cause of sudden variations in the observed battery impedance. The detection of "stuck" cell voltage readings, in which the cell voltage does not seem to change despite the application of strong charge and discharge currents, is possible using the same technique. This may be the consequence of software processing fresh data incorrectly, slave device microprocessors failing to report a new value, or technical faults with the measurement circuit. A number of parallel cells that are detached from the string but are still connected to the measurement circuit may be the sign of broken cell interconnects if all other electronics are functioning properly. If abnormally high or low cell voltages are disregarded, these problems may be exceedingly dangerous.

Communication breakdown: The loss of the communication channel between the master and slave devices in a distributed system design is a frequent occurrence. This could happen as a result of EMI, connection issues, or malfunctions with any of the many signal chain components. If the software in either the master or slave module malfunctions in a manner that sends outdated data to the higher layers of software in the master module, there may be a "virtual" loss of communication. It is crucial that this situation be identified early and that inaccurate data not be utilized to estimate battery status.

The system should be resilient against brief communications interruptions and avoid interfering with battery functionality except in the most extreme cases[3].

Environmental Robustness

Battery management systems have to go through a thorough test and validation strategy that is made to expose the system to the worst-case risks connected with the setting in which it will be used, transported, and stored.

Here is a list of some of these risks and potential ways of failure:

Mechanical vibration: Particularly big IC packages and PCB substrates are susceptible to breaking due to mechanical vibration. These problems could be made worse by high and low temperatures. If enclosure surfaces deflect significantly during resonant modes, clearances may be lowered during mechanical vibration. Busbars, tabs, cell interconnects, and wire harnesses are also prone to failure; thus, a thorough set of tests may need to cover them. Similar to vibration, mechanical shock has particular weaknesses for big, heavy components. High temperature: High temperatures speed up the pace at which many components degrade. Dielectric strength and optoisolator degradation may be impacted. Nearly all stack monitoring chipsets' accuracy performance is strongly impacted by temperature as well.

Humidity: A high level of humidity may lead to many circumstances that reduce the dielectric breakdown strength. To fully comprehend the impacts of applying high voltage in a humid environment, the battery management system must be switched on throughout the humidity test.

Drop: To make sure that dropping battery management system modules won't cause latent damage that could go undetected, a drop test should be carried out.

EMC: At relatively modest disturbance levels, voltage, current, and temperature measurement errors may appear. These inaccuracies could be negligible in relation to the quantities being measured, but they have a big effect on how the battery parameters are calculated by the battery management system.

ESD: Electrostatic discharge, which may occur during handling, battery system assembly, servicing, or operation, has the potential to harm input, processing, and output devices as well as the battery management system. Users may possibly use charging ports or user interface connections for electric vehicles while the battery system is in use, and these connections must adhere to "active" ESD requirements, which are often as high as 25 kV[4].This test plan typically comprises four stages and calls for a collection of standard equipment.

Initial Performance Assessment: There will be a thorough review of the performance of the gadgets. Important factors include dielectric strength, control power supply and high voltage stack power consumption, and cell and string voltage precision. In order to acquire performance information about typical devices to compare to post-exposure samples, it may be necessary to run the dielectric withstand test on a particular batch of devices. Nominal performance specifications-unmet devices shouldn't be tested on.

Environmental Simulation:A batch of devices is subjected to a series of tests that are intended to simulate the worst-case scenario for the intended use. If it is anticipated that the results of the tests would add up, a specific sample set may be utilized for more than one test. The gadgets will need to be switched on and functioning in a simulated environment for several tests.

Following testing, the devices are recharacterized to see if any performance changes occurred. Comparisons with the values from the pretest should be done. Special test techniques are required for high-accuracy measurements of current and voltage, which rely on temperature and other factors. This is done to prevent systematic variances from being misinterpreted as changes in performance. On all post-test devices, dielectric testing for working and breakdown voltage ratings should also be done.

Comprehensive dissection and analysis the gadgets should be examined to search for any indications of possible design flaws. The examination should include looking for dendrite development, tin whiskering, and other possible short dangers. Integrity of the coating and enclosure are also crucial[5].

Abuse circumstances

The battery management system may be exposed to a variety of aberrant situations while operating, despite the fact that it is often thought of as being there to safeguard the batteries from misuse. A potential point of failure for the battery management system might result in fire and electric shock risks. The difficulties in mitigating EMC and ESD have already been discussed. Components of the battery management system must also be resistant to supply disruptions and transients in control power. Extreme cell and pack voltages brought on by overcharge, overdischarge, or a confluence of high impedance and current shall not be shown to result in a short circuit failure in the measurement circuits by analysis, testing, or both. Every input should have a sufficient safety margin between the predicted and maximum permissible voltage levels. Take into account the consequences of incorrectly connecting the cell voltage readings, which might expose inputs to significant voltage mistakes, such as reverse voltages, groups of cells out of order, and significant voltage differentials across a single channel.

In many circumstances, it is not required to guarantee that the battery management system will still function after being exposed to all of these events, but you should always check to make sure that malfunctions do not result in short circuits. Consider a more distributed battery management system design that restricts the voltage in each individual module if maintaining functionality is required; this will raise the probability that a certain input configuration may be tolerated. Abuse of the battery management system may result from battery system failures. Current may be driven via sensor harnesses and the battery management system module if a busbar, cell, or fuse opens up while the battery stack is being charged. When compared to the battery management system and connection, even tiny currents in relation to the battery capacity will be quite significant and will probably cause damage. Interconnects and components should be sized carefully to prevent heat events and guarantee that damage is minor.

Reliability Engineering

Quantitative failure analysis, a discipline that is often underappreciated, is given an analytical perspective by reliability engineering. In order to ensure that failure rates are sufficiently low to fulfill the requirements of a given application, a reliability engineer strives to quantify, via statistical techniques, the possibility of a certain defect or failure happening. Since large-format battery systems are often employed in applications that are particularly sensitive to battery failures, reliability engineering is relevant to them. For many applications requiring the greatest degree of functional safety, acceptable failure rates for lithium-ion batteries may be as low as one failure per 108 operating hours. It is necessary to choose components for these crucial operations from suppliers who can provide the necessary dependability data. The whole signal chain for a certain function must be considered in the dependability analysis. The proper functioning of measuring, processing, and control circuits each of which has several components is often necessary to prevent a battery danger.

Design of engineering systems

Projects involving battery management systems should use a suitable model for system development. The commonly used V-cycle for the development of engineering systems starts with the top-down definition of the system, subsystem, and component requirements to a detailed, structured process for implementation, then moves to a bottom-up validation from the component to the system level with traceability against the requirements established at each level.

The needs of the whole battery system will ultimately serve as the foundation for the development of the battery management system requirements. A battery system's basic requirements are to provide and take a certain quantity of energy at a certain power rating, and to do so safely throughout the duration of the system. This set of objectives is mostly supported by the battery management system. The demands of the next higher level engineering system are always cascaded down into the requirements for the battery management system, which are never established independently without consideration for the battery system's reaction.

An effective alignment of requirements at the solution, battery system, and battery management system levels is necessary for the deployment of a battery management system. Processes should make sure that needs at one level always have an impact on requirements at lower levels. Complete coverage of all areas of battery system development is guaranteed by a collaborative approach between battery management system hardware and software engineers, system engineers, and battery cell and pack designers[6], [7].

Industry Guidelines

Only a few standards are available expressly for the creation of battery management systems, although many standards organizations provide guidelines for integrated battery systems, which in the case of lithium-ion systems will also contain the battery management system. Depending on the application, place of usage, and installation, these requirements may or may not be enforceable by law. To fully grasp the approvals needed for a battery system and battery management system in a specific market and application, a thorough review of customer requirements and contacts, legal requirements for product liability, local and national electrical safety codes, product safety requirements, and/or motor vehicle safety standards is required.

UL 1973 was created for battery storage systems for use in rail applications, but it may today be used for stationary energy storage for grid storage or the incorporation of solar, wind, and other distributed generating resources. The battery pack protection circuit or battery management system specifications are laid forth in the standard. In addition to UL 1998 for safety-critical embedded software and UL 1642, which outlines criteria for lithium-ion cells, this standard also refers to a number of additional standards for parts and materials used in the building of battery systems.

SAE J2464 and J2929 describe mechanical abuse as well as a variety of safety instances in which the battery management system reaction to a hazardous state is involved. They also explore the safety of integrated automotive battery systems, including the battery management system. For electric and hybrid cars, the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 305 defines a variety of standards for isolation detection and high-voltage safety. The SAE J1772 pi-lot line technique is often used by the battery management system to interact with charging apparatus. European standards govern many of the same aspects in the automotive industry outside of North America, including UN/ECE Regulation 100, which covers requirements for a number of components of electric vehicles that can travel at speeds greater than 25 km/h, and IEC 62196, which outlines the interface to charging stations.

Similar criteria for performance in various testing are seen in several of these standards. Not all standards make reference to particular design aspects or requirements; for instance, the SAE standards place greater emphasis on the functions of the battery and battery management system than on how those functions must be accomplished. The UL standards, on the other hand, provide a cascading set of requirements for diverse parts and design features that range from cell level to system level[8].

Quality

Battery management systems' careful study, development, and validation of their designs must not have flaws introduced throughout the manufacturing process. The manufacturing facility must adhere to a quality management system that makes sure the battery management system created satisfies all standards since the end product is only as good as its ultimate manifestation. A battery management system is a safety-critical, highly accurate product, thus quality goes beyond dimensional control and straightforward functional testing. Even though these are unquestionably essential components of effective quality control, the whole production process should be examined together with the design for any potential points at which faults may arise and have a significant influence on the functionality of the finished product.

The following areas of risk are particular to the battery management system:

Contamination and cleanliness the chance of contaminating the finished product with debris must be removed because to the high voltages present and potential arcing and fire concerns. Schedules for cleaning equipment, routine checks for foreign objects by automated and human inspectors, and the use of suitable coverings or tonnage to avoid contamination may all be impacted by this. Die-cast components need to be carefully managed to prevent conductive "flash" or over molded material that can come loose during product use. Debris buildup may be prevented using easy methods like keeping components oriented as they go through a manufacturing process.

Dielectric conformal coatings and encapsulates are often used in the manufacturing of many different kinds of electronic control modules, including battery management systems. If these materials are to be used to attain insulation and dielectric strength ratings, then the application must be tightly regulated to ensure that the applied coatings function as intended. Appropriate techniques include automated dispensing and application equipment, UV examination to find voids in the final coating layer, and coupon testing of coated boards with dielectric testing. The manufacturing organization should carefully assess the usage of liquid-applied coatings.

PCB Substrates: The maker of PCB substrates must be knowledgeable about the risks involved with the high-voltage electronics discussed in this book.

Components: Managing components throughout their life cycle is a need of the manufacturing process. The dielectric ratings of isolators and other components may be lowered by exposure to damp storage environments. In certain circumstances, component bake-out is a suitable control method. A large-format battery management system is more prone to encounter safety-related failures as a result of incorrect component storage than many low voltages control systems.

Arrangement and alignment of the components: Improper arrangement of the components, including rotational and positional alignment, as well as other flaws like "tombstoning," might result in arc or shock dangers. These kinds of flaws can be found using automated optical inspection, but it is important to focus inspection efforts on parts connected to the high-voltage stack since they may lead to dangerous shorts if misaligned.

High Current Solder Joints:A portion of the high current channel is included into the electronic module of certain large-format battery management systems. Large solder junctions may split as they cool, creating connections with high resistance that cause heating.

High-Current Threaded Fastener Joints: Incorrect torque greatly increases connection resistance at the point where components with a fastened junction meet. In this situation, high temperatures may ensue[9].

CONCLUSION

In order to guarantee the safe and effective functioning of battery systems in a variety of applications, robustness and dependability are crucial factors to take into account. Battery performance, safety, and lifetime may be affected by the difficulties and risks they encounter during their lives, including mechanical stress, thermal stress, electrical stress, and environmental conditions. To reduce these hazards and guarantee long-term performance, it is essential to design batteries with resilience and dependability in mind. The resilience and dependability of batteries may be improved using a number of approaches and tactics, including sophisticated battery management systems, temperature management techniques, mechanical design considerations, and material selection. In order to maintain the durability and dependability of batteries throughout the course of their lifecycle, testing, validation, and monitoring are essential since they allow for the early identification of possible problems and prompt preventative action.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. Park *et al.*, “Reliability-based robust design optimization of lithium-ion battery cells for maximizing the energy density by increasing reliability and robustness,” *Energies*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/en14196236.

[2] R. Hanna, J. Kleissl, A. Nottrott, and M. Ferry, “Energy dispatch schedule optimization for demand charge reduction using a photovoltaic-battery storage system with solar forecasting,” *Sol. Energy*, 2014, doi: 10.1016/j.solener.2014.02.020.

[3] D. Li, Z. Zhang, P. Liu, Z. Wang, and L. Zhang, “Battery Fault Diagnosis for Electric Vehicles Based on Voltage Abnormality by Combining the Long Short-Term Memory Neural Network and the Equivalent Circuit Model,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, 2021, doi: 10.1109/TPEL.2020.3008194.

[4] X. Li, C. Yuan, X. Li, and Z. Wang, “State of health estimation for Li-Ion battery using incremental capacity analysis and Gaussian process regression,” *Energy*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.energy.2019.116467.

[5] Q. Li, X. Cui, and Q. Pan, "Self-Healable Hydrogel Electrolyte toward High-Performance and Reliable Quasi-Solid-State Zn-MnO2 Batteries," *ACS Appl. Mater. Interfaces*, 2019, doi: 10.1021/acsami.9b13553.

[6] S. Li, H. He, and J. Li, "Big data driven lithium-ion battery modeling method based on SDAE-ELM algorithm and data pre-processing technology," *Appl. Energy*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2019.03.154.

[7] I. N. Haq, D. Kurniadi, E. Leksono, B. Yuliarto, and F. X. N. Soelami, "Performance analysis of energy storage in smart microgrid based on historical data of individual battery temperature and voltage changes," *J. Eng. Technol. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.5614/j.eng.technol.sci.2019.51.2.1.

[8] S. Khaleghi *et al.*, "Online health diagnosis of lithium-ion batteries based on nonlinear autoregressive neural network," *Appl. Energy*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.apenergy.2020.116159.

[9] Z. Wang, C. Yuan, and X. Li, "Lithium Battery State-of-Health Estimation via Differential Thermal Voltammetry with Gaussian Process Regression," *IEEE Trans. Transp. Electrif.*, 2021, doi: 10.1109/TTE.2020.3028784.

CHAPTER 20

STATE-OF-THE-ART OF BATTERY STATE-OF-CHARGE DETERMINATION

Dr. Hannah Jessie Rani R, Assistant Professor, Department of Electrical and Electronics Engineering, Faculty of Engineering and Technology, JAIN (Deemed-to-be University), Bangalore, India,
Email Id-jr.hannah@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The accurate determination of battery State-of-Charge (SOC) is critical for the optimal utilization and management of battery systems in various applications, including electric vehicles, renewable energy storage, and portable electronics. The State-of-the-Art of battery SOC determination techniques involves the use of sophisticated algorithms, models, and measurements to estimate the current energy capacity of a battery. An overview of the current State-of-the-Art of battery SOC determination techniques. It includes a discussion of popular methods such as Coulomb counting, voltage-based methods, current integration, and impedance-based methods, as well as more advanced techniques like Kalman filtering, neural networks, and machine learning-based approaches. The advantages, limitations, and challenges of each technique are discussed, along with their suitability for different battery chemistries, operating conditions, and system requirements. Highlights recent advancements in battery SOC determination, such as the use of multi-model approaches, data-driven techniques, and sensor fusion methods, which aim to improve the accuracy and reliability of SOC estimation. The impact of environmental factors, battery aging, and system-level considerations on SOC determination are also addressed, as they can affect the accuracy and robustness of SOC estimation.

KEYWORDS:

Algorithms, Battery, Coulomb, Counting, Electrochemical, Filtering, Fuel Gauge.

INTRODUCTION

For the interior parts of battery cells, modeling techniques are becoming available that can forecast battery performance before a prototype cell is created. These technologies may be used to start creating battery management systems before the cells are really ready, considerably accelerating the process of creating battery systems as a whole. Complex models get closer to operating in real time as processor performance for a given cost increases. Future battery management systems will have the ability to use more intricate models.

Intelligent Algorithms

The establishment of a system that can handle more drastic variations in cell behavior during the life of the battery system is one of the main difficulties confronting the development of battery management systems. Several current presumptions regarding the battery system's life cycle exist, which over time decreases the battery management system's accuracy. For instance, if the capacity degradation of the two electrodes happens at different rates, the presumption that the SOC-OCV relationship is unchanging as the battery ages does not hold. Different sorts of impacts may result from calendar and cycle life aging. The model used early in life may overlook factors that are significant later in life, leading to inaccurate SOC and SOH estimates. Models that more correctly reflect changes in the battery performance will spread as knowledge of lithium-ion battery aging advances and battery systems are given extended service lifetimes.

Modern Safety

Functional safety requirements similar to those used in the aerospace and automotive industries are becoming more and more popular in other sectors of business, industry, and even consumer items. As an example, UL is currently defining functional safety specifications and enforcing rules for lithium-ion battery systems. As battery systems are deployed more often, national electrical codes throughout the globe will likely follow suit and regulations will inevitably become more convoluted.

Integration of Systems

Battery management systems will see a convergence of functionality with other electronic control devices across the system as battery systems become more widespread and component numbers rise. It is possible to imagine a multilayered architecture where the battery system vendor is responsible for fundamental safety and measurement, precise SOC and SOH estimation, power limits, and other battery-specific functions, with an application space in the same processor for high-level functionality that may vary from application to application[1], [2].

Systems for managing batteries

Electronics that run on batteries are now widely used in contemporary life. A considerable demand for the quick adoption of battery technology at an unprecedented pace has been created by the recent rapid increase of the usage of por devices and hybrid electrical vehicles. Numerous battery-management functions, such as charge control, battery capacity monitoring, information on remaining runtime, charge-cycle counting, etc., are necessary for the design of a battery-powered device. Each component of the system must be almost flawless for it to be able to provide great accuracy. The following is a definition of a BMS's fundamental function: A battery management system's primary responsibility is to guarantee that the energy in the battery that powers the product is used as efficiently as possible and that the danger of battery damage is minimized. This is accomplished by keeping an eye on and managing how the battery is charged and discharged.

The power module's primary responsibility is to convert electrical energy from the mains into electrical energy suitable for charging the battery. The PM may either be an independent gadget, like a portable charger, or it can be included right into the main gadget, as in shavers, for instance. For lithium-ion batteries, a protective Integrated Circuit linked in series with the battery is often required. Because of the potential for litigation, battery providers are especially worried about safety problems. Monitoring the battery's voltage, current, and temperature is necessary, and the safety IC makes sure that the battery is never used in a harmful manner. The operating circumstances that are presumptively safe for using Li-ion batteries are set by the battery manufacturer. Destructive processes could occur outside the safe area.

To effectively condition the unregulated battery voltage for compliance with demanding load requirements, a DC/DC converter is required. The load's primary job is to transform the electrical energy provided by a battery into a type of energy that will enable the load to perform its function, such as mechanical energy, light, sound, heat, electromagnetic radiation, etc. The

SoC and the battery's state may be shown on a liquid crystal display, one light-emitting diode, many similar diodes linked in series, or another display. The SoC algorithm and battery-management software are both operated by the CPU. Another crucial function of the BMS is to communicate with other devices. Depending on the application, other technologies, such as an inter-integrated-circuit bus interface or another kind of serial interface, might be utilized for data transmission. The battery condition is a crucial information for the user and is utilized as an input parameter for the electrical management of the por device. The battery's condition may be utilized to calculate its anticipated lifespan. SoC and SoH are two simple metrics that may sum it up. Both variables affect battery performance and are dependent on one another. We'll provide further details on these two factors in the following.

DISCUSSION

State-of-Charge

In order to properly implement the monitor function of the battery status in a battery management system, three words are important. These three phrases include the State-of-Charge, which is the proportion of a rechargeable battery's maximal charge that is now present. Measurements and modeling of the battery are part of the SoC indicator. A microcontroller's look-up function may be used to store the V-SoC relationship and test the battery voltage as an easy example. The quantity of recorded values, or the quantity of V-SoC data points, determines the size and precision of the look-ups in SoC indicator systems. The battery voltage fluctuating with temperature, discharge rates, and aging is a concern. The first two dependencies may be resolved by making the discharge rate and look-up temperature dependent. However, battery aging is a multi-step process that takes into account several battery factors. The procedure is too intricate to be handled by a simple look-up implementation. The State-of-Health is a measurement of the battery's state in comparison to a brand-new battery and serves as an indicator of the stage of its life cycle. The State-of-Health (SoH) is described as a "measure" that shows a battery's overall health and its capacity to produce the required performance in contrast to a brand-new battery.

Cycle counting is one potential SoH sign. The SoH may be determined using a stored maximum capacity-Cn function in the simplest scenario by counting the whole charge/discharge cycles. But a user doesn't always wait until the battery is completely drained or full. SoC levels other than "empty" and "full" should be taken into account by the system, such as levels determined by the previous charge/discharge SoC value before a user begins charging/discharging. The proliferation of both battery and user behavior is another issue. The SoH development will change for each user and application as a result of this dispersion, making it somewhat unpredictable. Such unpredictable behavior cannot be managed by a straightforward charge/discharge cycles counting solution. Therefore, an adaptive solution is required to provide a precise SoC indicator as the battery ages. Neural networks, Kalman filters, fuzzy logic, and Kalman filters are a few examples of potential adaptive systems.

The user often sees the SoC in a visual bar or in. In the latter scenario, 0% denotes an empty battery and 100% a full battery. However, it is useful for a user to know how long a battery will continue to provide power. A SoC indicator with a few bars is insufficient to provide all the necessary information. For a user of a por gadget, the remaining time-of-use indicator will be the most intriguing and appealing option. The projected amount of time the battery may continue to deliver current to a given device under legal discharge settings before it stops working is known as the remaining run-time[3].

Depending on the type of load, there are two ways to calculate the remaining run-time from the remaining capacity: for a current-type load, divide the remaining capacity in mAh, so expressed as charge, by the drawn current in mA; for a power-type load, divide the remaining capacity in mWh, so expressed as energy, by the drawn power in mW. For ease of reading, only current-type loads will be taken into account in this book. In conclusion, a battery's performance and reliability will be increased, and its lifespan will be extended, by using an accurate SoC and run-time determination technique in conjunction with a SoH calculation.

For user comfort and to improve battery life, accurate SoC and remaining run-time indicator is crucial for por devices. More than 75% of respondents in a poll by market research firm TNS of over 7,000 mobile users in 15 countries agreed that a future convergence device should have a higher battery life as its key feature. The need for an accurate and dependable SoC, run-time, and SoH indicator system in various applications is motivated by this. In current uses, Li-ion batteries are the most widely utilized battery chemistry. As a result, the SoC indicator for Li-ion batteries is the emphasis of this book. The US18500G3 Li-ion battery from Sony was selected for this project. The battery pack does not need to be over-engineered since accurate SoC information enables a battery to be utilized within its design parameters. As a result, a less expensive, lighter, and smaller battery may be used. In practice, there are numerous instances of subpar accuracy and dependability. This may be quite unpleasant, particularly when a portable electronic item abruptly stops working even if the battery level is enough. Only a portion of the battery's capacity may be used due to the SoC indicator system's low dependability.

For instance, a person could feel the need to recharge a battery every day even though the physical device indicates that there is adequate battery capacity. As a result, the battery will need to be recharged more often than is really required, which will cause the battery to wear out prematurely. When the SoC value is also utilized to manage charging, the consequence of inaccurate SoC indicator might be considerably more detrimental. Either the battery is undercharged, or it is overcharged. The battery will need to be recharged more often than necessary in the first scenario, which will cause it to wear out sooner. In the second scenario, repeated overcharging will result in a shorter cycle life[4]. Accurate State-of-Charge indicator is becoming more and more important to many top semiconductor businesses. The straightforward SoC indication systems from the 1930s, which relied on voltage and temperature measurements, have been replaced by more intricate and precise SoC systems as a result of the technological revolution and the appearance of more power-hungry devices on the automotive electronics and por devices markets.

The most accurate of these has been determined to be the technique given by Bergveld et al. in 2000, -, using the mathematical models explained in. The developed approach makes reference to a Li-ion battery's SoC estimate. The approach is based on electro-motive force measurements during the equilibrium state and current measurement and integration during the charge and discharge states. Because the same SoC level in % has been determined for a given measured EMF regardless of the age and temperature of the battery, the EMF approach is also used to calibrate the SoC system. This calibration is crucial because, in charge and discharge states, the computed SoC will ultimately deviate from the true value owing to, for instance, measurement error in the current and the accumulation of this error over time. The impact of the overpotential is taken into account in the discharge state in addition to straightforward Coulomb counting. The battery voltage during discharge is lower than the EMF due to this overpotential. The overpotential's value is influenced by the discharge current, SoC, age, and temperature.

The created approach has been shown to have a few drawbacks. First and foremost, proper SoC indication requires the establishment of an accurate battery model. The battery EMF and overpotential behavior, neither of which can be observed in a direct manner, are described by the model used in the proposed SoC indicator system. The limitations of the measuring techniques outlined in have been examined, along with potential remedies, in. Second, there have been incorrect entries found in the equilibrium state. They affect the accuracy of the system's calibration and the EMF estimate. The overpotential model also includes variables that vary with age and temperature. It is necessary to create a more accurate model that accounts for temperature and age dependency.

The implementation requirements of the mathematical functions employed in the SoC indicator method in a real-world application will be of interest to a BMS designer for a particular device. The importance of having a close quantitative agreement between measurements on a real-time system in which the SoC system is implemented and the results of laboratory simulations using the battery models follows naturally. The book's research is in part focused on maximizing this quantitative agreement. The memory and hardware speed requirements for the por device must be met by the optimized SoC system implementation. Finding the best way to implement the SoC algorithm in a real-time system is one of the research goals outlined in this book[5]. The method described in this book's methodology's ultimate goal is to design and test a SoC indication system that can predict any Li-based battery's remaining capacity and runtime with an accuracy of 1 minute or better under all realistic user conditions, including aging, a wide range of load currents, and a wide range of temperature. The developed SoC indicator system must also comply with the software and hardware specifications of the target application.

For regulating the energy storage and use of batteries in several applications, including electric cars, renewable energy systems, and portable devices, accurate SOC measurement is crucial. The three main types of SOC estimate techniques are model-based approaches, data-driven approaches, and hybrid approaches that use both models and data. Model-based techniques estimate SOC based on the physical and electrochemical parameters of the battery by using mathematical models of battery behavior, such as electrochemical models, equivalent circuit models, or thermal models. Data-driven techniques estimate SOC based on the battery's voltage, current, temperature, and other quantifiable characteristics by using empirical relationships derived from experimental data or machine learning algorithms. Hybrid methods mix data and models to provide precise SOC estimate. We examine the state-of-the-art of various SOC determination strategies in this work, emphasizing their fundamental ideas, benefits, and drawbacks as well as recent developments and potential future directions.

Model-Based Methods

Model-based methods estimate SOC by using mathematical models of battery dynamics. These models explain the electrochemical processes taking place inside the battery, including the diffusion of lithium ions, the chemical processes happening at the electrode-electrolyte interfaces, and the battery's behavior in relation to temperature and voltage. The well-known "Differential Voltage" (DV) and "State of Charge Tracking" (SCT) techniques, which utilize the battery's open-circuit voltage (OCV) and coulombic efficiency to predict SOC, are two examples of model-based approaches. The use of analogous circuit models, such as the "RC circuit" and "Thevenin model" techniques, which simulate the electrical behavior of the battery using resistors and capacitors, is another model-based strategy. The benefit of model-based techniques is that they are physics-based and provide precise SOC estimates under diverse operating situations. They could, however, need thorough familiarity with the battery's characteristics, including its capacity, resistance, and OCV curves, which can change with time, temperature, and age. Model-based methods need intricate computations as well and may not be appropriate for real-time applications.

Data-driven strategies

Data-driven techniques use machine learning algorithms or empirical connections deduced from experimental data to estimate SOC. These methods may be used with a variety of battery chemistries and operating situations and don't need in-depth understanding of the battery's properties. The usage of voltage-based techniques, such as "Open-Circuit Voltage" (OCV) and "State of Charge Estimation based on the Open-Circuit Voltage and Internal Resistance" (SOC-OCV-IR) methods, which employ the battery's OCV and internal resistance to estimate SOC, are examples of data-driven approaches. The use of current-based techniques, such as the "Coulomb Counting" (CC) and "Ah Integration" methods, which calculate SOC by integrating the battery's current over time, is another data-driven strategy. The benefits of data-driven techniques are their simplicity, computational efficiency, and suitability for real-time applications.

Since it was first discovered, electricity has been essential to humankind. Many technical developments would not have been possible without this phenomena. People began using por energy storage devices as their demand for mobility rose, initially for wheeled applications, then por ones, and eventually wearable applications. On the market, there are many different kinds of rechargeable battery systems, including lead-acid, nickel-cadmium, nickel-metal hydride, lithium-ion, and lithium-ion polymer batteries. This will cover the most significant of them. Systems that may indicate the SoC have been available for practically as long as rechargeable batteries have. The SoC of a battery may be determined using a number of techniques, including direct measurements, book-keeping, and adaptive systems. The performance and dependability of a battery will be increased, which will eventually increase its lifespan, with the employment of an accurate SoC determination technique and a comprehensible and trustworthy SoC user display.

Battery Uses and Technology

Even if the early batteries were cumbersome and unreliable, future generations may consider modern technology in much the same way that we do today: as an improvement over the clunky experiments of the last century. This focuses on the qualities and advancements in battery technology. Volta discovered in 1800 that when certain fluids were utilized as ionic conductors to facilitate an electrochemical reaction between two metals or electrodes, a steady flow of electrical force was produced. As a result, the first battery also known as a voltaic cell was created. Gaston Planté, a French scientist, created the first rechargeable battery in 1859. This backup battery employed lead-acid chemistry, which is still in use today. The nickel-cadmium battery was created in 1899 by the Swedish inventor Waldmar Jungner, who used nickel for the positive electrode and cadmium for the negative electrode. Two years later, Edison created a different design by switching out cadmium for iron. The practical uses of nickel-cadmium and nickel-iron batteries were constrained by their expensive material prices in comparison to dry cells or LA storage batteries. The sintered pole plate, which Schlecht and Ackermann created in 1932, greatly improved technology. Higher load currents and longer lifespans are results of these developments. After Neumann entirely sealed the cell, the sealed nickel-cadmium battery as we know it today only became accessible in 1947.

It was quickly apparent that intermetallic electrodes consisting of SmCo5 and LaNi5 may function as a novel electrochemical storage medium when these compounds' ability to absorb and desorb significant quantities of hydrogen was discovered in the late 1960s. The hydride-forming electrode emerged as a major competitor to the commonly used cadmium electrode in rechargeable nickel-cadmium batteries in the years that followed. These hydride-forming compounds have several benefits over cadmium electrodes, including increased energy storage capacity, superior rate capability, and non-toxic features of the chemical components that made up these materials. In the 1990s, nickel-metal hydride batteries were made widely accessible for purchase[6].

Early in the 1970s, non-rechargeable lithium batteries made their debut. Following in the 1980s were attempts to create rechargeable lithium batteries, but these failed due to security issues. Due to lithium metal's intrinsic instability, particularly when charging, research has focused on intercalating lithium ions in host materials for Li-ion batteries. Despite having a lower energy density than lithium metal, lithium ion batteries are safe as long as specific safety measures are adopted while charging and discharging. These measures may be carried out by using a suitable charging algorithm and a safety IC in series with the battery, as was previously stated. The first lithium-ion battery was commercialized in 1991 by the Sony Corporation.

General Battery Operating Principles

A battery is, in the simplest sense, a device that can transform chemical energy into electrical energy and vice versa. The electroactive species of the two electrodes within the battery are where the chemical energy is kept. The transformations take place through charge-transfer or electrochemical reduction-oxidation processes. Through an electrical circuit separate from the battery, these reactions entail the transfer of electrons between electroactive substances between the two electrodes. The electrode/electrolyte interfaces are where the reactions happen. An oxidation process will happen at the anode of the battery when current runs through it, and a reduction reaction will happen at the cathode. While a reduction process absorbs these electrons from the external circuit, an oxidation reaction gives them to the external circuit. Between the electrodes, the electrolyte acts as a connector. It provides a conduit for the movement of ions. Therefore, ions in the electrolyte and electrons within the electrodes facilitate current flow. The charger or load receives the current from outside. The phrase "battery" is often used to refer to one cell or to two or more cells linked in series or parallel, even though a cell is the fundamental electrochemical component of a battery.

A battery's performance or "health" tends to steadily decline over the course of its lifespan owing to irreversible physical and chemical changes that happen with use and aging, until the battery is eventually rendered useless. The State-of-Health is a measurement of a battery's state in comparison to a brand-new battery and a sign of the stage of its life cycle that it has reached. The most crucial battery metric is capacity, which is involved in the intricate process of battery aging. The discharge capacity of a Li-ion battery is displayed as a function of the cycle number in Figure 2.1 to help explain the phenomenon. The transfer point at which the rate of the battery's deterioration rises may be seen on the degradation curve.

The kind of battery and the operating circumstances affect the precise location of the transfer point. The problem of Li-ion battery aging is not entirely novel in contemporary electrochemistry. There have lately been many models developed that describe the aging effects in Li-ion batteries. Broussely and Spotnitz present models that describe the kinetics of lithium consumption in Li-ion batteries in, With the battery retained at a constant voltage and consistent polarity, Broussely and Spotnitz both address the aging of batteries under "on float" conditions. All of the plots in the aforementioned articles are notable for being seamless and devoid of any transfer points. A first conclusion is that it will be difficult for a SoC indicator system to take into consideration every specific aspect of a battery's charge and discharge quality and aging characteristics[7].

Types and features of batteries

Battery NiCd

NiCd batteries are made up of a negative cadmium electrode made of Cd and Cd2 and a positive nickel electrode made of a Ni2/NiOOH combination. An aqueous solution of KOH serves as the electrolyte. NiCd batteries have the ability to charge and discharge quickly; a battery may be fully charged in 10 minutes, and significant currents can be delivered during discharge. Numerous devices may employ NiCd batteries, which have an operating voltage of 1.2 V on average. In particular, NiCd batteries are utilized in power-hungry machines. Shavers, camcorders, portable audio devices, cordless and mobile phones, laptop computers, and shavers are examples of other uses. NiCd batteries have drawbacks such as their memory effect and relatively poor energy density. The battery only delivers the amount of capacity consumed during the previous repeated charge/discharge cycles as a result of the memory effect. Due to this phenomenon, NiCd batteries should ideally utilise their complete capacity during each discharge cycle to prevent a drop in their maximum capacity. The inclusion of cadmium, a danger to the environment, is another drawback. This will eventually result in a total prohibition on NiCd batteries.

Battery NiMH

The fundamental difference between NiCd and NiMH batteries is that the negative electrode in NiMH batteries uses a metal hydride alloy rather than cadmium. This increases energy density while minimizing the memory effect and environmental impact. Additionally, NiMH batteries may take the place of NiCd batteries due to their similar 1.2 V average working voltage per cell. Applications range from cordless and mobile phones to laptop computers, Hybrid Electrical Vehicles, camcorders, and portable audio devices. NiMH batteries have a few drawbacks, including a relatively fast rate of self-discharge and a relatively weak level of robustness against overcharging. To make matters worse, it might be more challenging to tell whether a battery is fully charged while charging.

The cell is made up of five regions: a porous separator, a porous composite negative insertion electrode, a copper-based negative electrode current collector, an aluminum-based positive electrode current collector, and a porous composite positive insertion electrode. The active material particles used to create the composite electrodes are held together by a binder and a sui filler, like as carbon black. The positive electrode is prepared to receive lithium ions as the discharge is about to start, and the negative electrode is completely lithiated. While in the positive electrode area lithium ions in the solution phase intercalate into the LiCoO2 particles, the lithium ions in the negative electrode region deintercalate from the negative electrode particles and enter the solution phase during discharge. Lithium ions are forced from the negative electrode to the positive electrode as a consequence of the resulting concentration gradient. Because the equilibrium potentials and overpotentials of the two electrodes are strong functions of the lithium concentrations on the surface of the electrode particles, the cell voltage drops during discharge. When the cell's voltage reaches 3.0 V, it is generally considered to have achieved the end of discharge.

To store the lithium ions, the positive electrode is constructed from lithium metal oxides. Graphite or petroleum coke are used to make the negative carbon electrode. There are batteries with various solvents, such as propylene carbonate, but the electrolyte is typically a salt dissolved in an organic solvent. LiPF6 is an example of a salt that is used. The Li-ion batteries' working voltage is crucial, as overcharging leads to quick aging, fires, and even exploding batteries. As a result, a vital electrical safety circuit is needed to stop overcharging. Mobile phones, shavers, camcorders, portable music players, and laptop computers are examples of applications[8], [9].

CONCLUSION

In summary, the state-of-the-art in battery State-of-Charge (SOC) determination methodologies is a dynamic area that is always changing due to improvements in battery technology, measuring tools, and computational approaches. For efficient battery management and use in a variety of applications, from electric cars to renewable energy storage, accurate SOC measurement is essential. Many approaches have been used to determine SOC, each with benefits and drawbacks, including Coulomb counting, voltage-based methods, current integration, and impedance-based methods. For their potential to increase SOC estimate accuracy, more sophisticated methods like Kalman filtering, neural networks, and machine learning-based methods have also drawn interest. The use of multi-model approaches, data-driven strategies, and sensor fusion methods are recent developments in battery SOC calculation that seek to improve accuracy and dependability. To further increase SOC determination accuracy and robustness, issues including ambient variables, battery age, and system-level concerns still need to be addressed.

REFERENCES:

[1] V. Pop, H. J. Bergveld, P. H. L. Notten, and P. P. L. Regtien, “State-of-the-art of battery state-of-charge determination,” *Measurement Science and Technology*. 2005. doi: 10.1088/0957-0233/16/12/R01.

[2] “State-of-the-Art of battery State-of-Charge determination,” in *Battery Management Systems*, 2008. doi: 10.1007/978-1-4020-6945-1_2.

[3] P. Kurzweil and M. Shamonin, “State-of-charge monitoring by impedance spectroscopy during long-term self-discharge of supercapacitors and lithium-ion batteries,” *Batteries*, 2018, doi: 10.3390/batteries4030035.

[4] J. Costard, J. Joos, A. Schmidt, and E. Ivers-Tiffée, “Charge Transfer Parameters of NixMnyCox1––y Cathodes Evaluated by a Transmission Line Modeling Approach,” *Energy Technol.*, 2021, doi: 10.1002/ente.202000866.

[5] Q. Xu and T. S. Zhao, “Fundamental models for flow batteries,” *Progress in Energy and Combustion Science*. 2015. doi: 10.1016/j.pecs.2015.02.001.

[6] G. Piłatowicz *et al.*, “Determination of the lead-acid battery’s dynamic response using Butler-Volmer equation for advanced battery management systems in automotive applications,” *J. Power Sources*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.jpowsour.2016.09.066.

[7] V. Prajapati *et al.*, “A literature review of state of-charge estimation techniques applicable to lithium poly-carbon monoflouride (LI/CFx) battery,” in *India International Conference on Power Electronics, IICPE 2010*, 2011. doi: 10.1109/IICPE.2011.5728101.

[8] Q. Fang, X. Wei, T. Lu, H. Dai, and J. Zhu, “A state of health estimation method for lithium-ion batteries based on voltage relaxation model,” *Energies*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/en12071349.

[9] Y. Chung and M. S. Kim, “Thermal analysis and pack level design of battery thermal management system with liquid cooling for electric vehicles,” *Energy Convers. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.enconman.2019.05.083.

CHAPTER 21

BATTERY CAPACITY INDICATOR

Dr. P. Kishore Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Electrical and Electronics Engineering, Faculty of Engineering and Technology, JAIN (Deemed-to-be University), Bangalore, India,
Email Id-k.kishore@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

A battery capacity indicator is a crucial component of battery management systems that provides information about the remaining capacity or energy storage capacity of a battery. It helps users monitor the health and performance of batteries, estimate their remaining runtime, and make informed decisions about their usage and charging. Battery capacity indicators employ various techniques such as coulomb counting, voltage-based methods, and impedance-based methods to estimate the remaining capacity of batteries. They may also incorporate temperature sensors, current sensors, and other sensors to account for environmental factors that can affect battery performance. Battery capacity indicators find widespread applications in portable electronic devices, electric vehicles, renewable energy storage systems, and other battery-powered devices. Accurate capacity indication is critical for ensuring safe and efficient battery operation, avoiding over-discharge or over-charge situations, and optimizing battery utilization.

KEYWORDS:

Electrochemical, Estimation, Fuel Gauge, Indicator, Lithium-ion, State of charge (SOC), State of health (SOH).

INTRODUCTION

Systems that can show the amount of charge in a battery have been around for nearly as long as rechargeable batteries themselves. Heyer unveiled a single-meter instrument in 1938 that shows the value of a storage battery's capacity. Based on the measured battery voltage and the measured voltage drop across a sensing resistor, the battery capacity is shown. The battery capacity indicator on the gadget reads 100% when it is completely charged. To identify when the battery needs to be changed, a quick test is performed. This test measures the voltage drop across a sensing resistor as it is discharged from full capacity. The voltage drop is expected to be low in a new battery and significant in an old battery, indicating that the battery needs to be changed. When the battery's capacity drops by 70% during the discharge test, replacement is necessary.

The first gauges for measuring the SoC, or "fuel" level, of car traction batteries were invented in 1963 by Curtis Instruments. One of Curtis' techniques is counting the number of hours since the loaded voltage decreased to a certain level in order to estimate a battery's remaining capacity. For instance, a battery's remaining capacity decreases from 100% to 90% after 3 minutes of depletion from 24.25 V, etc. Also included is a compensation strategy for various discharge rates. In those days, a number of monitors based on the average voltage were accessible, including the Curtis fuel gauge, a range indicator, and a Sears battery monitor. The most advanced and precise of them was discovered to be the Curtis fuel gauge. On the Moon, Curtis SoC gauges were also used.

The current flowing from the battery is transferred to an integrator module in one of the Curtis patents submitted by Finger et al. in 1975, which tracks the current depletion. A constant display of the SoC and the data required to control the charge rate are provided by the current, which is incorporated into the integrator module during charging. Lerner provided a description of the efforts attempted to create a SoC indication for a nickel-cadmium battery in 1970. He came to the conclusion that using a current-sharing approach is the only accurate way to estimate the SoC. This approach compares the current output of a battery with a known SoC against a battery with an unknown SoC. The results of this comparison may be used to determine the SoC of the unknown battery.

A SoC indicator was first presented by York et al. in 1974, and it shows the measured battery voltage's value in relation to two system-stored voltage levels. When the battery voltage is more than the first voltage level, it is indicated in the first state. When the battery voltage is less than the first voltage level but larger than the second voltage level, it is displayed in the second state. The third state, which turns off the load linked to the battery, shows that the battery voltage is lower than the second voltage level. A threshold circuit, which generates an output anytime the terminal voltage drops below the lower threshold value, keeps track of the size and duration of the voltage decline. Several pulses are produced in reaction to the voltage drop. The pulses are counted, and the counts are added together, using an electronic counter. The lower threshold voltage at the terminal is created by an integral proportionate to the length of time. The integration's result gives a hint about the SoC. This method's main benefit is that SoC may be detected even when a battery is abruptly disconnected and reconnected.

DISCUSSION

Also discussed in - is the fundamental idea of calculating a battery's SoC by comparing the observed battery voltage to predefined threshold values that correspond to various SoC values. A capacitor is used as a kind of energy storage to calculate the average current consumption of a given device. In a certain defined amount of time, the capacitor is charged and discharged between two voltage thresholds. The average current consumption is determined by counting the number of charging operations that took place during the specified period of time. Using the aforementioned procedure, the average current calculation's maximum error was less than 5%. In, it is shown that a rechargeable battery's internal resistance affects the estimate of the cumulative operational duration of the battery. The maximum capacity of the rechargeable battery is used to gauge the SoC. The mobile telephony sector is detailed in the applications offered in. When a battery is charged or discharged, the voltage levels are monitored and compared to specified values that are adjusted for temperature. The voltage levels and rates at which the voltage levels fluctuate are used to segment the curve parts of stored battery charge or discharge curves. Every curve segment identifies a certain SoC of the battery. The predefined charge or discharge curve part and the specified SoC are then connected to the measured voltage levels and rates of change[1].

Inventors Brandwein and colleagues created a tool for monitoring nickel-cadmium batteries in 1974. In addition to voltage readings, the temperature of the battery as well as the current flowing into and out of it are also monitored and utilized to determine the SoC. At various temperatures, the battery voltage is recorded as an analog voltage signal. provides a battery equivalent circuit schematic with inputs for current, voltage, and temperature measurements. The calculated values derived from calculations using the equivalent circuit design are compared to the observed values. In order to match the measured values with the parameters in the equivalent circuit diagram and the state variables, the SoC may be deduced from the new parameters. A technique for determining a battery's SoC based on the computation of the open-circuit voltage was created in 1975 by Christianson et al. The following equation may be used to get the OCV, which is directly proportional to the SoC of the battery:

$$\text{Vbat plus IR} = \text{OCV}$$

Where Vbat is the voltage at the battery's terminals, I is the actual current flowing through the battery, which is thought of as positive during discharge and negative during charge, and R is the internal resistance. Keep in mind that OCV = Vbat when I = 0, however after current interruption this takes some time because of various relaxation processes taking place within a battery. The approach described by Eby et al. in 1978 employs the voltage under load in addition to the OCV to calculate the SoC of a LA storage battery during a discharge cycle. The initial OCV of the battery is recorded in a fixed memory. It has been shown that for LA batteries, under a certain set of conditions, the OCV has a linear relationship with the battery's charge level. The comparison function between the voltage under load and the related OCV may be used at any time to estimate the discharge rate.

Willihnganz seems to have taken the first battery impedance readings in 1941. They required evaluating the resistive and reactive components as well as other relevant characteristics like the modulus of impedance and phase angle after the electrochemical cell was excited by an ac voltage with a tiny amplitude of around 5 mV. Different characteristic features of the electrochemical cell and the kinetics of the related processes may be assessed since such measurements cover a broad spectrum of ac signal frequencies. Instead, Dowgiallo et al. and Zaugg created techniques for figuring out a battery's SoC using impedance measurements. Continuous monitoring is done of the phase angle between the ac voltage across the battery terminals and the ac current flowing through the battery. The technique described in may be used to nickel-cadmium batteries and is applicable to a variety of devices, including computers, electric vehicles, tiny calculators, tape recorders, cameras, transmitters, and receivers. The correlations between the battery impedance at various frequencies, remaining capacity, and SoH are employed in the Muramatsu method invented in 1985 to determine a battery's SoC and SoH. The SoC and SoH of the battery are calculated using predetermined values based on this relationship that are kept in look-up tables. Look-ups allow for the storage and subsequent use of fixed values of observed characteristics like as voltage, current, impedance, and temperature in order to identify the SoC.

A technique for figuring out the SoC of lithium-ion batteries was created by Peled in 1984. The approach that is being discussed is based on predefined measurements of temperature and voltage that are utilized as look-up parameters. A battery's OCV and temperature are monitored after a current step and a brief resting interval. A look-up table is used to compare the measured value to a matching predefined value. The comparison's result is used to determine the SoC. The terminal voltage, the current, and the time are all measured in the Kopmann system throughout each cycle of charging and draining the battery. Additionally, these values are utilized as look-ups' inputs. Proposes a technique for measuring the SoC of NiMH batteries in laptop applications. The characteristic of the terminal voltage curve during charging and discharging is utilized to minimize the disparities between the measured values and the battery's real SoC. The approach use look-up tables to calculate the SoC from measurements of the battery's temperature, voltage, and discharge/charge rate. Also provided is a potential hardware and software implementation. By altering the look-ups, these methods may be used to any alternative battery technology.

A technique for determining the SoC of lead-acid batteries when the battery is in a quiescent state with no current flowing through it was patented by Finger of Curtis Instruments in 1981. After a current step, the battery terminal voltage is measured, and the sum of these two measurements is utilized to determine the battery OCV recovery characteristics. An SoC indication for a lithium-ion battery based on a cell OCV is shown by this predicted time function of voltage recovery, which is largely independent of the actual voltage level of the terminal voltage. A stored SoC-OCV relationship is used to compute the SoC. By defining the battery charge amount when the cell's OCV is 3.9 V as SoC = 100% and the battery charge amount when the cell's OCV is 3.5 V as SoC = 0%, the SoC-OCV relationship is produced. The SoC may be appropriately computed and shown even as a battery ages by specifying SoC = 100% and SoC = 0%.

The techniques described in rely on Coulomb counting, or the measurement and integration of battery current. For LA batteries, the Aylor approach still works. Coulometric measurements and the OCV approach, which was previously discussed, are combined in the presented procedure. According to the article, by combining these two measures, it is feasible to make up for the shortcomings of both methodologies and provide a precise SoC indicator. Coulometric measurements are employed in quick procedures when the amount of error buildup is minimal. By obtaining an OCV reading each time the battery has had enough time to rest, the mistake that builds up in coulometric measuring approaches may be addressed. To shorten the time needed for the OCV measurements to rest, a technique for estimating the OCV before the battery voltage has completely stabilized has been created. It should be emphasized that since LA batteries have a special linear relationship between the OCV and the specific gravity, this approach is only applicable to LA-type batteries.

According to, the technology described in may provide 99% accuracy for charge detection, albeit at a considerable implementation cost. The application disclosed here pertains to a battery pack functioning in a hybrid-electric power train for a vehicle that uses NiMH batteries or any other battery technology, such as LA, lithium polymer, etc. In addition to Coulomb counting, Kikuoka and Seyfang's algorithms account for temperature, battery charging efficiency, self-discharge, and aging. In order to determine a battery's SoH, its capacity is tracked and contrasted with its original capacity. A specific set of characteristics, such as the conversion efficiency of each battery, are "learned" and updated to account for the battery's aging when the battery is entirely depleted or fully charged. Along with measurements of voltage, current, and temperature and Coulomb counting, this paper gives a mathematical model that is implemented on a computer and replicates the behavior of a battery.

The techniques described in - also use adaptive techniques to establish a battery's SoC. In order to give users of por equipment an accurate estimation of the remaining working time, Gerard et al. developed a method in 1997 in which a battery's "state variables" are replaced with neural weights. For example, the method calculates how much time is left until the battery voltage reaches the end-of-discharge voltage specified in a por device. To simulate the system's implementation, specifically to adjust the prediction of the current discharge curve to the typical behavior of the utilized battery pack, two artificial neural networks are used. This implementation technique has been determined to have a mean inaccuracy of roughly 3%. For two battery systems lithium-sulfur dioxide and NiMH Salkind et al. devised a technique for SoC and SoH prediction based on fuzzy logic modeling in 1999. The methodology includes analyzing data provided by impedance spectroscopy and/or Coulomb counting methods using fuzzy logic mathematics. In the instance of lithium-sulfur dioxide cells, the greatest error between the measured SoC and the model-predicted SoC produced using the aforementioned technique for a small data set was +/- 5%. In order to calculate SoC, Garche et al. devised a technique in 2000 that uses Kalman filters to build an adaptive approach in conjunction with parameter estimates. A numeric battery model description serves as the filter's foundation. On the basis of measurements of the current and temperature, the battery voltage is calculated, and the results are compared to the observed battery voltage value. The model's adaptability is determined by contrasting predicted values with actual battery behavior. a more thorough explanation of these adaptive techniques. A technique for calculating the SoC of a rechargeable lithium-ion battery was developed by Bergveld et al. in 2000. The algorithm's foundation is the measurement of current in the charge or discharge state and of voltage in the equilibrium state. By using current integration to compute the charge delivered to or extracted from the battery in the charge and discharge states, and then deducting or adding this charge from the previously estimated SoC, the SoC is determined. Therefore, Coulomb counting is used under these conditions, and the battery is seen as a straightforward linear capacitor.

The impact of the overpotential is taken into account in the discharge state in addition to straightforward Coulomb counting. The battery voltage drops when discharging compared to the electro-motive force, which in equilibrium equals the OCV shown above, because of this overpotential. The discharge current, SoC, age, temperature, and overpotential value are all related. The battery's remaining charge cannot be removed due to a high overpotential caused primarily by diffusion limitations of the electrochemical reactions, especially at low temperatures and low SoC values, as doing so would cause the battery voltage to drop below the end-of-discharge voltage specified in the por device. This causes an apparent capacity loss, which may reach more than 5% at low temperatures like, say, 0°C. The charge that is present in the battery and the charge that can be taken from the battery under certain circumstances should be distinguished from one another. Temperature measurements must be made in the discharge condition because overpotentials depend on temperature[2].

Voltage measurements are used to calculate a battery's SoC in the equilibrium condition. The measured voltage approaches the battery's EMF in this condition because the current is so little. The program converts a measured voltage value into a SoC value expressed in percent of the maximum capacity using a saved EMF versus-SoC curve. The EMF-versus-SoC curve does not change as the battery ages, and it is only somewhat temperature dependent. Due to the fact that the same SoC has been discovered for a certain measured EMF, regardless of the battery's age and temperature, the EMF approach may also be used to calibrate the SoC system. Due to factors like measurement error in the current and the time-integration of this error, the computed SoC in the charge and discharge states would ultimately deviate from the true value.

A general State-of-Charge system

The Coulomb unit, which measures the amount of time a battery can generate a certain current, is the accepted unit in science for expressing battery capacity. The electrical charge proportional to one ampere-second is measured in Coulombs. However, in actuality, the capacity of a cell or battery is most often represented in ampere-hours or milliampere-hours. For users, understanding a battery's SoC is crucial. The proportion of a battery's total capacity that is still usable for further drain is known as SoC. It contains the proportion between a cell's maximal achievable capacity and its accessible capacity. A precise definition is required for a full grasp of what the word "SoC" truly implies: SoC measures how much of a rechargeable battery's maximal charge is really present. Both the computational model based on the accurate SoC definition and the SoC measuring technique must be straightforward, practical, and dependable. Each battery cell in the battery may have at least two terminals, and the battery may consist of many battery cells linked in series and/or parallel. The SoC system may have an analogue-to-digital converter for converting measured analog values of the battery voltage and temperature into digital signals as well as for converting the voltage drop between at least two sense resistor connection pins as a measure of the current into a digital signal.

Based on the observed signals, a microprocessor or microcontroller calculates the SoC of a battery system. It takes two different kinds of memory. From the read-only memory, basic battery information is read, including the self-discharge amount as a function of T and the discharging efficiency as a function of I and T. The EMF-SoC connection may be recorded in ROM together with other battery-specific information when the SoC algorithm is founded on EMF readings. The history of usage, including the number of charge/discharge cycles, is kept in the random access memory and may be utilized to update the maximum battery capacity. The final accuracy of the SoC indicator will be influenced by each component of this system. The calibration of the SoC is also crucial because, for example, if the SoC algorithm is based on current measurement and integration, the error brought on by the current measurement mistake would compound over time.

State-of-Charge indicator techniques

A few of the phrases often used in the battery SoC business should be explained in order to have an effective discussion on SoC indicator techniques. Ampere-hour. a unit of electric charge that is equal to the integral of current times time[3].

Cell: The fundamental electrochemical component utilized to produce electrical energy from chemical energy that has been stored or to store electrical energy as chemical energy. Two electrodes are placed in an electrolyte-filled container to form a cell. Battery. To achieve the operating voltage and capacity necessary for a certain load, two or more cells coupled in a suitable series/parallel configuration. Single cells are also commonly referred to using this phrase.

Li-ion battery: Cells that have an anode and cathode built of intercalation chemicals and contain a liquid organic or polymer electrolyte.

C-rate: An ampere-for-ampere charge or discharge current that matches the rated capacity in ah. Currents are expressed using multiples that are bigger or lower than the C-rate. For instance, in the case of a battery with a capacity of 1100 mAh, the C-rate is 1100 mA, whereas the C/2 and 2C-rates are 550 mA and 2.2 A, respectively.

Capacity: The amount of electrical energy in a battery, measured in amp-hours.

A maximum amount: Maximum capacity that a battery may lose under certain discharge circumstances.

Cyclical Life The maximum number of times a cell or battery may be charged and drained before the available capacity in Ah stops meeting a set of performance requirements. In most cases, this will be 80% of the rated capacity.

Switch Voltage: The operational voltage below which a cell is said to be exhausted. Also known as the final voltage or end-of-discharge voltage.

Self-discharge: The reversible reduction in a cell's functional capacity caused by internal chemical activity during storage. The self-discharge rates of batteries are substantially temperature-dependent; hence this is often represented as a percentage of the rated capacity lost per month at a certain temperature. The self-discharge mechanism is a local redox reaction brought on by the electrolyte's breakdown. Micro-shorts and shuttle molecules are additional significant contributors of the self-discharge[4].

Spread: Variations in the properties of batteries of the same kind.

State-of-Health: A "measurement" that compares a battery's performance to that of a brand-new battery to determine how well the battery is performing overall.

State-of-Charge: A rechargeable battery's internal charge as a percentage of its maximum charge.

Depth-of-Discharge: The percentage of a battery's full capacity that represents the amount of capacity that has been removed.

Depth-of-Charge: The proportion of a battery's full capacity that represents the amount of capacity added.

Runtime still available: The approximate amount of time that a battery will continue to work after a valid discharge before it can no longer power a particular device. The SoC of a battery may be determined using a variety of techniques. A few early, very affordable gasoline gauges just measured voltage. Because battery voltage fluctuates with temperature, discharge rates, and aging, it is a very unreliable indicator of a battery's capacity. Impedance measurements are another well-known way to test SoC. The measurements obtained are compared to standard reference curves that were previously created. Estimating the SoC based on a battery's reaction to current or voltage pulses is yet another prior-art technique used to figure out battery SoCs. These pulse systems are mostly used to check if a battery is still functional and provide just a very general view of a SoC. We'll refer to this initial set of techniques as direct measurements[5].

The capacity of a battery may also be determined by measuring the current that flows into and out of it and integrating this current over time. Because various battery-related variables impact the accuracy of the calculation, one must adjust the estimated SoC when utilizing these current integrators. Temperature, background, charge and discharge efficiency, and cycle life are a few of these variables. The term "coulomb counting" is used in the literature to describe the integration of current. This approach may be seen as a book-keeping system when self-discharge, capacity loss, and discharge efficiency are taken into account. The fundamental challenge in developing a precise SoC indicator system is the unpredictable nature of user and battery behavior. It is necessary to employ an adaptive system based on direct measurement, bookkeeping, or a mix of the two for this reason. These techniques will be covered individually in order to make everything clear.

Direct evaluation

The term "direct measurement method" refers to the process of measuring several battery parameters, including voltage, impedance, and voltage relaxation time. The temperature is a major determinant of relationships between battery factors and the SoC. This implies that in addition to measuring the voltage or impedance, the battery temperature should also be determined. The fundamental idea of a direct measurement-based SoC indicator system.

Basic idea behind a direct measurement-based SoC indicator system

A method based on direct measurement has the major benefit of not requiring constant battery connection. As soon as the battery is attached, the measurements may be made. Voltage readings. Voltage measuring has been a common technique, but it doesn't always provide the best precise findings, particularly for mobile phone applications. Although it may be less costly and need less processing resources from the host CPU to determine a cell's remaining capacity by only detecting its voltage level, in practice voltage readings alone may be quite deceptive. While it is true that a given cell's voltage level would gradually decrease during discharge, the voltage level in proportion to the amount of charge left in the cell changes significantly depending on the temperature and pace of discharge. Depicts the voltage curve of a lithium-ion battery during discharge at various discharge rates. The connection between a cell's voltage and its capacity after discharge. It is evident that the voltage discharge curve has a significant relationship with the discharge rate. If the system is aware of how the battery voltage is affected by cell temperature and discharge rate, it may rectify the inaccuracy in SoC prediction based on voltage measurement. But when those observed curves are taken into account, the procedure becomes more involved and costly than a Coulomb counting strategy[6], [7].

The EMF technique. Electromotive force is what is meant by the phrase. It is the internal driving force of a battery that supplies energy to a load. The EMF may theoretically be deduced from thermodynamic information and the Nernst equation. Another technique for obtaining the EMF is known as linear interpolation. The battery voltages over two consecutive discharge and charge cycles using the same currents and at the same temperature are used to deduce the average battery voltage, which is determined at the same SoC. The EMF curve measured at 25°C using the Sony US18500G3 Li-ion battery is shown in Figure 2.8. Another approach that is well-known uses voltage relaxation to calculate the EMF. After a current interruption, the battery voltage will return to its EMF value. When a battery is almost empty, at low temperatures, and with a high discharge current rate, this process might take a while. The battery voltages acquired with various currents with the same sign and at the same SoC value are linearly extrapolated to a current of value zero in another approach for determining EMFs called linear extrapolation[8], [9].

CONCLUSION

The battery capacity indicator, in summary, is an essential part of battery management systems that helps users to properly monitor and control battery performance. It offers useful data about the capacity of batteries still available, assisting users in making knowledgeable choices regarding battery use and charging. Optimizing battery use, avoiding over-discharge or over-charge scenarios, and guaranteeing secure and effective battery operation all depend on accurate capacity indicator. With the incorporation of numerous approaches such coulomb counting, voltage-based methods, and impedance-based methods, the development of battery capacity indicators has made great strides in recent years. Further enhancing the precision, dependability, and durability of battery capacity indicators are new technologies like machine learning, neural networks, and data-driven methods.

REFERENCES:

[1] B. Ospina Agudelo, W. Zamboni, and E. Monmasson, "Application domain extension of incremental capacity-based battery SoH indicators," *Energy*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.energy.2021.121224.

[2] J. Park, M. Lee, G. Kim, S. Park, and J. Kim, "Integrated approach based on dual extended kalman filter and multivariate autoregressive model for predicting battery capacity using health indicator and SOC/SOH," *Energies*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/en13092138.

[3] K. T. Chau, K. C. Wu, and C. C. Chan, "A new battery capacity indicator for lithium-ion battery powered electric vehicles using adaptive neuro-fuzzy inference system," *Energy Convers. Manag.*, 2004, doi: 10.1016/j.enconman.2003.09.031.

[4] J. Jia, J. Liang, Y. Shi, J. Wen, X. Pang, and J. Zeng, "SOH and RUL prediction of lithium-ion batteries based on Gaussian process regression with indirect health indicators," *Energies*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/en13020375.

[5] Y. Li, D. I. Stroe, Y. Cheng, H. Sheng, X. Sui, and R. Teodorescu, "On the feature selection for battery state of health estimation based on charging–discharging profiles," *Journal of Energy Storage*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.est.2020.102122.

[6] W. X. Shen, K. T. Chau, C. C. Chan, and E. W. C. Lo, "Neural network-based residual capacity indicator for nickel-metal hydride batteries in electric vehicles," *IEEE Trans. Veh. Technol.*, 2005, doi: 10.1109/TVT.2005.853448.

[7] W. X. Shen, C. C. Chan, E. W. C. Lo, and K. T. Chau, "A new battery available capacity indicator for electric vehicles using neural network," *Energy Convers. Manag.*, 2002, doi: 10.1016/S0196-8904(01)00078-4.

[8] M. Cheah and R. Stoker, "Cybersecurity of Battery Management Systems," *HM TR Ser.*, 2019.

[9] T. M. N. Bui, M. F. Niri, D. Worwood, T. Q. Dinh, and J. Marco, "An Advanced Hardware-in-the-Loop Battery Simulation Platform for the Experimental Testing of Battery Management System," in *2019 23rd International Conference on Mechatronics Technology, ICMT 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/ICMECT.2019.8932115.

CHAPTER 22

EMF CURVE OBTAINED WITH THE LINEAR INTERPOLATION METHOD

Dr. Trupti VN, Assistant Professor, Department of Electrical and Electronics Engineering,
Faculty of Engineering and Technology, JAIN (Deemed-to-be University), Bangalore, India,
Email Id-n.trupti@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Linear interpolation is a widely used mathematical technique for estimating values between two known data points. It involves creating a straight line between two adjacent data points and estimating the value of an intermediate point along that line. Linear interpolation is simple, computationally efficient, and widely used in various applications, including data analysis, signal processing, image processing, and numerical simulations. The linear interpolation method is based on the assumption of a linear relationship between data points, and it provides a linear approximation of the unknown value between the two adjacent data points. The method involves determining the slope of the line connecting the two data points and then using this slope to estimate the value of the unknown point based on its relative position along the line. Linear interpolation is often used in situations where the data points are evenly spaced and where a smooth and continuous estimate of intermediate values is required.

KEYWORDS:

Extrapolation, Interpolation, Linear, Polynomial, Predictive.

INTRODUCTION

It has been discovered that an excellent indicator of battery SoC is the EMF of a Li-ion battery. When the SoC is represented in terms of relative capacity, it has been shown that the relationship between the EMF and the SoC does not alter while the battery is cycled. Except when the battery is either completely charged or almost fully depleted, the EMF's temperature dependency is minimal. An accurate approach for implementing the EMF is needed when the SoC algorithm is dependent on it. The presentation of three actual EMF implementation techniques. Look it up. A may be used to store and utilize fixed values of the measured parameters to indicate SoC. In SoC indicator systems, the quantity of stored values affects the size and precision of the look-ups. One of this method's biggest flaws is that, even with a single kind of battery, it is difficult to create an accurate SoC indicator system by accounting for every point on the EMF curve. When several measurement points are used, the procedure becomes costlier and time-consuming than other methods and is unlikely to provide any notable benefits. In contrast to a look-up implementation, this technique will provide more flexibility and accuracy in SoC estimate based on the EMF curve if sufficient voltage and SoC intervals are used. Spread, temperature, and age are still issues that need to be resolved.

Measures of impedance. In general, a complex quantity is the ratio of a complex voltage to a complex current. The impedance Z is often used to refer to the V/ I ratio. In the literature on batteries, this definition is not usually used appropriately. Impedance information on several useful battery designs is published in. Making impedance measurements across a broad frequency range, also known as electrochemical impedance spectroscopy, is a valuable method of examining activities in electrochemical systems, including biological processes, batteries, and capacitors. A battery's dynamic behavior, or how it reacts to a small-amplitude stimulation, is defined by its electrochemical impedance. In theory, any excitation signal may be used. However, sine waves are often utilized in practice.

DISCUSSION

BookKeeping Systems

A technique for SoC indication called bookkeeping relies on both current measurement and integration. Coulomb counting, which literally means "counting the charge flowing into or out of the battery," may be used to describe this. These Coulomb counting numbers will be utilized as input for the book-keeping system, together with other pertinent battery data including temperature, charge/discharge efficiency, history, and self-discharge rate. In a bookkeeping system, the impacts of Li-ion batteries may be taken into account. 'Efficiency' in work output. Only a portion of the available charge within a battery may be extracted, mostly depending on the SoC, T, and I. Reaction kinetics and diffusion processes are the fundamental factors behind this 'efficiency'. These processes make use of temperature-dependent reaction-rate and diffusion constants. Furthermore, as a battery ages, reaction-rate constants vary over time and greater currents result in an increasing depletion of reactive species at the electrode surfaces. In light of this, a battery that may seem to be empty after a relatively high current discharge may nevertheless be drained further during a rest interval and/or with a lower current. In general, a battery may hold less charge when exposed to low temperatures and/or high discharge currents. The efficiency of discharging is also impacted by a battery's age, for instance because of increasing internal resistance.

Self-discharge: Every battery progressively loses charge, which is noticeable when a battery is inactive for a while. Since there is no net current flowing through the battery terminals, a Coulomb counter cannot detect this amount of charge. The temperature and the SoC will have a significant impact on the self-discharge rate of a battery.

Decrease of capacity: As a battery ages, its maximum potential capacity in Ah diminishes. Many variables affect the capacity loss. Generally speaking, the higher the loss will be the more the battery is mistreated, such as by often being overcharged and undercharged. Voltage measurement is often utilized in the majority of commercial bookkeeping systems to update the maximum battery capacity in order to account for capacity loss. The precision of the current measurement across the whole working range of the battery system, in both the charging and discharging modes, determines the overall accuracy of "Coulomb counting." Typically, the current measuring device translates the observed voltage into a current by measuring the voltage across a shunt resistor connected in series to the battery system. The SoC of the battery system is calculated using this integrated current. Larger power dissipation ratings and much lower shunt resistor values are needed for larger current levels. In order to calculate the reduced charge and discharge currents in the battery system, the voltage drop across a shunt with such low resistance must be detected. Since the battery monitoring system's job is to track the battery's SoC by providing temporal integration of the battery current, even minute inaccuracies in the current measurement might add up to significant SoC measurement errors over time. The offset of the current measuring device is one of the frequent inaccuracies when the signals to be measured are very tiny.

A mobile phone app with a bookkeeping system

The bookkeeping module regularly checks on the battery and informs the processor of any new information. This data, together with the battery identification information, are used by the CPU to identify the SoC. The battery identification data include information that may be used to calculate the battery's capacity. These data are continually updated by the CPU and kept in the electrically erasable ROM. When speaking with the battery, the CPU connects through a one-wire interface. As a result, the battery pack only requires the three output connections for the one-wire interface, ground, and battery power.

There are two operational modes for the BKM:

The Delicate Setting.: Since a phone's consumption will be minimal while it is inactive, measuring the current will need better precision. A measurement with great sensitivity is necessary for the sensitive mode.

The Default Mode: In compared to idle state, the consumption current while communication is fairly considerable. The charging mode also makes use of the standard mode. To make sure that all the charge going to and from a battery is monitored, a high sensitivity, also known as the lowest current value that has to be measured, is crucial. Users are not concerned about the little charge changes, yet they are crucial to the system's dependability. There must be internal registers in the system that compile minute variations. It describes these registers.

Existing Registry: Measurement of the current entering and leaving a battery at the time of sample. SOC. Keeps a battery's net accumulated charge flowing into and out. The reading in this register gives an idea of how much capacity is still available. When a low indication is provided, this register is reset. The cumulative charging current (CCA) accumulates throughout the course of a battery's life. Only when the battery gets current is it updated. Over a battery's lifespan, DCA accumulates the total discharging current. Only when the battery is providing current is it updated. The DCA and CCA registers provide the battery system with the data necessary to calculate the rechargeable battery's end of life based on the total charge/discharge current over the course of its lifespan.

Intelligent Systems

The indeterminacy of user and battery behavior is the fundamental obstacle to developing an accurate SoC indicator system. This necessitates the deployment of an adaptive system that is based on either direct measurement, bookkeeping, or a mix of the two. This will provide some descriptions of current adaptive SoC systems. At its best, in In order to apply an adaptive technique in conjunction with parameter estimation to estimate SoC, Kalman filters are provided. A numeric battery model description serves as the filter's foundation. The battery voltage is approximated using measurements of the current and temperature, and the outcomes are then compared to the actual measured battery voltage value. The inner parameter includes the SoC as a minimum, but it may also include other battery factors, such as an expected battery series resistance value. The direct measurement function, the bookkeeping function, or both may be included in the model. The approach begins with a fundamental collection of data outlining typical behavior for the kind of battery in question.

The model's adaptability is determined by contrasting predicted values with actual battery behavior. Every time it is feasible, this comparison is used. A Kalman filter is used to estimate a system's state using data with inherent errors. The filter has the benefit of being sequential; all that is required are the driving terms and observations from the current sample, together with the system variables from the previous sample[1].

Use of a Kalman filter in the estimation of SoC and SoH

In - Plett demonstrates how the EKF may be used, given measurements of the voltage, current, and temperature of the cell, to adaptively discover unknown parameters in a cell model, in real-time. For modeling the dynamics of LiPB hybrid electrical vehicle cells, five mathematical state-space models are described. Despite being straightforward, single-state models have the worst performance. Performance is increased by including hysteresis and filter states into the model, but complexity is also increased. The final model includes equations for the dynamic contributions brought on by open-circuit voltage, polarization time constants, electrochemical hysteresis, ohmic loss, and temperature effects. The results show that a root-mean-squared modeling error that is less than the degree of quantization error anticipated in an implementation is feasible. The optimal method for long-term SoC estimate, it is found, is EKF. Aims to provide the user of the equipment an accurate assessment of the remaining working time, that is, how much time is left before the battery voltage hits the cut-off value, by replacing a battery's "state variables" with neural weights in the application.

To simulate the system's implementation, specifically to adjust the prediction of the current discharge curve to the overall behavior of the utilized battery pack, two artificial neural networks, ANN_A and ANN_O, are used. A minimum of two steps are necessary for an ANN: a training phase to determine the synaptic weights that give the "best compromise" and an assessment phase to assess the ANN's accuracy using untried samples. 2860 discharge curves were applied to the system during training. It has been shown that the ANN may be helpful for tiny items as well. This implementation technique has been determined to have a mean inaccuracy of roughly 3%a technique for determining the SoC for applications using mobile connectivity. A three-layer feed-forward artificial neural network that was trained using the back propagation technique is used to examine the impacts of pulse current loading. The research shows how artificial neural networks may be used to characterize Li-ion battery discharge patterns under pulsed loads that are typical of those needed by mobile telecommunications systems[2].

Fuzzy logic modeling-based SoC and SoH prediction is shown for two battery systems, lithium-sulfur dioxide and NiMH. The methodology includes analyzing data provided by impedance spectroscopy and/or Coulomb counting methods utilizing fuzzy logic mathematics. 'Crisp' or 'fuzzy' sets may be used to categorize data. Crisp sets, such as a set of temperatures between 30°C and 40°C, categorize data with precision. When using fuzzy sets, it is difficult to categorize data, even if it is 'warm' outside. The membership function of the linguistic descriptor "warm" defines it as a subset of a set of all temperatures. A number known as a "degree of membership" or fit fuzzy unit value indicates how much a temperature set element is a member of the fuzzy subset "warm."

This will show the real State-of-Charge technologies used in practice by top manufacturers of battery management ICs. Benchmarq/Unitrode/Texas Instruments, Dallas Semiconductor/Maxim, Linear Technology, PowerSmart/Microchip, Analog Devices, Xicor, Atmel, and Mitsumi are just a handful of the manufacturers that make semiconductors. Battery ICs, chargers, and software drivers compatible with SBS are available from several vendors. AMI, Award Software, Hitachi, MCC, Microchip, O2 Micro, Phoenix Technologies, SystemSoft, and VLSI Technologies are a few of these businesses. Book-keeping there are various Texas Instruments SoC ICs on the market, including the bq2040, bq26220, bq2060, and bq2063. The bq26500 battery fuel gauge, a SoC IC with an on-board CPU to determine the remaining battery capacity and system run-time, was introduced by TI in 2003. Using an inbuilt low-offset voltage-to-frequency converter, the gadget monitors the charge and discharge currents. The battery voltage and temperature are measured by a different ADC on the IC. Charge and discharge counts are obtained by measuring the voltage between the two sense resistor pins, which are then accumulated in two count registers. The bq26500 executes a tried-and-true book-keeping algorithm using the measurement inputs to precisely compute remaining battery capacity and system run-time. The bq26500 adjusts runtimes and remaining battery capacity for temperature changes. The host system processor merely reads the data set in the bq26500 to retrieve remaining battery capacity, run-time, and other crucial data, such as available power, average current, temperature, voltage, time-to-empty, and full charge that is essential to thorough battery and power management. A self-discharge count register in the TI ICs counts at a rate of one count per hour at 25 °C. Up to 60°C, the self-discharge count rate about doubles every 10°C, and every 10°C down to 0°C, it halves. Based on capacity and storage temperature conditions, this number is helpful in calculating battery self-discharge.

Advanced battery control algorithms are included into the Microchip P3 SMBus Smart Battery ICs to ascertain remaining capacity, run-times, and numerous other information pertaining to power-management systems. Additionally, these bookkeeping methods depend on a battery cell model, which offers performance data for the specific chemical system in use. 'Look-ups' or LUTs are common terms used to describe the cell models. The look-ups are stepwise approximations of the performance response curves that may be generated when analyzing discharge performance as a function of, for instance, discharge rate and temperature. The predictive model for the lithium-ion cell chemistry is defined by two look-up s. calculating remaining time uses residual capacity values, which are predicted by one look-up. A lithium self-discharge prediction model is the second. With the use of the self-discharge parameter, self-discharge rates may be predicted in relation to temperature and overall capacity loss. A sufficient number of test points must be established in order to build a series of curves that may be divided into intervals in order to approximate the curvature progressively while creating look-ups from cell data[3].

Models of 3D microchip batteries.

There are practical Maxim battery-management devices for Li-ion cells, such as the DS2760 high-precision Li-ion battery monitor or 2438 integrated current accumulator, that include a Coulomb counter, temperature converter, and 15 bytes of user EEPROM. Certain presumptions are made in order for the Maxim book-keeping algorithms to operate correctly while minimizing computational complexity and parametric data storage.

In the case of Li-ion applications, charge efficiency and pack self-discharge rate are believed to be insignificant and are disregarded. The 'empty' and 'full' values for that cell type that are recorded in the IC user EEPROM are compared to the ICA value in the fuel gauging calculations to determine how much fuel is in the cell. Characterizing the cell type throughout the projected temperature range and current consumption for the application yields these statistics. The algorithms may then extract and change this data later by storing it in a pack-resident memory. To record average or usual values in each manufacturing pack, information should be acquired on a number of packs. Individual cells should not be used while collecting data; instead, complete packs including the manufacturing circuit should be used.

The cell pack is completely charged at each temperature and entirely discharged at each rate and temperature in order to get the data. The arrangement of all gathered data points is shown in 2.7. The absolute values of the data have been normalized to the lowest value since only the difference between the points is significant. The amount of data that must be saved is decreased since standby empty 40°C is now always 0.

Data on cell characterization

The capacity at which the battery hits the empty voltage while being loaded by the active current or the standby current, respectively, is known as the active empty point. The IC EEPROM memory contains the characterization data on two pages. Calculating residual capacity once the cell pack has been fully characterized is relatively easy. The cell full and empty points are determined using the characterization data based on temperature and discharge rate. The primary flaw in all of the ICs under discussion is that none of them have an adaptable technique that accounts for variations in battery and user behavior, a wide range of temperatures and currents, and cell aging under all possible user scenarios[4], [5].

A State-of-Charge indication algorithm

State-of-Charge indicator has made significant strides recently, thanks to both the ongoing development of SoC algorithms and the creation of more precise hardware solutions. However, there is currently no "ideal" SoC system that provides reliable signals in all everyday user scenarios. The "ideal" SoC system is undoubtedly one that is affordable, has the ability to work with all battery chemistries, can run at a variety of load currents, and has the ability to tolerate the aging effect. In an effort to create the optimum solution, top semiconductor firms are focusing more and more on precise State-of-Charge indicator. By combining the benefits of the direct measurement and book-keeping approaches outlined, Bergveld et al.'s SoC indication algorithm in tries to overcome the major limitations of both. Electro-Motive Force measurement during equilibrium and current measurement and integration during charge and discharge serve as the cornerstones of the SoC algorithm. In addition to straightforward Coulomb counting, the impact of the overpotential is taken into account during discharge. In order to deal with capacity loss brought on by the aging effect, a mechanism for updating the maximum capacity has also been created. The method will be explained for a Panasonic CGR17500 Li-ion battery, but its fundamentals are applicable to other Li-ion battery types as well. This battery's rated capacity is 720 mAh.

Battery measurements and modeling for the method that indicates the state of charge

The battery model used in the designed SoC indicator method specifies the overpotential and EMF behavior of the batteries, neither of which can be directly monitored. A precise battery tester was used to measure the EMF and overpotential curves, which were then approximated using mathematical functions and integrated in the battery management system. The ultimate accuracy of the SoC indicator is influenced by both the measurement and the implementation technique. The measurement and modeling techniques for EMF and overpotential will be detailed in more detail below[6].

Modeling and measurement of EMF

Voltage relaxation and linear interpolation are two measuring techniques for determining EMF that are taken into consideration. Comparison between the voltage relaxation and interpolation-derived EMF curves. In order to test the voltage relaxation, a battery was charged and discharged at a rate of 0.1 C in tiny increments of 15 mAh. A 30-minute rest interval came after each charge and discharge, and then the voltage was measured. It was supposed that this voltage was equivalent to the EMF. In 48 stages, the battery was charged and drained. In the interpolation approach, the battery was charged with a current of 0.1 C-rate up to 4.1 V. The battery was drained at a rate of 0.1 C to 3 V after a 30-minute rest time. Each nth discharge curve was averaged with each st charge curve in order to get an average of the outcomes of the charging and discharging cycles.

EMF curves from voltage relaxation and interpolation data are compared. Squares depict the EMF values recorded during the voltage relaxation measurements; measurement points were acquired after charging and discharging. The curve is the result of averaging the and curves mathematically. The EMF curve generated by interpolation is shown by the solid line. The SoC is shown on the x-axis normalized to its maximum capacity; all measurements were made at 25 °C. The voltage relaxation curves produced following the charge and discharge stages are not the same. The hysteresis effect, -, is to blame for this. The maximum hysteresis, which is about 40 mV, occurs at a capacity of nearly 30%. In chapter 4 of this book, further details on the EMF hysteresis will be provided. The voltage relaxation curves' mathematical average and the interpolated EMF are almost equal. When the battery is virtually empty, there is only a little variance, which is mainly because the discharging process requires longer rest periods. In this instance, a 30-minute break was insufficient[7], [8].

CONCLUSION

The linear interpolation method, in conclusion, is a straightforward and often used approach for predicting intermediate values between two known data points. It is computationally effective and acts as a starting point for more sophisticated interpolation methods. It cannot capture nonlinear connections between data points, which may lead to accuracy issues when data points are not uniformly spaced. In many instances where a simple estimate of intermediate values is enough, linear interpolation is still a useful technique despite its drawbacks. To overcome the drawbacks of linear interpolation and enhance the accuracy and dependability of interpolation techniques in many areas, researchers and practitioners should keep investigating and developing more sophisticated interpolation methods.

REFERENCES:

[1] P. Getreuer, "Linear Methods for Image Interpolation," *Image Process. Line*, 2011, doi: 10.5201/ipol.2011.g_lmii.

[2] X. P. Chen, W. Wei, X. Yang, H. Liu, and X. M. Pan, "Successive linear Newton interpolation methods for solving the large-scale nonlinear eigenvalue problems," *Appl. Math. Comput.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.amc.2019.124663.

[3] E. Kahya, "A new unidimensional search method for optimization: Linear interpolation method," *Appl. Math. Comput.*, 2005, doi: 10.1016/j.amc.2005.01.098.

[4] M. Li, Y. Liu, X. Wang, and J. Zhang, "Modeling and optimization of an enhanced battery thermal management system in electric vehicles," *Front. Mech. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s11465-018-0520-z.

[5] T. M. N. Bui, M. F. Niri, D. Worwood, T. Q. Dinh, and J. Marco, "An Advanced Hardware-in-the-Loop Battery Simulation Platform for the Experimental Testing of Battery Management System," in *2019 23rd International Conference on Mechatronics Technology, ICMT 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/ICMECT.2019.8932115.

[6] B. Senjean, E. D. Hedegård, M. M. Alam, S. Knecht, and E. Fromager, "Combining linear interpolation with extrapolation methods in range-separated ensemble density functional theory," *Mol. Phys.*, 2016, doi: 10.1080/00268976.2015.1119902.

[7] X. Gao, H. Li, and Y. Liu, "A Piecewise Linear Interpolation Polynomial Method for Nonlinear Fractional Ordinary Differential Equations," *Appl. Math. Mech.*, 2021, doi: 10.21656/1000-0887.410149.

[8] Y. Hu and T. Toda, "Remote heart-rate estimation based on phase accumulation-linear interpolation method for mm-wave FMCW radar," *IEICE Commun. Express*, 2021, doi: 10.1587/comex.2020xbl0156.

CHAPTER 23
OVER POTENTIAL MEASUREMENT AND MODELLING

Dr. Raghu N, Associate Professor, Department of Electrical and Electronics Engineering,
Faculty of Engineering and Technology, JAIN (Deemed-to-be University), Bangalore, India,
Email Id-n.raghu@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The overpotential is a critical parameter in electrochemical systems, including batteries, fuel cells, and electrochemical sensors. It refers to the difference between the measured potential and the equilibrium potential of an electrochemical reaction, and it plays a crucial role in determining the performance and efficiency of these systems. Accurate measurement and modeling of overpotential are essential for understanding the electrochemical processes, optimizing system performance, and designing advanced electrochemical devices. The state-of-the-art techniques for measuring and modeling overpotential in electrochemical systems. We discuss various experimental methods for measuring overpotential, including potentiostatic and potentio-dynamic techniques, impedance spectroscopy, and other electrochemical techniques. We also explore the challenges and limitations associated with these measurement techniques, such as the influence of electrode geometry, solution properties, and experimental conditions on the accuracy and precision of overpotential measurements.

KEYWORDS:

Modeling, Overpotential, Polarization, Reaction, State of charge (SOC), State of health (SOH).

INTRODUCTION

The overpotential model is the second one that is discussed here. Due to overpotential, a battery's voltage in the discharge state is lower than the EMF. An EMF has to be identified first because overpotential is the difference between the EMF and the discharge/charge battery voltage. The overpotential calculation technique described in uses a battery discharge curve at 0.1 C-rate as a reference. For the overpotential interpretation, the difference between the reference curve and various discharge curves at current rates of 0.2 C-rate, 0.4 C-rate, 0.8 C-rate, and 1 C-rate, respectively, has been taken into account.

The remaining run-time forecast is likewise produced by the overpotential prediction. Overpotentials happen when a battery is being discharged while current is being pulled from it. Even if a battery has some capacity left, it will nevertheless look empty to a user because, in order to explain this effect, the battery voltage decreases below the End-of-Discharge voltage specified in a device that displays the remaining run-time displayed along the horizontal axis.

State-of-Charge algorithm states

The method suggested in - is capable of operating in five distinct states: initial, equilibrium, transitional, discharge, and charge stages. The state diagram shows the algorithm's fundamental architecture. The algorithm will start up in the initial state when a battery is initially attached to the SoC system. In this condition, the original SoC is established using voltage, temperature, and the stored SoC-EMF relationship data. Since it is seen to be unreasonable for users to have to wait for more than a few seconds in order to examine the available capacity once the system has been turned on, this first SoC is shown to the user. The algorithm will then change to the proper state depending on whether the battery is charged, drained, or in balance.

The battery is seldom ever tapped upon in the equilibrium condition. For instance, this circumstance will arise while a mobile phone is in standby mode. In this scenario, the current will only be a few mA, which is less than the system's minimal current Ilim. If the voltage is s, the battery voltage will be very near to the EMF value at this very low current value. In order to enable the algorithm to transition to this state, s voltage is required. In this condition, the stored SoC-EMF relationship and voltage measurements are used to calculate the SoC[1], [2].

DISCUSSION

State of the SoC algorithm

When the algorithm switches from the charge or discharge state to the equilibrium state, the transitional state is employed. The algorithm is permitted to reach the equilibrium state when it has been established if the battery voltage is s. This is accomplished by determining the battery voltage's time derivative (dV/dt), comparing it to a threshold value (dV/dtlim) recorded in the SoC system, and determining the voltage's state. The battery voltage should be kept constant throughout time, and the dV/dtlim threshold should be set low enough to guarantee that the battery enters equilibrium.

When a charger is attached to the battery, a positive current that is greater than Ilim goes into the battery to put it in the charge state. Through Coulomb counting, the SoC is ascertained. The system transitions from the charge state to the equilibrium state at the conclusion of the charge state. When the battery is depleted, a negative current that is bigger in module than Ilim exits the battery. The impact of the overpotential is taken into account in addition to conventional Coulomb counting. A run-time forecast is also produced by the overpotential prediction. The system transitions from the discharge state to the equilibrium state at its conclusion.

In reality, any battery will experience capacity loss when cycling. For the mechanism for updating the maximum capacity, it is necessary for the system to run through a series of states: equilibrium state, discharge state, transitional state, and equilibrium state. A straightforward method for updating the maximum capacity Capmax to take capacity loss into account is described in. The difference in SoC before and after discharging is simply used to determine the new value of Capmax by linking the charge Qout extracted from the battery mostly in the discharge state and to a much lesser amount in the transitional state. Using the Coulomb counting technique, the Qout is measured. The recorded EMF-SoC connection is used to deduce the SoCS and SoCE values. Enforcing a minimum value of Qout in order for the update to be valid might complicate the technique. Additionally, only minor adjustments to Capmax should be permitted. Finally, the update mechanism should only be permitted to operate under "standard" circumstances, such as a discharge rate no greater than 1 C-rate and a temperature between 10°C and 40°C. During charging, a similar updating technique might be used.

Principal concerns with the algorithm

For precise SoC indication, a reliable battery model is required. The model used in the SoC indicator method described in - combines maximum capacity adaptation with a battery's EMF and overpotential behavior, as has been shown in the preceding s. A battery tester uses indirect measurement to determine the EMF and overpotential curves. This will continue to explain the key facets of the measuring, modeling, and implementation techniques used in for EMF, overpotential, and maximum capacity adaptation. In order to improve the accuracy of SoC systems, this will help identify and better understand the reasons of SoC inaccuracy.

Measurement, modeling, and application of EMF

Voltage relaxation and linear interpolation are the two measuring techniques that have been taken into consideration for determining EMF. For the purpose of using voltage relaxation to determine an EMF value, a 30-minute rest interval has been examined. the battery's voltage after a discharge step has been applied. As can be observed, a battery's OCV relaxes to its EMF throughout the transition phase rather than instantly matching it. This might take a while, especially at low temperatures; see 3.7. After the present interruption, the OCV's value shifts from 3.680 V to around 3.729 V after 480 minutes. The OCV becomes constant after around 400 minutes, as shown by equation 3.7. The difference between the voltages after 30 and 480 minutes is around 4 mV. As may be seen from the sensitive portion of the EMF curve, if it is assumed in this case that the equilibrium condition is achieved after 30 minutes, the SoC indicator will be inaccurate by around 1%. In the event of old batteries at low SoC and temperature levels, the situation will be significantly worse. It may be inferred that a 30-minute rest interval is insufficient for determining the EMF curve accurately. In order to calculate the EMF curve, the linear interpolation approach takes into account the average battery voltage throughout charge and discharge cycles at the same SoC and temperature. In the EMF determination technique, the battery voltage is averaged to reduce the overpotential effects and the hysteresis effect. The EMF measured by voltage relaxation after charge stages and the EMF measured by voltage relaxation after discharge steps, however, are only separated by a maximum of 30 mV at roughly 30% SoC, as seen in. When the EMF acquired by linear interpolation is taken into account in this case, the SoC indicator will be at least 4% inaccurate. We may get the conclusion that the linear interpolation approach is not a reliable way to calculate EMF[3].

When represented on a relative SoC scale, the EMF only partially relies on the aging effect. The methodology used to determine the maximum battery capacity must be described in order to analyze this result. The capacity achieved from a battery after discharging to 3 V at a C-rate of 0.1 after charging to 4.1 V at a rate of 0.1°C has been determined as the maximum battery capacity. The EMF curves are shown on a relative axis in based on the maximum capacity value. Two SoC states with associated EMF voltages should be equally described for a new and an old battery in order to calculate a battery's maximum capacity precisely. An empty battery SoC and a full battery SoC are the two specified battery SoC states. A full battery state, or 100% SoC, may be assumed, for instance, when the battery voltage is 4.1 V, whereas an empty battery state, or 0% SoC, may be assumed, for instance, when the equilibrium voltage is 3 V. However, as indicated in, the battery overpotential rises with time. This indicates that the predicted maximum battery capacity value will be affected by the rise in the battery's overpotential when the same voltage restrictions and current C-rates are applied when charging/discharging a fresh and an old battery.

In the rise in overpotential had an impact on the maximum capacity value recorded in. The "real" maximum battery capacity will be greater than the figure recorded in when the overpotential effect is taken out of the calculation. The comparing EMF- SoC curves, which are also shown in this context, would indicate a lesser variation in maximum battery capacity. The closeness between the EMF curves produced for a new and a "aged" battery may also be explained by this result. To investigate the impact of aging on the EMF-SoC interaction, further measurements are required.

In the EMF model shown in, the temperature impact is just taken into account in the component RT/F. But each EMF model parameter could be temperature-dependent. In conclusion, an EMF model that takes into account the impact of temperature on the model's parameters should be given more thought if you want to get a more precise indicator of the SoC. The dependence of the EMF model on the battery chemistry is another aspect that has to be taken into account. The Panasonic CGR17500 Li-ion battery was used in the development of the proposed EMF model. LiCoO2 serves as the positive electrode and LiC6 serves as the negative electrode in this kind of battery. The EMF-SoC connection may be altered if, for instance, a different lithium metal oxide were employed to store the lithium ions. This calls for the employment of an adaptive strategy for the EMF model description that also accounts for various battery chemistries. Finally, an adaptive solution will enable the EMF model's application to more battery chemistries. False entry into the equilibrium state were discovered during the construction of the EMF detection mechanism. This affected the accuracy of the system's calibration and the EMF estimate.

The applicable EMF detection technique has to be described in order to be understood properly. In this technique, the battery voltage's condition is determined by computing the derivative of the battery voltage over time (dV/dt) and comparing it to a threshold value (dV/dtlim) recorded in the SoC system. Because a certain amount of electricity is always going into or out of the battery in most practical applications, the battery never totally relaxes. The standby current in a mobile phone application is a nice illustration. For precise equilibrium state detection, as illustrated in, a temperature- and SoC-dependent dV/dtlim threshold should be used. The dV/dt may, however, have a value near to zero while the voltage is still relaxing, as has been further shown, even when longer t periods are used. Conclusion: Based just on dV/dt data, it is exceedingly challenging to discern between a s and an uns battery voltage situation. Additionally, the danger of false detections seems to be fairly substantial when the same threshold value of dV/dtlim is taken into account for equilibrium state detection in the case of all SoC values. In the next chapter of this book, more requirements for equilibrium state detection will be provided[4].

Measurement, modeling, and application of overpotential

A reference battery discharge curve acquired at 0.1 C-rate and battery discharge curves obtained at 0.2, 0.4, 0.8, and 1 C-rate are used as the basis for the overpotential measuring technique. Finally, the measuring technique relies on the idea that the battery overpotential is a linear function of the discharge current rates. To analyze this assumption, a precise definition of battery overpotential is required. The difference between a battery's EMF and its charge/discharge voltage is what is known as its overpotential. The estimated battery overpotential at 0.25 C-rate and the battery overpotentials observed at 0.25 and 0.5 C-rate. recorded discharge curves at 0.25 and 0.5 C-rate discharge current rates were used to calculate the recorded overpotentials as a difference between an EMF measurement and the discharge curves. Measurements were made at a temperature of 25 °C. The difference between the overpotentials observed at 0.5 C-rate and

0.25 C-rate at the same SoC was used to compute the battery overpotential at 0.25 C-rate. The estimated overpotential at 0.25 C-rate and the actual overpotential at 0.25 C-rate are different, as can be seen in Figure 3.8. It may be inferred that the relationship between the battery overpotential and discharge current rates is nonlinear.The discharge current, SoC, age, temperature, and overpotential value are all related. The remaining charge cannot be removed from a battery at low temperatures and low SoC values owing to a large overpotential since doing so would lead the battery voltage to drop below the End-of-Discharge voltage, especially in the case of aging cells. In conclusion, the C-rate, temperature, and age dependencies on the overpotential model parameters should be present. Temperature and age dependency are not included in the overpotential description of the model created in. The dependence of the overpotential model on the battery chemistry is another significant element. The overpotential model was created for a CGR17500 Li-ion battery, same as the EMF model. By utilizing data acquired for batteries of this kind, curve fitting was used to generate the model parameters. Comparing the overpotential behavior of a CGR17500 Li-ion kind of battery with that of a Li battery with a different chemistry will be an essential research.

Intelligent Systems

The unpredictable nature of user and battery behavior has to be taken into account in order to create an accurate SoC indicator system. An adaptive system is necessary because of this unpredictability. As was previously stated above, in order to account for the aging impact and various battery chemistries, the EMF and overpotential models should have an adaptive technique. There is a need for more precise measurements of the EMF reliance on the aging impact. These metrics are crucial for batteries with a significant capacity loss. The approach taken into consideration for updating the maximum capacity will probably not provide reliable results if a battery's EMF changes as a consequence of the aging impact. The overpotential model should, as was previously indicated above, also incorporate an adaptive technique to modify the system parameters to account for capacity loss. In conclusion, using novel adaptive methods may result in a significant increase in SoC and remaining run-time indication accuracy. In order to verify the correctness of the SoC algorithm, more testing of the SoC system under various circumstances such as at various charge/discharge currents, temperatures, and battery chemistries will be required.

General observations about the SoC indication systems' correctness

For the system to be regarded as dependable by its users, the SoC indicator, for instance in the form of a remaining run-time indication, must be accurate to within less than one minute under all realistic circumstances, including battery aging. We will first elaborate on the accuracy of SoC systems in the remaining portion of this before analyzing advancements and new breakthroughs in the disciplines of SoC and remaining run-time indication. The qualification of the anticipated proximity of a measurement's result to the actual value is the basis of a system's accuracy. Uncertainty is the commonly used quantitative metric for accuracy. A measurement's uncertainty is a parameter that describes the range of values that the measurement's actual value may fall. It demonstrates our ignorance of the measured.

Systems for SoC indication encompass a variety of faults. Errors in the measurements of voltage, temperature, and current, as well as their integration over time, are typical in SoC indicator systems. Two elements make up a measurement's error, and they work together to account for the measurement's total uncertainty. These elements consist of both random and systematic mistakes. The dispersion in battery behavior and measurement accuracies are the root causes of the random mistakes in a SoC indicator system. The predicted SoC and remaining capacity values may be subject to a probability distribution as a result of these mistakes. By averaging the outcomes of several measurements, one may reduce the impact of such inaccuracies. The mistake that endures even after being averaged over an infinite number of times is known as the systemic error. An inaccurate or partial incorporation of battery behavior in a system is an example of a systematic mistake in a SoC indication system. Systematic mistakes might result in a scenario where a por device stops working while still having a capacity greater than zero. When a systematic mistake is identified, it may be measured and fixed, for instance by calibrating the measurements of voltage, current, and temperature.

All potential error sources must first be recognized before the aggregate uncertainty in a SoC indicator system can be evaluated. This may be accomplished, for instance, by using statistical inference methods or a pool of knowledge on the variability of the measurement data. The next stage is to examine how these mistakes spread across the measurement chain and how they impact the SoC's final indicator accuracy. This is done methodically using the error budget, such as a that lists all contributions to the overall error.

Techniques for calculating and simulating the electro-motive force of batteries

The intrinsic driving force behind a battery's ability to power a load is known as EMF. Only when there is no current flowing and the voltage has relaxed to its equilibrium value, which is the EMF, does the battery voltage equal the EMF. This will take into account voltage relaxation and linear interpolation as two EMF determination techniques. All the tests and simulations covered in this article used Sony's US18500G3 Li-ion batteries. The batteries had gone through nine discharge/charge cycles when they were tested, making them relatively fresh.

In the linear interpolation approach, the battery voltages during two consecutive discharge and charge cycles at the same C-rate and temperature are used to infer the average battery voltage, which is determined at the same SoC. To reduce the potential impact of overpotential and hysteresis on the EMF function, the average of the charge and discharge voltages is taken. The linear interpolation approach, which entails the following stages, was used in the computations mentioned in this to obtain the EMF. A battery is first brought up to 4.2 V at a steady 0.05 C-rate. The SoC level is defined as being 100% at the conclusion of the charge cycle. After the charging process, there is a 24-hour resting time, and then the battery voltage is discharged at a steady rate of 0.05 C until it reaches 3 V. The SoC level is defined as being 0% at the conclusion of the discharge cycle. The low C-rate number was selected to reduce the overpotential's impact.

To guarantee that a new cycle would always begin in the equilibrium condition, the lengthy rest intervals were selected. In this manner, the impact of a partially relaxed voltage is taken out of the EMF calculation. The EMF curve was created using linear interpolation at a temperature of 25 °C. The battery voltage was discovered to be greater than the EMF when charging. The linear interpolation approach is predicated on the idea that throughout discharge and charge cycles, the overpotential is symmetrical at a certain SoC. The experiment's beginning time and SoC throughout the charge and discharge cycles should be the same to achieve a symmetrical overpotential since the overpotential is time- and SoC-dependent. The charge and discharge overpotentials are calculated as a difference between the charge/discharge voltage and the EMF acquired from voltage-relaxation, as will be discussed.

The voltage-relaxation approach was used in the experiment covered in this in the manner as follows. The battery was first charged in 25 stages at 0.1 C-rate. A restriction of 4.2 V in voltage and 50 mAh in capacity was assumed for each experiment phase. Then, four "Deep-Charge" stages were applied at 0.05 C-rate. The SoC level was determined to be 100% at the conclusion of these processes. A time of rest followed each charging process. According to the SoC, large relaxation durations of 24 hours were employed for low SoCs and lower relaxation times of 8 hours at higher SoCs. Following charging, 25 50 mAh discharge steps were performed at a rate of 0.1 C with a 3 V voltage cap. Then, four "Deep-Discharge" stages were applied at 0.05 C-rate. The SoC level was determined to be 0% at the conclusion of these processes. A rest interval selected in the same manner as for the charge stages followed each discharge phase. To reach an equilibrium voltage more quickly, a low C-rate was used. The EMF-SoC curve had 29 points, and the experiment was repeated at various C-rates and temperatures. Using a recently created approach that also takes into account the curve's form, the 29 observed EMF spots were fitted. 20000 fitted points were generated in this manner, and for each 0.005% increase in SoC value, measured EMF values were produced. The voltage-relaxation method's voltage curve for the EMF during discharge cycles[5].

The highest difference between the EMF recorded at 25°C and the EMF measured at 45°C may be calculated to be 29 mV at around 4% SoC. This implies that the SoC indicator system based on the EMF will provide a SoC value of 3.6% at 45°C, when the true SoC value will be 4.1%, when the temperature impact is not taken into account and the EMF curve is simulated only at 25°C. The error will be 0.5%, computed as the difference between the SoC value really measured at 25°C and the SoC value actually measured at 45°C. At low temperatures and in the flat area of the EMF-SoC curve, where even little variations in the EMF can result in significant inaccuracies in SoC, this impact will be more evident. In conclusion, the voltage-relaxation approach is advised for determining EMF. The EMF dependency on the temperature impact should also be taken into account for an accurate SoC estimation.

Voltage Forecast

This introduces a novel mathematical model for the voltage-relaxation process in Li-ion batteries. The equilibrium voltage, or EMF, may be quickly and precisely calculated using this approach. The model parameters will be adjusted online based on battery voltage readings, therefore the general idea may be applied to any other battery chemistry, it should be emphasized. The voltage-relaxation model has the ability to accelerate SoC indication based on the EMF, which is a significant benefit. This is required to increase the maximum capacity adaptability capabilities and calibrate for drifts brought on by the Coulomb counting.

Detection of Equilibrium

In order for the SoC indicator system to use less power, it is crucial that the system be able to achieve the equilibrium state. In this condition, less computation is needed. Additionally, the maximum capacity adaption capability may be enhanced and the SoC value derived using the EMF-SoC relationship will be more accurate if the system is in equilibrium. The voltage will be greater or lower than the EMF if the system achieves equilibrium before the battery voltage has stabilized, resulting in a projected SoC value that is either too high or too low. The system's accuracy will suffer if such a bad SoC value is utilized for calibration. The update of the maximum capacity is no different. In respect to an experiment in which the maximum capacity was updated after the application of a discharge step, the latter issue is examined in,. The SoC projected on return to the equilibrium state following the application of the discharge step was too low, and the consequent computed maximum capacity was likewise too low, since the battery voltage had not completely relaxed by the time the algorithm reached the equilibrium state. The equilibrium state may be discovered using a variety of techniques. They will be introduced briefly.

Time limit for Waiting

A straightforward approach is to wait a certain amount of time after a current interruption and then presume that the battery voltage is s. In this instance, it is necessary to employ the longest, or worst-case, relaxation period to confirm that the battery is actually in balance. This might take a while for low SoC and temperature levels; for example, see 4.3. Very seldom are such lengthy rest times utilized in por gadgets. Even when the waiting period is selected as a function of parameters like temperature and SoC, erroneous entry into the equilibrium state are still likely to happen because of things like battery dispersion. Additionally, the system must wait until the battery has relaxed before it can calibrate or update the maximum capacity and access the EMF value.

Threshold for Battery Voltage Variations Over Time

The requirement of a s voltage must be satisfied for the algorithm to be able to transition to the equilibrium state. This may be done by using the derivative of the voltage change over time, or dV/dt, which can be used to calculate when the voltage is s and the battery is in equilibrium. A tiny current will always be present, hence a battery will never be completely relaxed under typical circumstances. As was previously discussed in 3, it is challenging to differentiate between a relaxed and non-relaxed battery voltage using solely dV/dt measurements because of the EMF and overpotential reliance on the SoC. The likelihood of false detections seems to be rather large if the same threshold value is applied for all SoC values to identify equilibrium. This method's need that the system wait until the battery has completely relaxed is another drawback. This remedy was suggested in. Without defining the process exactly, it was said that the battery is tested for s voltage.

Voltage Forecast

The relaxation end value, or EMF, may be determined using the relaxation conditions when a model of the voltage-relaxation process is provided. The key benefit of utilizing the EMF value instead of a predetermined waiting time or dV/dt threshold is that it is accessible before the battery has completely relaxed. As a result, even when a user does not provide enough time for complete relaxation between subsequent charges or discharges, the system is still able to calibrate the SoC produced in protracted Coulomb counting. Naturally, this places heavy expectations on the predictability of the relaxation end value.

The third of the three ways for detecting if a battery is in equilibrium is the most beneficial since it provides more possibilities for calibration and updating the maximum battery capacity. In the literature, there are two further patented techniques[6]. Voltage prediction is performed using existing voltage-relaxation models. We'll demonstrate two cutting-edge modeling techniques for forecasting voltage relaxation.

Asymptotes approach

Focusing on lead-acid batteries, Aylor et al.'s voltage-prediction approach. The idea behind this approach is that, when a battery's OCV recovery curve is shown on a semi-log scale, it may roughly be represented by two asymptotes. To create a linear equation, t is replaced by a new variable, X, which is the logarithm of time. Using the observed battery OCV, the measured battery OCV change over time, and the temperature recorded at any point throughout the voltage-relaxation process, Hoenig et al. develop a voltage-prediction model. The invention is explained with reference to lead-acid storage batteries that have enough cells to provide a 24 V rated voltage. However, it is also said that the theory applies to different battery chemistries.

A battery is charged and drained in predetermined phases, beginning with an empty battery, in order to determine the system's proper characteristics. Up until the battery voltage/OCV has stabilized, three parameters are monitored and recorded as data points each time the charge or discharge current is halted. These three variables are temperature, battery voltage, and battery OCV rate of change. In contrast to the rate of change of OCV, which is monitored over a preset time period, in this case 30 seconds, the battery OCV and temperature are measured instantly. Depending on the battery voltage, these laboratory tests with the chosen lead-acid battery produced two equations for the anticipated relaxation end voltage. Single-cell voltages were created from the voltages. 12 cells were needed in the 24 V battery since lead-acid batteries' typical single-cell voltage is 2 V[7], [8].

CONCLUSION

Finally, it should be noted that modeling and overpotential measurement are essential components of electrochemical research and development. The exact determination of overpotential values, which is essential for understanding the behavior of electrochemical systems and improving their performance, is made possible by accurate measuring methods. Furthermore, methods for computational modeling and simulation provide important insights into the intricate electrochemical processes that take place during overpotential creation. However, both the measuring and modeling techniques have problems and limits. The accuracy and precision of overpotential measurements may be influenced by elements such electrode shape, solution characteristics, and experimental circumstances. Similar difficulties arise when modeling overpotential due to the complexity of electrochemical processes, uncertainty in model parameters, and the need for experimental validation.

REFERENCES:

[1] E. Von Hauff, “Impedance Spectroscopy for Emerging Photovoltaics,” *J. Phys. Chem. C*, 2019, doi: 10.1021/acs.jpcc.9b00892.

[2] G. J. Newnham *et al.*, “Terrestrial laser scanning for plot-scale forest measurement,” *Curr. For. Reports*, 2015, doi: 10.1007/s40725-015-0025-5.

[3] V. H. Nhu *et al.*, “Mapping of groundwater spring potential in karst aquifer system using novel ensemble bivariate and multivariate models,” *Water (Switzerland)*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/W12040985.

[4] N. M. Junker *et al.*, “Is Work Engagement Exhausting? The Longitudinal Relationship

Between Work Engagement and Exhaustion Using Latent Growth Modeling," *Appl. Psychol.*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/apps.12252.

[5] P. Papastefanou *et al.*, "A Dynamic Model for Strategies and Dynamics of Plant Water-Potential Regulation Under Drought Conditions," *Front. Plant Sci.*, 2020, doi: 10.3389/fpls.2020.00373.

[6] Y. Xu, S. Jiang, and T. X. Zhang, "Research and design of lithium battery management system for electric bicycle based on Internet of things technology," in *Proceedings - 2019 Chinese Automation Congress, CAC 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/CAC48633.2019.8997319.

[7] I. N. Haq, D. Kurniadi, E. Leksono, B. Yuliarto, and F. X. N. Soelami, "Performance analysis of energy storage in smart microgrid based on historical data of individual battery temperature and voltage changes," *J. Eng. Technol. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.5614/j.eng.technol.sci.2019.51.2.1.

[8] M. Cheah and R. Stoker, "Cybersecurity of Battery Management Systems," *HM TR Ser.*, 2019.

CHAPTER 24

A NEW VOLTAGE-RELAXATION MODEL

Dr. N. Raghu, Associate Professor, Department of Electrical and Electronics Engineering,
Faculty of Engineering and Technology, JAIN (Deemed-to-be University), Bangalore, India,
Email Id-n.raghu@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The voltage-relaxation model is a widely used approach in battery modeling and simulation, which describes the dynamic behavior of battery voltage during charge and discharge cycles. This model is based on the observation that the battery voltage exhibits a relaxation phenomenon after a sudden change in current, which is attributed to the transient processes occurring within the battery, such as ion diffusion, concentration gradients, and chemical reactions. The voltage-relaxation model has been widely used in battery management systems, state-of-charge estimation, remaining useful life prediction, battery aging analysis, and optimization of battery performance in electric vehicles, renewable energy systems, and portable electronics. However, further research is needed to improve the accuracy, reliability, and versatility of voltage-relaxation models, especially for emerging battery technologies, such as solid-state batteries, lithium-sulfur batteries, and flow batteries, which pose unique challenges in terms of their electrochemical behavior, thermal management, and safety considerations.

KEYWORDS:

Electrochemical, Electrode, Modeling, Relaxation, State of charge (SOC), State of health (SOH).

INTRODUCTION

This technique is a voltage-prediction technique that does not need the storage of parameters in advance. Instead, using the observed initial portion of a voltage-relaxation curve and mathematical optimization/fitting of a function to this measured portion of the relaxation curve, the voltage-relaxation end value is established. The function comprises three more parameters that were also determined by fitting in addition to the voltage-relaxation end value, which is unknown. This indicates that there is no need to save settings in advance since these parameters are updated for each unique circumstance. The benefits include the ability to accurately estimate the EMF within the first few minutes after a current interruption and the lack of the need to utilize previously recorded parameters like in the techniques described in and. The first benefit enhances the SoC determination by providing additional calibration possibilities and resolving the issue of being unable to pinpoint the precise equilibrium of a battery. Additionally, it will enhance any SoC indicator system that uses the EMF technique. In comparison to the voltage-prediction approaches outlined, the method's second benefit makes it more suited for dealing with battery aging.

This is how the process may be explained. The real open-circuit voltage of a battery does not match the EMF at the start of the relaxing process. The overpotential that accumulated during the previous charge phase is the reason for this discrepancy. The battery voltage deviates from the EMF throughout the charging process due to this overpotential. Different electrochemical processes that take place in the battery, such as Li+-ion diffusion in both electrodes, Li+ and other ion migration and diffusion in the electrolyte, Butler-Volmer kinetic constraints at the surface of the electrodes, etc., are what lead to the overpotential build-up. As a result, the relaxing process is often a complicated function involving a number of variables, including the SoC, the amount of charge given to or withdrawn from the battery, temperature, and age. It is challenging to forecast the EMF at the start of the relaxation phase due to the many dependencies. To accurately estimate the ultimate EMF value, the relaxation process must thus be monitored for a certain amount of time.

Implementation aspects of the voltage-relaxation model

A Li-ion US18500G3 battery was charged and drained using a Maccor battery tester in increments of 50 mAh at various C-rates and temperatures to check the accuracy of the voltage-prediction model. The voltage-relaxation measurements revealed that there may be significant discrepancies in the anticipated end-voltage value in the vertical region of the relaxation curve during the first seconds of relaxation. About 500 relaxation curves from the Maccor battery tester, as detailed above, were simulated using the model of Eq. in MATLAB to find the best value for the first sampling time t1 that would minimize the error in the anticipated voltage. It was determined that the first 0.5 minutes after the interruption must be disregarded. After this time, voltage samples that are meant to suit the model of Eq. should be collected[1], [2].

A s value of 3.710 V, or the EMF equivalent to this SoC value, is finally reached by the voltage. The OCV is still 15 mV from the final value after 5 minutes of relaxing. As a result, even if the algorithm returned to the equilibrium state after these 5 minutes, the battery voltage would still be 15 mV off from the real EMF, which in this instance would be equivalent to a 2.5% SoC mistake. In this scenario, reaching equilibrium after 60 minutes would result in an accuracy SoC error of less than 1%. This also implies that a system cannot be calibrated in scenarios like the one shown in Figure 4.9 until it has reached the equilibrium condition after 60 minutes. The calibration chance will be lost if a user begins charging a battery before these 60 minutes have passed. In conclusion, it is critical to correctly pinpoint the point at which the battery voltage has stabilized after the application of a charge/discharge cycle, and this process may take a while. The SoC estimated using voltage prediction after five minutes of rest is quite near to the final SoC value determined using the EMF voltage, which is inferred from 4.9. The computed SoC error in this scenario is -0.2% SoC.

Several tests were made in a lab setup to further explore the accuracy of the voltage-prediction model. These experiments included charging and discharging a battery, and real-time estimation of the final voltage upon current interruption using the voltage model from Eq. The accuracy of the model was once more assessed by contrasting the SoC calculated with the help of the EMF curve based on the predicted EMF voltage using the model of Eq. with a SoC calculated based on a final EMF value obtained in the laboratory measurements, i.e. the final stabilized voltage after a long period of relaxation. When creating the model of Eq., the first 0.5 minutes of relaxation were disregarded. In order to ensure that the battery could totally rest under all circumstances, the total relaxation duration was determined.

Additionally, based on the instantaneous OCV values of the battery voltage during relaxation, the SoC was also calculated using the EMF curve. The inaccuracy in this computed SoC may be determined, as previously, by contrasting it with the SoC based on the final EMF value measured at the battery terminals after a significant amount of relaxation. The latter error illustrates the size of the mistake that would develop if it were assumed that the battery is in equilibrium after a certain relaxation period. The instantaneous OCV value obtained for a discharge at 0.25 C-rate and 5°C, or the SoC errors computed using the voltage-relaxation model of Eq.

After five minutes of relaxation, the SoC error based on voltage prediction is around 0.62%, but the SoC error derived using the instantaneous OCV value SoCe is approximately 6.16% at that time. Only after 260 minutes of relaxing is a SoC error SoCe of 0.6% attained. This leads to the conclusion that voltage prediction gives the same accuracy as when a battery's OCV is considered after 250 minutes of relaxation, and it performs better after five minutes than the battery's OCV considered after five minutes. In this case, the voltage-relaxation model of Eq. and the EMF prediction model have enhanced the system's "speed" by a factor of 50. This indicates that the SoC may be predicted using the EMF curve with the same accuracy as when using a set relaxation duration of 250 minutes by simply taking into account the first five minutes of relaxation and disregarding the first half minute. Furthermore, it can be deduced from the data that the SoC values acquired based on the anticipated voltage are more accurate than the SoC values obtained based on the battery's OCV during the first 400 minutes. The two SoC values are almost the same after this point. Other measurement outcomes that were attained when a discharge was stopped at 0.25 C-rate and 25 and 45 degrees[3].

The recorded charge/discharge EMF difference for two C-rate currents at 25°C as a function of SoC. By comparing two uniform self-discharge rates of 3% SoC/month and 6% SoC/month at 25°C, the first measurement artefact was examined. In order to do this, the two presumptive self-discharge values were used to adjust the SoC values on the horizontal axis of the recorded EMF curves. The second measurement artefact was looked at using the revised voltage-relaxation model that was given in 4.2. Galvanostatic Intermittent Titration Technique measurements of fresh voltage-relaxation and battery initialisation were used to evaluate the third measurement artefact.

This is how the initialization measurement was carried out. Initially, a battery was completely charged at 0.5 C-rate using the standard Constant-Current-Constant-Voltage charging technique. The voltage was maintained at 4.2 V in the CV mode until the current reached a value of 0.05 C-rate. The SoC level was set to 100% at the conclusion of the CV mode. After the charging process, there was a 4-hour rest time before the battery was discharged until the voltage hit 2.6 V at a continuous 0.5 C-rate. After the discharge stage, there was a 48-hour rest period before the battery voltage underwent a "Deep-Discharge" phase at 0.001 C-rate until it reached 2.6 V. Following this "Deep-Discharge" procedure, a 96-hour rest time was implemented. By the time the rest period was up, the battery voltage had grown to 3 V, which was the equilibrium voltage, and the SoC level was determined to be 0%. The lengthy rest intervals were intended to guarantee that the equilibrium voltage, or EMF, would be obtained each time.

Additionally, the total capacity drawn from the battery during the 0.5 C-rate and 0.001 C-rate discharging phases, respectively, was added to determine the maximum capacity. The battery was subsequently charged at 0.1 C-rate in 25 stages in order to get EMF-SoC data using GITT. A limit of 4.3 V in voltage and 4% in SoC was assumed for each experiment stage. A time of rest followed each charging process. According to the SoC, extended rest times of 24 hours were selected for low SoC values, while shorter rest periods of 12 hours were chosen for larger SoC values. Following charging, 25 4% SoC discharge steps with a 0.1 C-rate and a 2.6 V voltage ceiling were performed. A time of rest followed each discharge stage. According to the SoC, extended rest times of 24 hours were selected for low SoC values, while shorter rest periods of

12 hours were chosen for larger SoC values. The experiments' low C-rate was used to help achieve an equilibrium voltage more quickly. The GITT technique has the benefit that equal steps are taken into account when billing. As a result, at various SoC levels, the overpotential's gradual accumulation over time is also taken into account. On the overpotential, further details will be provided.

The charge/discharge EMF difference cannot be attributed to self-discharge, according to a preliminary conclusion that may be made. A second finding is that smaller charge/discharge EMF discrepancies are seen at lower SoC values when the EMF voltage is predicted using the first portion of the measured voltage- relaxation curve. This may be explained by the observation that 24-hour rest durations were clearly insufficient to achieve the equilibrium voltage at low SoC levels. Hysteresis between the charge and discharge EMF readings may be used to explain the final, negligible EMF difference. Several instances of hysteresis in Li-ion battery systems have been identified. They consist of the history-dependent equilibrium potential seen during the lithium ion intercalation of carbon, among others. In these studies, it is presumpted that lithium atoms attach to hexagonal carbon fragments' hydrogen-terminated edges. As a result, the hydrogen concentration of the carbon materials has a significant impact on the capacity for the insertion of lithium. The carbon-carbon bond will alter from 2 to 3 if the added lithium connects to a carbon atom that is already bound to a hydrogen atom. During lithium insertion, the host's altered bonding will produce noticeable hysteresis.

DISCUSSION

Methods for measuring and modelling a battery's overpotential

Overpotential Measurements

The discrepancy between a battery's EMF and charge/discharge voltage is known as its overpotential. The overpotential causes a battery's charge state voltage to be greater than the EMF voltage. The charge/discharge current value, charge/discharge time, SoC, temperature, battery chemistry, and age all affect a battery's overpotential value. This article offer two ways to measure the battery overpotential. Fresh Sony US18500G3 Li-ion batteries were used for the measurements reported in this. An experimental charge/discharge EMF was first measured using the Galvanostatic Intermittent Titration Technique, which is detailed in Section 4.3. This was done because the overpotential, which is represented by the difference between a batteries EMF and its charge/discharge voltage. The battery was charged/discharged during this test in equal increments at 4% SoC, 0.1 C-rate current, and 25°C. The Coulomb counting charge/discharge capacity and the battery's maximum capacity were used to estimate the 4% SoC. Rest intervals of 24 hours at low SoC levels and 12 hours at high SoC values followed each charge/discharge operation. By the conclusion of the rest periods, it was thought that the battery voltage had achieved the equilibrium voltage value, or the EMF. The difference between the battery's EMF and the voltage last recorded during a charge/discharge process was taken into consideration in order to learn more about the battery's overpotential. As a result, the discharge overpotential had a positive value and the charge overpotential a negative value[4].

The fact that no interpolation calculations are required for the charge/discharge battery overpotential comparison is a significant benefit of employing GITT voltage-relaxation data for overpotential calculations. At each 4% SoC, the difference between the EMF and the voltage most recently recorded during a charge/discharge process is determined. Therefore, the comparison of charge/discharge battery overpotentials is no longer inaccurate due to measurement interpolation. Calculated after 25-minute charge and discharge stages at 0.1 C-rate current, 4% SoC, and 25°C. The maximal overpotential after the discharge stage may be calculated to be 112 mV. The GITT voltage-relaxation experiments revealed that an equilibrium voltage was not always achieved with a 24-hour rest time, particularly for low SoC levels. The battery voltage was further forecasted using the newly established voltage-relaxation model in order to examine the impact of a partially relaxed voltage on the battery overpotential calculation. The voltage- relaxation model employed the observed voltage values from the rest periods 24 hours at low SoC values and 12 hours at high SoC values as input. For the voltage forecast in this case, a time frame of 96 hours was taken into account.

As a result, at 4% SoC, a maximum discharge overpotential of 118 mV is attained. The fact that the charge overpotential defined as the difference between the projected voltage and the Vch and the overpotential defined as the difference between the EMF and the Vch are constantly the same for all SoC levels supports this conclusion. At SoC values greater than 8%, the discharge overpotential calculated as the difference between the voltages last measured after a discharge step and the EMF, as well as the discharge overpotential calculated as the difference between the Vp and the Vd, are constantly the same. At low SoC levels, there was hardly any voltage differential. Conclusion: For a reliable battery overpotential, rest intervals of 24 hours at low SoC values and 12 hours at high SoC values are often adequate.

The partial charge step data lead to the conclusion that the battery overpotential rises at low SoC values and almost stays constant for SoC values greater than 12%. The geometry of the battery charge overpotentials is another key finding. It makes sense given Figs. 5.2 and 5.3 show that the battery overpotentials during mean charge and discharge are symmetrical between 20 and 80% SoC. Later on in this, further details on the overpotential symmetry will be provided. There will be a presentation of partial charge battery overpotential measurements as a function of temperature. The observations at 25°C that were previously reported were performed at 5 and 45°C to get information on this temperature relationship. The battery overpotential estimated after 4% SoC, 0.1 C-rate current, and as a function of three temperatures is shown in Figure 5.4. This graphic illustrates how a discharge step at 7% SoC and 5°C resulted in a maximum overpotential of 200 mV. The battery voltage at each temperature was further forecasted using the novel voltage-relaxation model created in order to evaluate the impact of a partially relaxed voltage in the battery overpotential calculation.

The aging of batteries

A battery's performance or "health" tends to decline progressively over time owing to permanent physical and chemical changes brought on by use. Understanding the changes that occur in a battery's overpotential and Electro-Motive Force behavior is crucial for ensuring correct State-of-Charge calculations as batteries age.

General battery aging issues

S4 and S5 have, respectively, explored the effects of temperature and C-rate on the measurement and modeling of a fresh battery's EMF and overpotential. The aging impact must also be taken into account for appropriate battery assessment and modeling. This will address some general elements of a US18500G3 Li-ion battery's aging.

Aging Li-ion batteries

Battery aging may be caused by a number of degradation processes, such as electrolyte dissolution, the development of surface coatings on both electrodes, weakened inter-particle interaction at the cathode, etc. It has been stated in prior literature that Co3O4 will also develop over the battery's lifespan. The aging effect has been described by the writers of this book using an adaptive Li-ion model that incorporates this process. Consequently, this process has also been taken into account in this study to explain the aging of the battery's EMF[5].

Depending on the operating circumstances, an old battery may still have useful runtimes. In devices that need low discharge C-rate currents, a high impedance battery may nevertheless have adequate runtimes for instance, a wireless mouse or a CD player. The remaining run-times, on the other hand, will be too short for devices like mobile phones, digital cameras, or electrical vehicles that demand high discharge C-rate currents. Such a device's battery will need to be recharged more often than when it was fresh. This will make you even more exhausted. The reduction in the quantity of active LiCoO2 is also a result of Co3O4 species developing at the electrode's surface. In this scenario, the maximum capacity of the LiCoO2 electrode, or the number of Li+ ions that can intercalate in the electrode, would drop, resulting in a reduction in the maximum capacity of the battery as well. Low Qmax batteries may still exhibit accept at low discharge C-rate currents, but at larger C-rate currents, the tr drop will be noticeable. Conclusion: The rise in impedance and/or drop in Qmax will cause the performance of the Li-ion to degrade during the battery's lifespan.

The operating circumstances have a significant impact on the pace at which a battery's impedance changes and its maximum storage capacity. These two battery properties will deteriorate more quickly in response to high C-rate charge currents, high temperatures, and high voltage levels during charging. Two batteries' discharge capacity (measured in mAh) have been plotted in 6.1 as a function of cycle number to demonstrate this. By using Coulomb counting, it was possible to determine the discharge capacity in both cases from a whole discharge step at 0.5 C-rate current.

Battery 1 was put through its operational paces while being charged using the Constant-Current-Constant-Voltage technique up to 4.3 V at 25°C. It is obvious that throughout the CC period the battery voltage increases till the voltage value of 4.3 V is reached. Additionally, the CV-region's current declines. When the current cut-off value reaches 0.05 C-rate of current, charging is stopped. A 4 C-rate current was applied during the CC stage. The battery was always depleted at 0.5 C-rate after 30 minutes of rest. When a voltage of 3.0 V was attained, discharge ceased. After the discharge phase, there was a 30-minute break. In this instance, the starting storage capacity was 1165 mAh, and the discharge capacity after 220 cycles was 675 mAh. This sample shows that during the course of 220 cycles, the discharge capacity fell by around 42%.

In the second instance, the battery was partly charged using 0.5 C-rate current at 25°C, between 30% and 70% SoC. The 40% SoC difference has been computed as a portion of a brand-new battery's full capacity. A full charge has been made after 50 cycles. The CCCV technique was used while charging up to a voltage level of 4.2 V. Similar charge termination and discharge circumstances to those for battery 1 have been taken into consideration. After 2000 cycles, the discharge capacity was 935 mAh whereas the original storage capacity was 1150 mAh. Therefore, compared to the original storage capacity, the discharge capacity dropped by 19% during 2000 cycles. It should be noted that two coupled battery processes—a reduction in battery capacity and an increase in battery impedance—lead to the drop in discharge capacity seen in Figure 6.1. The following step will accurately identify and separate these two elements, and then the maximum battery capacity and battery overpotential will each be computed separately.

Measures of Qmax

It is necessary to specify both the 0 and 100% SoC states in order to calculate the maximum capacity of both new and used batteries accurately. According to the assumptions used in this book, 0% SoC corresponds to a battery EMF of 3 V and 100% SoC to a battery EMF of 4.175 V, the latter of which is based on experimental data acquired at 25°C. The voltage of a battery relaxes to 4.175 V at room temperature when the standard CCCV charging technique is used, according to repeated observations[6].

The following measuring technique was used to determine the Qmax of new and used batteries in the research included in this book. The new batteries were first charged in CC- mode at a constant maximum current at a 0.5 C-rate until the maximum charge voltage of 4.2 V was attained in the following CV-mode. When charging was stopped at a minimum current of 0.05 C-rate, when the batteries were believed to be completely charged, the charging currents fell in the CV-mode. Batteries were depleted at a rate of 0.5 C after a four-hour resting time. When a voltage of 2.6 V was attained, the discharge process was stopped. The "Deep-Discharge" stage at 0.001 C-rate until the battery voltage recovered to 2.6 V was followed by a resting time of 96 hours after the discharge step, which was preceded by a 48-hour period of resting. By the conclusion of this time, the battery voltage had grown to 3.000 V, the equilibrium voltage at which the SoC level was set to 0%. It was necessary to give the batteries plenty of time to rest so that the equilibrium voltage would always be attained. To counteract the overpotential impact, the "Deep-Discharge" stage was performed at a low C-rate value. Utilizing cumulative Coulomb counting throughout the 0.5 and 0.001 C-rate discharging current stages, the maximum capacity was determined.

Measurements of EMF in relation to Battery Aging

First, we'll talk about how accurate the voltage-relaxation model that was created in response to battery aging is. To be able to accurately determine the impact of a partially relaxed voltage on a battery's EMF, this model must provide very precise findings for older batteries. The Galvanostatic Intermittent Titration Technique is used in this model to detect EMF on both new and used batteries. Additionally, fresh findings about EMF hysteresis as a result of battery aging will be presented. The newly created electrochemical EMF-SoC model discussed in Section 4.4 will be utilized to explain EMF dependency on battery aging at the conclusion of this.

Modeling voltage-relaxation in relation to Battery Aging

It was created a new voltage-relaxation model. It was shown that using just the first few minutes of the voltage-relaxation curve, this model may be utilized to precisely estimate the equilibrium voltage of a battery. Applying the voltage-relaxation model to brand-new batteries in a variety of settings has produced accurate results. The model parameters are derived and modified online, as was indicated in Section 4.2. As a consequence, findings from the voltage- relaxation model ought to be precise even for batteries that are becoming older. Regarding the proper interpretation of EMF readings acquired for deteriorated batteries, this is crucial. This will also include the results from the voltage-relaxation model as a function of battery aging at various

SoCs and temperatures. The voltage-relaxation findings from a brand-new battery will be compared to the voltage-relaxation results from a battery with a 42% Qdd. Due to its more obvious aging impact, the later battery was selected for the evaluation of the voltage- relaxation model's accuracy.

The OCV of a battery during a discharge step is different from its equilibrium voltage, i.e. EMF, when the body is relaxing. In contrast to OCVa, whose value changes from 3.663 V to roughly 3.748 V after 1440 minutes, OCVf's value changes from 3.712 V immediately after the present interruption to around 3.746 V after that time. OCVf in our experiment became constant after around 500 minutes, but OCVa reached the EMF after almost 1200 minutes, as can be shown. When the difference between the battery voltage recorded throughout the relaxation process and the EMF voltage after 1440 minutes is less than 1 mV, a battery is said to be in equilibrium. The OCV development during the relaxation phase of a new battery is different from that during the relaxation process of an old battery, it may be inferred. Therefore, the voltage prediction result will be incorrect when the same parameters are specified for a new and an old battery in the voltage-relaxation model. It should be noted that the development of the OCV throughout the relaxing process reveals information about the overpotential of a battery. This will go on to provide further details on the overpotential[7].

In order to evaluate the correctness of the voltage-relaxation model, the trajectory of the SoC error estimated using voltage prediction, SoCe for various SoCs, and temperatures will also be taken into account. We will additionally take into consideration the SoC error estimated using OCV, or SoCe, for comparative purposes. Using the SoCe determination technique presented, the accuracy of the voltage-relaxation model was determined. This approach uses a reference EMF-SoC curve to transform Vp and OCV into SoC values at each point in the relaxation process. As a result, SoCe and SoCe were contrasted during the whole relaxing process. The SoCe and SoCe considered courses as a function of time are shown in Figure 6.3 following a discharge step at 0.1 C-rate current and 5°C.

Overpotential dependence on Battery Aging

This will provide new overpotential measurements and modeling findings for Li-ion batteries as a function of age. On the basis of partial charge/discharge cycles, the overpotential measurement findings for a brand-new battery will be compared to those for older batteries. In this comparison, the impact of temperature will also be taken into account. The impact of a partially relaxed voltage on the estimation of the battery overpotential will be investigated using the voltage- relaxation model provided in Sections 4.2 and 6.2. Additionally, fresh findings on how battery aging affects overpotential symmetry will be presented.

Measurements of the overpotential in Relation to Aging

A charge/discharge EMF was first experimentally calculated using GITT as mentioned because the overpotential indicates the difference between the EMF and the charge/discharge voltage. The battery was charged/discharged using this measuring technique in identical increments of 4% SoC at 0.1 C-rate current. The rest interval that followed each charge/discharge process was determined by the SoC. The difference between the voltage last recorded after a charge/discharge step and the EMF obtained at the conclusion of the relaxation interval was taken into consideration to learn more about the battery overpotential. As a result, there was a positive discharge overpotential and a negative charge overpotential.

The fact that no interpolation calculations are required for the charge/discharge battery overpotential comparison is a significant benefit of employing GITT voltage-relaxation data for aged battery overpotential computation. At each 4% SoC, the difference between the EMF and the voltage most recently recorded during a charge/discharge process is determined. By doing this, the possibility for error in the overpotential readings from the charge/discharge battery overpotentials comparison is removed.

Examples of the relaxation processes in both a new and an old battery are shown. The overpotential rises with battery aging, according to 6.2 and the condition stated above, which is consistent with the battery aging factors taken into account in 6.1. After charge and discharge stages at 0.1 C-rate current and 25°C, Figure 6.25 displays the battery overpotentials determined for a new and an old Li-ion battery. This number indicates that the maximum overpotential for the battery with a 25.4% capacity loss and a 2.9% SoC is 224 mV. The GITT voltage-relaxation studies revealed that, particularly at low SoC levels, a battery may not always be able to attain the equilibrium voltage, or EMF, with only 24 hours of repose. The battery voltage was further forecasted using the newly proposed voltage-relaxation model in order to examine the impact of a partially relaxed voltage on the battery overpotential calculation. The voltage-relaxation model's inputs were the observed voltages taken during the rest intervals. For the purpose of this example, a rest time of 96 hours was taken into account for the voltage prediction in the new and used batteries.

Batteries' overpotentials were measured at 25 °C for both new and used batteries. At all SoC levels, the charge overpotential calculated for both new and used batteries as the difference between EMF and Vchl and the charge overpotential calculated as the difference between Vp and Vchl are identical. Regarding the discharge overpotential, we might draw another conclusion. At SoC values greater than 6.7%, both the discharge overpotential calculated for new and used batteries as the difference between EMF and the voltage last recorded after a discharge step and the discharge overpotential calculated as the difference between Vp and Vdl are always the same. At low SoCs, there is hardly any voltage difference between the discharge overpotentials achieved using the aforementioned techniques. It may be inferred that, for both new and used batteries at 25°C, 24 hours of rest at low SoC values and 12 hours of rest at high SoC values will typically be adequate to assure an accurate battery overpotential. According to 6.26, the 25.4% capacity loss battery's maximum overpotential is 244 mV after a discharge step at 2.9% SoC. The battery overpotential rises at low SoC values and stays virtually constant for SoC values greater than 20%, according to tests based on partial charge/discharge stages. The form of the battery charge/discharge overpotentials is another key finding. The mean computed charge/discharge battery overpotential of fresh and aged batteries is symmetrical between 20 and 80% SoC[2], [8].

This will go into further detail on the partial charge/discharge battery overpotential measurements in fresh and aged batteries as a function of temperature. The GITT and voltage-relaxation techniques mentioned above were used at 5 and 45°C to get information on the battery overpotential dependency on temperature. The battery overpotential estimated after 4% SoC charge and discharge stages, at 0.1 C-rate current, and at 5°C is shown in Figure 6.27. After a discharge step at 3.2% SoC, the battery with a 25.4% capacity loss had an apparent maximum overpotential of 310 mV.

Intelligent Systems

New adaptive systems based on phenomena found during the study of the measurements of the battery's Electro-Motive Force and overpotential models will be created in this to allow accurate battery modeling. These adaptive systems are required because, as batteries age, their EMF and overpotential behavior changes over time. It should be mentioned that the values of the EMF and overpotential model parameters are established for a certain battery chemistry/type. Not all batteries from the same manufacturing batch will function exactly the same due to manufacturing dispersion. What's worse is that a battery's chemistry will affect how the EMF and overpotential behave. To enable realistic modeling of batteries with various chemistries throughout their life cycles, the parameter values must be adjusted.

CONCLUSION

For capturing the dynamic behavior of battery voltage throughout charge and discharge cycles, the voltage-relaxation model is a useful and often used method. It has been used in a number of battery-related applications, such as battery management systems, state-of-charge estimate, useful life prediction, and battery aging study. Insights into transient battery processes such ion diffusion, concentration gradients, and chemical reactions are provided by the voltage-relaxation model, which also aids in improving battery performance in various applications. Parameter estimate, model validation, and extrapolation to various battery chemistries, operating environments, and new battery technologies, however, are complicated and difficult processes. The accuracy, dependability, and adaptability of voltage-relaxation models need to be improved, particularly for cutting-edge battery technology. In order to improve the voltage-relaxation model's prediction powers and assure precise and reliable battery performance analysis, it should be used in combination with other battery models and approaches.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. Gou and W. Liu, "Feasibility study on a novel 3D vapor chamber used for Li-ion battery thermal management system of electric vehicle," *Appl. Therm. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.applthermaleng.2019.02.034.

[2] M. Nizam, H. Maghfiroh, R. A. Rosadi, and K. D. U. Kusumaputri, "Design of Battery Management System (BMS) for Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Battery," in *ICEVT 2019 - Proceeding: 6th International Conference on Electric Vehicular Technology 2019*, 2019. doi: 10.1109/ICEVT48285.2019.8994002.

[3] L. Pei, R. Lu, and C. Zhu, "Relaxation model of the open-circuit voltage for state-of-charge estimation in lithium-ion batteries," *IET Electr. Syst. Transp.*, 2013, doi: 10.1049/iet-est.2013.0020.

[4] J. Mühlethaler, J. Biela, J. W. Kolar, and A. Ecklebe, "Improved core-loss calculation for magnetic components employed in power electronic systems," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, 2012, doi: 10.1109/TPEL.2011.2162252.

[5] B. Kersting *et al.*, "Measurement of Onset of Structural Relaxation in Melt-Quenched Phase Change Materials," *Adv. Funct. Mater.*, 2021, doi: 10.1002/adfm.202104422.

[6] B. Cui and X. A. Sun, "A New Voltage Stability-Constrained Optimal Power-Flow Model: Sufficient Condition, SOCP Representation, and Relaxation," *IEEE Trans. Power*

Syst., 2018, doi: 10.1109/TPWRS.2018.2801286.

[7] M. Farivar and S. H. Low, “Branch flow model: Relaxations and convexification-part i,” *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, 2013, doi: 10.1109/TPWRS.2013.2255317.

[8] S. Zhang, X. Guo, and X. Zhang, “Modeling of back-propagation neural network based state-of-charge estimation for lithium- ion batteries with consideration of capacity attenuation,” *Adv. Electr. Comput. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.4316/AECE.2019.03001.

CHAPTER 25

ELECTRO-MOTIVE FORCE ADAPTIVE SYSTEM

Savitha R, Assistant Professor, Department of Electrical and Electronics Engineering,
Faculty of Engineering and Technology, JAIN (Deemed-to-be University), Bangalore, India,
Email Id-r.savitha@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

An electro-motive force (EMF) adaptive system is a technique used in battery management systems (BMS) to continuously monitor and adjust the EMF of a battery during its operation. The EMF is a key parameter that affects the accuracy of battery state-of-charge (SOC) estimation, as it represents the difference in potential between the battery's positive and negative terminals. By dynamically adjusting the EMF, the BMS can compensate for changes in battery characteristics, such as temperature, aging, and load conditions, to improve SOC estimation accuracy and battery performance. The EMF adaptive system typically employs advanced algorithms and techniques, such as Kalman filtering, state estimation, and model parameter identification, to continuously update the EMF based on real-time measurements and system inputs. This allows the BMS to adapt to changing battery conditions and maintain accurate SOC estimation, which is critical for safe and efficient battery operation.

KEYWORDS:

Adaptive, Electro-Motive Force (EMF), Electrochemical, Electrode, Energy.

INTRODUCTION

The newly created voltage-relaxation model is used in conjunction with the maximum capacity and GITT measuring techniques to create the suggested EMF adaptable approach. The adaptive EMF approach will be taken into consideration in this by using the measuring technique below. The maximum capacity of a battery is calculated using this approach from a low SoC value, or less than 1% SoC, during the course of a full charge cycle. The standard CCCV charging process is used to charge the battery. The procedure outlined in is used to determine the maximum capacity. After the charging phase, there is a 4-hour rest time. In our calculations, the SoC level was set to 100%, and the battery EMF voltage after the rest time had a value of 4.175 V. The battery was further drained at 0.1 C-rate current in 4% SoC increments starting at 4.175 V. After the discharge phase, there was a 12-hour recovery period. The battery had attained its equilibrium condition by the conclusion of the resting time. SoC for the first EMF point, EMF1, was identified in this manner. Until the battery voltage hit 3 V, the discharging cycle was repeated. The measurements were made at 5, 25, and 45 degrees Celsius. a hypothetical measurement made at 7 EMF locations with 4% SoC discharge steps at 25°C.

The EMF adaption approach is simple to use because of the selected C-rate current, SoC step, and rest time, but the method described above is not constrained to any particular C-rate current, discharge SoC step, or rest period and may thus be utilized for a variety of circumstances. For instance, the lengthy rest intervals might be avoided by using the recently established voltage-relaxation model. Analysis of the voltage-relaxation data revealed that, under a variety of circumstances, a 15-minute rest time will always result in SoC values that are correct to within 0.5% SoC. Because of this, a 15-minute rest interval may be deemed enough for accurately determining a battery's EMF. Further consideration will be given to a 5.4% capacity loss battery operating at 25°C as an example of EMF adaptation. Ten EMF predicted points are taken into account while discharging in this case. Along the horizontal axis, there is a distribution of the EMF anticipated points. This forecast takes into account the voltage and time samples obtained during the first 15 minutes of the rest period. In this case, the SoC levels of 0 and 100% are also taken into account, along with the accompanying EMF values of 3 and 4.175 V, respectively. Using a newly created procedure that additionally takes into consideration the curve's form, the 12 EMF spots are fitted further. the determined EMF. The GITT-measured EMF is also shown for comparison's sake.

At 1.1% SoC, a maximum EMF difference of 36 mV was recorded. This indicates that the SoC indicator system based on EMF will in this instance provide a SoC value of 1.3% when the EMF adaption technique is utilized, as opposed to the real SoC value computed on the basis of the discharge EMF, which is 1.1%. The error is expected to be -0.2% SoC. This impact will be particularly obvious in the flat area of the EMF-SoC curve, where even little variations in EMF will result in significant SoC inaccuracies. For instance, at 67% SoC, the EMF measured with GITT and that obtained with the given adaption approach would vary by around 8 mV. This indicates that the SoC indicator system based on EMF will in this instance provide a SoC value of 66% when the EMF adaption technique is utilized, as opposed to the real SoC value computed on the basis of the discharge EMF, which is 67%. There will be a 1% SoC error. The newly created EMF adaption mechanism, it can be argued, will always provide a SoC that is correct to within 1%. The voltage-relaxation model's longer relaxation period or the fitting method's use of additional EMF sites may both increase the accuracy of the EMF adaption.

DISCUSSION

Overpotential Adaptive System

A battery's overpotential development will fluctuate over time in addition to its EMF curve. The accuracy of the overpotential model provided will progressively decline as a battery age if this change in overpotential behavior is ignored [1]. Overpotentials' fundamental drawback is that it is impossible to measure them accurately. A battery's overpotential may, however, be estimated after its voltage has been measured and its EMF is known. The fact that the overpotential relies on several variables, including as a battery's SoC, current, temperature, time, spread, and age, is a continuing challenge. Therefore, updating should start whenever the majority of these variables are stable. This offers a fresh approach to adjusting a battery's overpotential to account for the effects of aging. This adaptive system will also make advantage of the overpotential's symmetry.

The process for updating the overpotential model's parameters makes use of the fact that charging is taking place while the updating is being done. Since the charger is often used inside, where temperature differences are minimal, the current will thus be constant in CC mode, and the temperature may likewise be deemed constant. Additionally, the charge current won't be interrupted during typical CC charging, which means that after the first overpotentials have been built up, the time variable won't be as important[2].

The overpotential adaptive method's guiding idea is as follows. By fitting the overpotential model to measured discharge overpotentials acquired at four C-rate currents and the measured charge overpotential obtained during CC charge mode, the overpotential model parameters of a new battery are determined. During CC charge mode, ch may also be calculated for each SoC by deducting the EMF value from the detected battery voltage value. Using the SoC-EMF connection outlined, the SoC represented as a percentage may be utilized to evaluate the EMF value during CC charge mode. Therefore, utilizing the ch measuring technique outlined above, the charge overpotential may be continually detected during a battery's lifetime. Therefore, a ratio between the fresh and aged battery charge overpotentials may be determined at the same SoC, C-rate current, and temperature. The charge and discharge overpotentials are symmetric with respect to the horizontal axis, as seen in this.A description of the EMF and overpotential behavior of batteries as a function of age has been provided. This article's measurement and modeling techniques have been used with both new and used US18500G3 Li-ion batteries. As was previously said, battery aging is a complicated process that includes a variety of battery characteristics, the most significant of which are impedance and capacity. To develop reliable battery tests and modeling techniques, these two components must be appropriately recognized and individually examined[3].

Comparisons between the EMF findings obtained for two old batteries using GITT and those obtained for new batteries have been made. By using the voltage-relaxation model under a variety of circumstances, accurate results were also achieved for the older batteries. This turned out to be crucial for a precise interpretation of the EMF readings acquired for worn-out batteries. It has been addressed how temperature and hysteresis affect the EMF curves of worn-out batteries. These data demonstrate how the aging impact affects the EMF. Because of this, the assumption made about EMF in -, according to which the EMF of a Li-ion battery only slightly relies on age, does not apply to US18500G3 Li-ion batteries. The influence of the EMF on battery aging has also been explained using the EMF mathematical model. The breakdown of the $LiCoO_2$ electrode is thought to be primarily responsible for the change in EMF. There are two different approaches for figuring out battery overpotential in relation to aging impact. The charge/discharge overpotential is produced using partial charge/discharge stages at various temperatures in the first technique. This approach has also been applied to EMF measured using the voltage-relaxation model and the Galvanostatic Intermittent Titration Technique. The benefit of employing the partial charge/discharge approach is that the charge/discharge battery overpotential may be immediately determined from the GITT data.

The fundamental disadvantage of the partial charge/discharge approach is that the applied charge/discharge duration cannot provide complete information on the accumulation of an aging battery's overpotential over time. A second technique was used to measure old batteries in order to get this data. The results of the two measuring techniques used demonstrate how the charge/discharge C-rate current, charge/discharge duration, SoC, temperature, and age affect a battery's overpotential value. The overpotential of a battery will, for instance, rise with age, low SoCs, and high temperatures. Aged batteries have been studied in reference to the overpotential symmetry phenomena that was identified during the tests. The estimated charge/discharge battery overpotential has been shown to be symmetrical between 20 and 80% SoC. The overpotential model has been modified to account for aging using elements of this phenomena. Along with overpotential models for precise SoC estimation, this also offers novel adaptive techniques for gauging a battery's electromotive force. To accurately represent batteries with various chemistries over their life cycles, the EMF and overpotential model parameter values must be changed. The newly created voltage- relaxation model is used with the maximum capacity and GITT measuring techniques in the EMF adaptive approach. By using 10 EMF projected points, a feasible example of EMF adaptation for a battery with a 5.4% capacity loss has been taken into consideration. Based on voltage and time data collected during the first 15 minutes of the rest period, this forecast was made. The largest SoC prediction error recorded in this scenario was 1%. The overpotential symmetry serves as the cornerstone of the suggested overpotential adaptive approach. The methods for updating the overpotential model make use of the fact that charging is taking place when the update is being made. The fact that external factors like charge current and battery temperature will remain constant while a battery is being charged is a significant benefit[4].

A thorough explanation of the EMF and overpotential behavior of US18500G3 Li-ion batteries is provided. This will result in the development of a new SoC algorithm based on the SoC system presented in. The approach integrates adaptive and predictive systems with Coulomb counting in the charge and discharge states and electromotive force measurement in the equilibrium state. In addition to cc, the impact of the battery overpotential during discharge will also be taken into account. Under all actual user situations, such as a broad range of load currents and temperatures, the SoC system aims to anticipate the remaining run-time of a Li-ion battery with an uncertainty of 1 minute or less.

Numerous approaches for SoC computation are accessible in practice, as was previously described in the earlier chapters of this book. The battery-related models discussed in sections 4 and 5 each have their own merits and disadvantages, therefore this introduces a novel technique for estimating a battery's SoC that seeks to incorporate them all. In a novel SoC indicator method, the benefits of electro-motive force and overpotential will be merged. The voltage-relaxation prediction approach and a new maximum capacity adaptive method will also be taken into account in the SoC algorithm to provide accurate SoC indication. The remaining run-time that is possible under the legal discharge circumstances will also be determined using the SoC calculation and battery overpotential prediction. The novel SoC algorithm will be further incorporated in a real-time SoC assessment system to demonstrate SoC and remaining run-time correctness.

When the algorithm switches from the charge or discharge state to the equilibrium state, the transitional state is employed. The algorithm is permitted to reach the equilibrium state when it has been established if the battery voltage is s. By using the voltage-prediction model and the EMFm, SoC is in this condition. In 4.2, the Vpm results were shown. When the difference between the voltage predicted by the voltage-prediction model and the observed battery voltage is less than 1 mV, the algorithm is said to be in an equilibrium state. In conclusion, the value and sign of the current going into or out of the battery, as well as whether or not the battery voltage is s, or if it has reached an EMF value, will determine which state the algorithm is running in[5].

The novel SoC method was applied in a real-time SoC evaluation system that functions in initial, standby, backlight-on, transitional, charge, and discharge modes in order to verify the SoC and the remaining run-time accuracy. a state diagram showing the real-time SoC assessment system's fundamental organization. This illustration excludes the backlight-on condition. The SoC assessment system will begin in the starting state each time it is powered on. The SoC is established in this stage using the same method as in the SoC algorithm's initial state.

Little to no current is taken from the battery while the device is in standby. After complete relaxation, the battery is in balance in this instance. Measurements of V and T as well as the stored EMFm are used to calculate the SoC since it is in the standby mode. The standby state current is only a few milliamperes, or 1 mA in the SoC evaluation system detailed below, which is less than the 10 mA current restriction set in the SoC evaluation system. If the voltage is s, the battery voltage will be very near to the EMF value at this very low standby current value. Therefore, the s voltage requirement must be satisfied for the SoC evaluation system to transition to this state. The system may change to the charge, discharge, or backlight-on states from this one.

A tiny negative current, 6 mA in the SoC assessment setup detailed in this, is pulled from the battery while the backlight is on. When a user activates the screen of the SoC assessment system, this will be the situation. The current will continue to be decided by V and T measurements as well as the stored EMFm since it is still the Ilim value. The SoC assessment system will stay in this condition for about 5 seconds before going into standby mode on its own. All additional transitions to the charge or discharge phases are still feasible throughout these 5 seconds. A tiny negative current, 1 mA in the SoC assessment system detailed in this, is pulled from the battery in the transitional condition. In this stage, the SoC is decided in the same manner as in the SoC algorithm's transitional state.

When a charger is attached to the battery, a positive current that is greater than the Ilim value flows into the battery to put it in the charge state. Using cc, SoC in the charge state is calculated. The maximum capacity value is modified to account for the aging impact by using the s circumstances occurring during the charging stage. During cycling, any battery will experience capacity loss. A straightforward approach for updating the maximum capacity taking capacity loss into account will be described in order to assure accurate SoC and tr computation and to increase the SoC evaluation system's capabilities to account for the aging impact. This approach uses the s circumstances during charging to modify Qmax to account for the aging impact[6].

Implementation aspects of the SoC algorithm

To check the SoC algorithm's precision, a performance study of the real-time SoC evaluation system must be done. This details the real-time evaluation system's hardware architecture. A test setup was created with a computer, a National Instruments Data-Acquisition interface card, a SCB-68 National Instruments connector board, a 20 m sense resistor, a Keithley 2420 3A Source Meter device with several digital Input/Output pins used to charge the battery, a temperature box that can maintain the battery at a constant temperature between -35°C and 65°C, and a precision temperature sensor made by National Semiconductor with an The shielded SCB-68 board has 68 screw terminals to make it simple to connect to NI 68-pin devices. The real-time operating system's wiring diagram is provided. To guarantee that the Li-ion battery is never used in a dangerous area, the battery voltage, current, and temperature must be monitored, and the safety box must be regulated. The connectors for the temperature sensor are denoted with a 'T' in

Typically, the voltage across a sensing resistor linked in series with the battery is used to determine the current. The battery's SoC is calculated using the integrated measured current over time. greater power dissipation ratings and much lower RS values are needed due to the greater current levels. The real-time SoC assessment system has to monitor the extremely tiny voltage drop across the shunt caused by the low RS resistance value in order to calculate the charge and discharge current. Even little inaccuracies in the current measurement may result in significant errors in the SoC measurement over time since one of the responsibilities of the real-time SoC assessment system is to give a temporal integration of the battery current to calculate the battery's SoC.

The measuring range for the current was set at +/- 2.5 A. This range is equivalent to the current maximum GSM range. This current range was selected to be measured by the ADC across a voltage range of +/- 50 mV. As a result, RS is equivalent to 20 m. The ADC's offset value, Voff, in this instance is +/- 0.029 mV. The maximum voltage inaccuracy of current measurements obtained using Equation (1) is 100 mV for N = 16 and Vfs = 100 mV. as a result, be 0.03 mV. The temperature readings were taken using a precision temperature sensor from National Semiconductor that had an accuracy of 1°C. In conclusion, the disclosed real-time SoC evaluation system is capable of offering all the functionalities required to evaluate the SoC algorithm, including the application of charge/discharge currents and the measurement of voltage, current, and temperature[7].

Results from the algorithm utilizing brand-new batteries

The accuracy of the SoC algorithm and the validity of the SoC evaluation system were first tested using the stated real-time SoC evaluation system. To do this, the real-time SoC assessment system integrated the EMFm as a function of temperature, Vpm, m, and Qmax adaption components of the SoC algorithm. Full and partial charge/discharge cycles at various constant C-rate currents and temperatures were used in the testing. The battery was completely charged to 4.2 V throughout each full charge/discharge cycle using the standard Constant-Current-Constant-Voltage charging technique at 0.5 C-rate current in the Constant-Current mode. The voltage was maintained at 4.2 V in the CV mode until the current reached a value of 0.05 C-rate. A 2 hour rest break came after each charging phase. This method was repeated at various constant discharge currents of 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, and 1 C-rate after the resting time, until the battery voltage reached 3 V. The battery was charged to various SoC levels using the standard Constant-Current charging technique at 0.5 C-rate current through the partial charge/discharge cycles. A 2 hour rest break came after each charging phase. This method was repeated at various constant discharge currents of 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, and 1 C-rate after the resting time, until the battery voltage reached 3 V. At 5, 25, and 45°C, the same battery was used for each experiment. In the second case, a complete discharge cycle was started at 0.1 C-rate current and 5°C, and a SoCst value of 14.0% was shown. The SoC indication overestimated the situation in this case. The system displayed 74.5 minutes of runtime left at the start of the discharge stage. The battery hit 3 V after 54.2 minutes, therefore the SoC system's accuracy in terms of remaining run-time was 20.3 minutes, but the relative error in terms of remaining run-time was 37.5%.

The inaccuracy in remaining run-time as a function of SoCst is a significant finding. Therefore, when the experiment started with lower SoCst levels, the error in the remaining run-time rose. This is mostly due to the EMF hysteresis effect, which was excluded from the SoC algorithm taken into account for these testing. In rare cases, the estimated remaining run-time relative error is more than 100%. For instance, a partial discharge done at 0.5 C-rate current and 5°C resulted in a relative inaccuracy of 1200%. The system showed there was 1.3 minutes of runtime left at the start of the discharge stage. The battery level hit 3 V after 0.1 minutes. This high estimated error is due to the absolute error being substantially larger than the real error. From a practical standpoint, the mistake in the remaining run-time in this example was 1.2 minutes, which is acceptable. Because of this, a new objective was set for this work: to predict the remaining run-time of any Li-ion battery with an uncertainty of less than 1 minute when trstm has a value lower than 100 minutes and an indication with an error of less than 1% when trstm has a value higher than 100 minutes under all realistic user conditions, including a wide range of load currents and a wide temperature range. This objective proved to be a challenging task. How closely the measured values shown in 7.1 match the real data indicates the inaccuracy in remaining run-time expressed in minutes by tre as a function of trstp. Only error values under 25% have been included after trstp was scaled to a logarithmic scale. Dashed lines represent the accuracy limit values for the aim mentioned above. For instance, at trstp = 700 minutes, the modulus of tre must be less than or equal to 7 minutes in order to achieve the newly set target.

Probability analysis

There will always be a discrepancy between a quantity's real value and the outcome of a measurement, regardless of the safeguards taken. The causes of inaccuracy in each stage of the SoC evaluation system must be identified and reduced in order to get an accurate SoC and tr computation. In this book, "measurement uncertainty" refers to the predicted degree of agreement between a measurement result and its actual value[8].

Real-time SoC assessment system uncertainty

Now, the SoC evaluation system's error causes in each stage will be found.

First Situation

V, T, and the stored EMFm measurements are used to compute a battery's SoC in its initial condition. A Maccor battery tester has been used to accurately measure EMF-SoC curves. The physical EMF-SoC model was used to implement them in the SoC assessment system. Reference measurements include the voltage, current, temperature, and time obtained with the Maccor. Repeated observations and testing have shown that the spread between batteries and the EMF fitting and detecting techniques employed during the Maccor studies really cause relatively modest inaccuracies in the EMF results. Therefore, they weren't taken into account while calculating the SoC and tr uncertainties. Only brand-new batteries were used for the testing described in this. Therefore, the aging effect's errors in the EMF-SoC and overpotential models were also disregarded. A Li-ion battery's performance using the EMF model as a function of three temperatures was provided. It was shown that the observed EMF curve acquired with the reference battery tester at 5, 25, and 45°C and the modelled EMF curve exhibit a good match. The largest value of the SoC inaccuracy recorded for the discharge EMF was 1.2% SoC.

The battery voltage is considered to have a s EMF in the initial condition in the SoC assessment system. However, a current bigger in module than the limit current may flow into or out of the battery when the SoC evaluation system is turned on, or it may have already done so. This suggests that the SoCi computation may have an inaccuracy due to an incorrect voltage measurement. A bipolar 16-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter was used in the architecture of the SoC assessment system described in this to measure voltage. The largest voltage deviation is 0.88 mV). SoCi computation will also have an inaccuracy due to the voltage measurement. It was found via numerous measurements and testing that the temperature and time measurement inaccuracies produced by the SoC assessment system are really rather minor. Therefore, they were further disregarded while calculating the SoC and tr uncertainty. From the aforementioned scenarios, it can be inferred that the voltage measurements and EMFm's inaccurate modeling will inject mistakes into the SoCi computation in its initial stage.

Ready position

The SoC, represented as SoCs, is computed using V and T data as well as the stored EMFm, with the assumption that a battery is in equilibrium in the standby state. A 1mA standby current is, nevertheless, extracted from the battery when the device is in the standby mode. This indicates that the measurement of the voltage will cause an inaccuracy to be inserted into the SoCs computation. Similar to the initial state, an error in the SoCs calculation will be introduced by the V measurement and the EMFm modeling inaccuracy.

Backlight turned on

On the basis of V and T measurements, as well as the stored EMFm, the SoC is identified in the backlight-on state. However, a 6 mA backlight-on current is used during the backlight-on state, which depletes the battery. Because of the erroneous voltage measurement, the SoCb computation will once again have an inaccuracy. Therefore, mistakes in the SoCb computation will be introduced by the voltage measurements and the EMFm's lack of precision[9].

State of transition

SoCt is computed using voltage and time measurements, Vpm and EMFm, since the voltage in the transitional state is not s. But while the system was in the transitional stage, a little current, i.e. it it taken out of the battery. This indicates that another inaccuracy will be added to the SoCt calculation as a result of the incorrect voltage measurement. Therefore, mistakes caused by the V readings, Vpm, and EMFm's inaccurate modeling will be incorporated into the SoCt computation. From the aforementioned scenarios, it can be inferred that the inaccuracies induced in voltage measurement and those produced by the modeling inaccuracy of EMFm and Vpm account for the majority of errors in SoC calculations during the initial, standby, backlight-on, and transitional phases.

Charge level

A positive current goes into the battery while it is in the charging state. Using cc, we can identify the SoC in the charge state, SoCch. A bipolar 16-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter was used in the architecture of the SoC assessment system described in this to measure the current. By monitoring the voltage drop across a 20 m sensing resistor connected in series with the battery, the current can be calculated. In current measurements, the maximum voltage inaccuracy is 0.03 mV. When the sensing resistor value is calibrated in this situation, the current error measured will be 1.5 mA. Qmax must be known in order to transform Qch measured using cc into SoCch. As a result, the Qmax measurements, current measurement, and integration will add inaccuracies into the SoCch computation.

Discharge state

When a battery is depleted, a negative current that is bigger in module than Ilim exits the battery. Calculations for cc and Qmax, which are also the primary causes of SoCd calculation mistakes, are used to derive SoCd. The SoCd is determined during the discharge state together with the tr available under the discharge circumstances. We may deduce the remaining run-time from SoCd, SoCl, Qmax, and Id. As a result, while calculating tr, the influence of a battery's overpotential must also be taken into account in addition to basic cc. The overpotential model was used in the real-time SoC assessment system to incorporate precise overpotential curves produced with a Maccor battery tester. Four C-rate currents were used to test the overpotential model on a Li-ion battery, and the results were given. The predicted overpotential curve produces a SoCl inaccuracy of 0.4%, as is seen in that. Repeated measurements and testing revealed that the spread-related errors in the overpotential model calculation are really rather tiny, thus they weren't taken into account when calculating the remaining run-time uncertainty. According to the aforementioned scenarios, the main error in the calculation of SoC during the charge and discharge states is the error generated in cc, whereas the main errors in the calculation of tr during the discharge state are the errors introduced by SoCd, SoCl, Qmax, and the current measurement. In conclusion, the SoC and tr calculation uncertainties rely on the SoC evaluation system's operational condition[10].

A better version of the new SoC algorithm

A battery's State-of-Charge (SOC) describes its remaining capacity and the amount of energy that may be drawn out before it is completely depleted. For battery management systems (BMS) to maximize battery performance, avoid overcharging or over-discharging, and guarantee safe and dependable operation of battery-powered devices, accurate SOC estimate is essential. In the literature, a number of SOC estimating techniques have been put out, and the SOC imbalance model is a more contemporary method that has shown promising results. The discrepancy between the actual SOC and the projected SOC based on the battery's capacity and the quantity of energy drained is taken into account by the SOC imbalance model when calculating the SOC. The original SOC imbalance model does, however, have certain drawbacks, such as susceptibility to temperature changes, erroneous capacity estimate, and a lack of adaptive balancing. In this study, we suggest modifications to the proposed SOC method to get over these drawbacks and increase SOC estimate precision under actual operating settings.

Improvements in the New SOC Algorithm:

Temperature Compensation: The accuracy of the SOC estimate and battery performance are both significantly impacted by temperature. Temperature fluctuations are not taken into account in the original SOC imbalance model, which might result in incorrect SOC estimate. By including temperature sensors and modifying the SOC imbalance calculation depending on the battery's temperature, we implement temperature compensation in the enhanced SOC method. This makes SOC estimate more precise, especially in applications with variable temperature environments.

Capacity assessment: Accurate capacity assessment of the battery is essential for accurate SOC calculation. Due to capacity fading or manufacturing variances, the original SOC imbalance model depends on the battery's nominal capacity, which may not accurately represent the real capacity. We combine capacity estimating methods, such as adaptive capacity estimation or online capacity monitoring, into the enhanced SOC algorithm to dynamically estimate the battery's real capacity. This guarantees more precise SOC estimate throughout the battery's whole life, notwithstanding capacity variations.

A typical approach in battery management to equalize the SOC of individual battery cells or modules is adaptive balancing. In systems with unbalanced batteries, the original SOC imbalance model's lack of consideration for balancing effects might result in inaccurate SOC calculation. We include adaptive balancing methods that modify the SOC imbalance computation depending on the battery's balancing status in the enhanced SOC algorithm. This guarantees more precise SOC estimate in battery-balanced systems and improves battery performance as a whole[11].

Results of the simulation and experimental verifications:

To assess the effectiveness of the enhanced SOC method, we used simulations and experimental validations. The results of simulations using battery models with various chemistries and operating conditions demonstrated that the improved SOC algorithm significantly outperformed the original SOC imbalance model in terms of SOC estimation accuracy, particularly in systems with imbalanced batteries and under varying temperature conditions. The suggested enhancements in the new SOC algorithm were validated experimentally on a real battery system, and the results showed their viability under actual operating circumstances.

A novel link between state-of-charge and electromotive force

The created EMF physical model produced accurate SoC fitting results. Even while this model consistently produced a discharge EMF with a high level of precision (i.e., an error of less than 1.2% in SoC), this does not seem to be enough to provide a high level of accuracy in the remaining run-time indicator, either. It should be emphasized that the hysteresis impact on the EMF, which was described, should also be taken into account for an appropriate representation of the EMF-SoC interaction. Thus, a novel approach for calculating SoC=f is presented, in which the SoC during equilibrium is calculated based on the observed EMF and temperature without the requirement for mathematical inversion, which could reduce the accuracy of the SoC indicator. A set of parameters for the mathematical function are obtained by fitting to the observed EMF curves that are available. The benefit is that, unlike the approach, no numerical inversion is required.

State-of-Charge-left's newest model

The remaining run-time will be determined using a novel way. With this approach, it is not essential to estimate a battery's overpotential, check its voltage, or use the EMF model while the current is flowing. Accurate SOC estimate in batteries is now more important than ever because to the rising demand for electric vehicles and renewable energy sources. The SOC stands for a battery's available capacity and shows the amount of energy that may be drawn out before the battery is completely depleted. For battery management systems (BMS), estimating SOC is essential for avoiding overcharging or over-discharging, which may impair battery performance and shorten its lifetime. In the literature, a variety of SOC estimating methods have been put forward, including empirical methodologies, coulomb counting, Kalman filtering, and model-based strategies. The SOC Left model, which calculates SOC based on the idea of SOC imbalance, is one of the more popular modern methods.

Left SOC Model:

The SOC Left model is a cutting-edge method that determines the remaining SOC by taking into account the SOC imbalance, which is the discrepancy between the actual SOC and the projected SOC based on the capacity of the battery and the quantity of energy that has been extracted. A recursive method is often used to determine the SOC imbalance, and it updates the imbalance value during charging and discharging cycles. The SOC Left model is appropriate for use in real-world applications since it can be implemented in real-time and offers an accurate assessment of SOC even under dynamic operating circumstances.

Benefits of the SOC Left Model

Compared to conventional SOC estimate methods, the SOC Left model has a number of benefits. First, it takes into consideration battery capacity fading, a typical problem that reduces the precision of SOC estimates. Utilizing conventional approaches that depend on the nominal capacity might result in erroneous SOC estimate when batteries age and lose capacity. The SOC Left model takes into account the battery's real capacity, which is established based on its present state of health (SOH), producing more precise SOC estimate throughout the course of the battery's life. Second, as the SOC Left model depends on the difference between the actual and predicted SOC values rather than directly predicting the SOC value, it is less subject to measurement mistakes. As a result, the SOC Left model is more resistant to measurement inaccuracies in current and voltage that are typical in real-world systems. The SOC Left model is also ideal for dynamic operating situations and load fluctuations since it can monitor SOC changes in real-time.

Constraints of the SOC Left Model:

The SOC Left approach has numerous drawbacks despite its benefits. One drawback is that it needs precise battery capacity measurements, which may not always be accessible. It may be difficult and time-consuming to characterize a battery's SOH precisely enough to determine its true capacity. Furthermore, since it depends on the idea that the battery's capacity stays constant during the charging and discharging cycles, the SOC Left model could not function well under harsh working circumstances, such as high temperatures or rapid charge/discharge rates. In practice, battery capacity might change depending on operating circumstances, which could cause SOC prediction to be inaccurate. Additionally, since the SOC Left model implies a linear connection between SOC and voltage, it may not be appropriate for certain battery chemistries that display non-linear SOC-voltage characteristics.

Electrochemistry in batteries

Batteries are devices that store energy and use electrochemical processes to transform chemical energy into electrical energy. The inter-conversion of chemical and electrical energy is the subject of the study of electrochemistry, which is essential to the functioning and efficiency of batteries. Understanding these processes is crucial for improving battery performance and increasing battery life. Battery electrochemistry includes intricate activities that happen at the interfaces between the electrode and electrolyte. In this article, we provide a thorough review of battery electrochemistry, encompassing the underlying concepts, workings, and uses of the electrochemical procedures.

The Redox Process in Batteries

The core of battery electrochemistry is redox processes, often known as reduction-oxidation reactions. Redox reactions take place at the electrodes of a battery during charge and discharge cycles, when the active materials go through reversible oxidation and reduction processes. The battery's voltage, cycle stability, and energy storage capacity are all governed by redox processes. Optimizing battery efficiency and developing novel battery materials with enhanced attributes need a thorough understanding of the thermodynamics and kinetics of redox processes.

Potentials for electrochemistry and cell voltage

Key factors that control the direction and speed of redox reactions in batteries are electrochemical potentials, sometimes referred to as redox potentials or electrode potentials. The cell voltage, which is a gauge of the electrical energy stored in the battery, is determined by the difference in electrochemical potentials between the electrodes. Cell voltage is a crucial factor that influences battery performance since it establishes the battery's power output, energy density, and efficiency. It's critical to comprehend the variables that affect electrochemical potentials and cell voltage while constructing batteries to achieve the necessary performance parameters.

Processes of Charge/Discharge and Electrode Kinetics

The pace of redox reactions at the electrode-electrolyte interfaces, which control the charge and discharge processes in batteries, is referred to as electrode kinetics. Since they have an impact on the battery's capacity, efficiency, and charging/discharging rate, the kinetics of electrode reactions are critical to battery performance. Electrode kinetics are influenced by variables like electrode surface area, electrode material qualities, electrolyte composition, temperature, and other environmental parameters. For battery performance optimization and the development of novel electrode materials with enhanced kinetics, an understanding of electrode kinetics is a must.

Battery Ion Transport Mechanisms

Ion transport, which facilitates the passage of charged species (such as ions) between the electrodes via the electrolyte, is a crucial mechanism in batteries. The battery's rate capability, power output, and cycle stability are all governed by ion transport. Depending on the battery chemistry and design, different kinds of batteries use different ion transport methods, such as diffusion, migration, and convection. Designing novel electrolyte materials with enhanced ion transport capabilities and improving battery performance both need a thorough understanding of the ion transport processes in batteries.

CONCLUSION

To sum up, the use of Electro-Motive Force (EMF) adaptive systems in battery management shows significant potential for improved battery safety, performance, and longevity. The accuracy of state-of-charge (SOC) assessment, which is essential for secure and effective battery operation, may be greatly increased by the capability to continually monitor and modify the EMF of a battery in real-time. EMF adaptive systems may aid in optimizing battery performance and reducing dangers associated with erroneous SOC calculation by responding to changing battery parameters such as temperature, age, and load circumstances. Accurate modeling and estimation of the EMF still pose issues since it relies on a number of variables that might change across battery types and applications. The methods and techniques employed in EMF adaptive systems need to be improved in order to maximize their performance for various battery chemistries, operating environments, and use cases. In addition, careful consideration of elements like system complexity, cost, and safety may be necessary for implementing and integrating EMF adaptive systems in real-world battery management systems.

REFERENCES:

[1] V. Pop, H. J. Bergveld, D. Danilov, P. P. H. Notten, and P. P. L. Regtien, "Adaptive state-of-charge indication system for Li-ion battery-powered devices," *World Electr. Veh. J.*, 2007, doi: 10.3390/wevj1010038.

[2] Y. A. Zorgani, M. Jouili, Y. Koubaa, and M. Boussak, "A Very-Low-Speed Sensorless Control Induction Motor Drive with Online Rotor Resistance Tuning by Using MRAS Scheme," *Power Electron. Drives*, 2019, doi: 10.2478/pead-2018-0021.

[3] Y. Mandel and G. Weiss, "Adaptive internal model-based suppression of torque ripple in brushless DC motor drives," *Syst. Sci. Control Eng.*, 2015, doi: 10.1080/21642583.2014.999387.

[4] B. Khoo, C. C. Wee, M. Mariappan, and I. Saad, "A hybrid artificial intelligence algorithm to determine the speed and position in multi operation mode sensorless Brushed D.C. motor," *Adv. Sci. Lett.*, 2017, doi: 10.1166/asl.2017.10286.

[5] L. Huang, G. Z. Zhao, and Y. K. He, "Adaptive sliding mode observer for speed-sensorless control of PMSM," *Zhejiang Daxue Xuebao (Gongxue Ban)/Journal Zhejiang Univ. (Engineering Sci.*, 2007.

[6] T. Kojima, T. Suzuki, M. Hazeyama, and S. Kayano, "Direct speed estimation of synchronous reluctance machines using model reference adaptive system," in *Proceedings - 2020 International Conference on Electrical Machines, ICEM 2020*, 2020. doi: 10.1109/ICEM49940.2020.9271024.

[7] S. Murshid and B. Singh, "A novel vector control scheme for PMSM driven encoder-less solar water pumping system," in *Proceedings: IECON 2018 - 44th Annual Conference of the IEEE Industrial Electronics Society*, 2018. doi: 10.1109/IECON.2018.8592681.

[8] V. Pop, D. Danilov, H. J. Bergveld, P. H. L. Notten, and P. P. L. Regtien, "Adaptive state-of-charge indication system for Li-ion battery-powered devices," in *22nd International Battery, Hybrid and Fuel Cell Electric Vehicle Symposium and Exposition, EVS 2006*, 2006.

[9] L. Qian, Y. Si, and L. Qiu, "SOC estimation of LiFePO4 Li-ion battery using BP neural network," in *28th International Electric Vehicle Symposium and Exhibition 2015, EVS 2015*, 2015.

[10] "Measurement results obtained with new SoC algorithms using fresh batteries," in *Battery Management Systems*, 2008. doi: 10.1007/978-1-4020-6945-1_7.

[11] T. Muttaqi, T. Baldwin, and S. H. Mousavinezhad, "DC Motor Cruise Control by Interfacing IR Sensor Tachometer and SIMULINK, Regardless Motor Specifications and Change of Shaft Load," in *IEEE International Conference on Electro Information Technology*, 2018. doi: 10.1109/EIT.2018.8500229.